



120 \*

EducT 1000.765.299



**Harvard College Library**

**FROM**

**Edward H. Atherton**

.....

.....

.....



3 2044 097 076 723

E. H. Atherton  
Roxbury

Dec. 19, '99





# CAESAR FOR BEGINNERS

A FIRST LATIN BOOK



# CAESAR FOR BEGINNERS

## *A FIRST LATIN BOOK*

BY

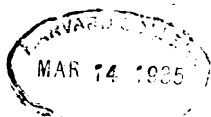
WILLIAM T. ST. CLAIR, A.M.

*Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in the Louisville (Kentucky)  
Male High School; Author of 'Medical Latin,' 'Summary of Latin  
Syntax,' and 'Notes to the Third Book of Caesar's Gallic War'*

NEW YORK  
LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO.  
LONDON AND BOMBAY

1899

EducT 1000.765.899



*Edward H. Atherton*

Copyright, 1899, by  
LONGMANS, GREEN & CO.

*All rights reserved.*

ROBERT DRUMMOND, PRINTER, NEW YORK.

**Affectionately Inscribed**

**to**

**My Son**

Richard G. Anderson

et

1992-1993

## PREFACE.

---

**LATIN** is an excellent mental training for teaching accuracy, conciseness and exactness. How can this discipline be best secured in schools where the Latin course is confined within three or four years? Those preparatory schools in which Latin is taken up early—say at the age of ten or twelve—may with great profit use ‘New Gradatim,’ ‘Viri Romae,’ or ‘Nepos’ before ‘Caesar’s Gallic War.’ The material for schools of limited time, however, clearly must be taken from the Latin author to be studied first. This book is designed to fit the beginner to take up Caesar as his first Latin. Caesar is not claimed as indispensable to the preparatory course, to the exclusion of other pertinent authors; but the choice of Caesar is the best solution of the problem under the limitations and restrictions given. Besides the fact that Caesar’s Latin is hard to master, we have two difficulties to contend with. *First*, in many schools preparatory work is in the hands of young teachers of very narrow or very short experience; the chief result of their pains is wearisome and, to a great degree, unrewarded labor certainly to themselves and perhaps to their pupils. Indeed even the best teachers would welcome a good *teaching book* introductory to Caesar. *Second*, the change from the ordinary beginner’s book is so great and so radical that the pupil is lost when he faces Caesar’s

Latin. The aim of this book is to meet and, if it may be, lessen these hindrances, not to explain all the difficulties of the Latin language.

The points of practical value are:

1. A working vocabulary of five hundred words taken from the second book of Caesar.

2. Lessons of uniform length throughout, adapted to the average ability of pupils.

3. Lessons graded with a view towards reaching and mastering the complex constructions of Caesar. The subordinate clauses, such as *ut*, *quī*, *cum*, etc., are brought in early in carefully graded lessons, showing the combination of these clauses and illustrating their order and dependence.

4. Steady and uniform progression in the building of the complex sentence and stress laid upon the proper adjustment of words and clauses. Illustrative clauses and phrases from the second book of Caesar, often copied verbatim, oftener with the order and style of the text closely imitated.

5. Alphabetically and by conjugations all of the verbs in the second book of Caesar; principal parts and meanings to be learned as part of the vocabulary, beginning with paragraph (91).

6. The first fourteen chapters of the second book of Caesar simplified and adapted in twenty lessons. Prose composition in each of these lessons based upon the text. Principles and constructions met with in these particular chapters are explained in the *same terms and examples* used in the foregoing lessons which are prepared with a view to application in these chapters.

7. The second book of Caesar complete, with notes. The notes invariably use the terms and examples which



the pupil has been applying from the first lesson. There are no grammatical references and new or offhand expressions, but explanations in terms with which the pupil is already familiar.

There is no wide chasm between the lessons in the main part of the work and the text of Caesar. Between these come the simplified chapters of Caesar and the notes in which, when like points occur in Caesar's text, are repeated the illustrative sentences and explanations used in the former part of the work. Much Latin construction has been purposely omitted and left for the remaining books of Caesar. The lessons have been abridged and constructions made plain, so as to place them within the grasp of the average pupil; since it is not the *quantity* of material crowded into a lesson or a child's head, but the *quality* of the work done, which brings the best results and is therefore most needed. The author gratefully acknowledges his indebtedness to Professor Abraham Flexner, head master of "The Flexner School," Louisville, for valuable assistance in arranging the plan and order of the lessons and especially in the treatment of the relative pronoun; and to Professor Garland Bruce Overton of the Male High School, Louisville, for patient and exhaustive reviews of the proof-pages throughout that have added much to the value of the work. The author feels grateful to the publishers, also, for uniform courtesy and consideration, and for suggestions and help that have added strength to the book.

W. T. S.

LOUISVILLE, June, 1899.

and the other side of the

mountain.

The first of these is the

mountain of the north.

The second is the mountain of the south.

The third is the mountain of the east.

The fourth is the mountain of the west.

The fifth is the mountain of the north-east.

The sixth is the mountain of the south-east.

The seventh is the mountain of the north-west.

The eighth is the mountain of the south-west.

The ninth is the mountain of the north-east.

The tenth is the mountain of the south-east.

The eleventh is the mountain of the north-west.

The twelfth is the mountain of the south-west.

The thirteenth is the mountain of the north-east.

The fourteenth is the mountain of the south-east.

The fifteenth is the mountain of the north-west.

The sixteenth is the mountain of the south-west.

The seventeenth is the mountain of the north-east.

The eighteenth is the mountain of the south-east.

The nineteenth is the mountain of the north-west.

The twentieth is the mountain of the south-west.

The twenty-first is the mountain of the north-east.

The twenty-second is the mountain of the south-east.

The twenty-third is the mountain of the north-west.

The twenty-fourth is the mountain of the south-west.

## CONTENTS.

---

PREFACE.....	Pages vii-ix
INTRODUCTION.....	" xiii-xv
LESSONS I—X. First-declension and second-declension nouns and adjectives declined; first-conjugation verb, <i>portō</i> , in the present, imperfect, and future indicative; sentence-building and order of words; ablative of place, means, attendance.....	Pages 1-16
LESSONS XI—XVIII. Present system of <i>portō</i> completed; purpose clauses; apposition; relation of words and clauses; relative pronoun; principal parts of verbs.....	Pages 16-35
LESSONS XIX—XXVII. First conjugation completed in the active voice; <i>sum</i> completed; third-declension nouns; <i>quod</i> and <i>cum</i> clauses; dative with adjectives; dative with <i>imperō</i> and <i>mandō</i> ; rule of sequence.....	Pages 35-54
LESSONS XXVIII—XXXVII. Second and third conjugations in the active; <i>iubeō</i> with accusative + infinitive; sentence-analysis; order and dependence of words and clauses; varying order of words; fourth declension; adjectives of the third declension; use of <i>suus</i> .....	Pages 54-76
LESSONS XXXVIII—XLVIII. Complex sentence analyzed; <i>cum</i> and <i>ubi</i> clauses; personal and demonstrative pronouns declined; fifth declension; more vivid future condition; <i>nē</i> in negative purpose and commands; fourth conjugation; first conjugation passive; personal agent; gerundive construction..	Pages 76-103
LESSONS XLIX—LVI. Passive voice of the second, third, and fourth conjugations; <i>cum</i> clauses continued; intermediate clauses; subjunctive mood in indirect discourse and by attraction; ablative absolute; adjectives with genitive in <i>iūs</i> ; comparison of adjectives.....	Pages 103-123
LESSONS LVII—LXVI. <i>Orātiō Obliqua</i> ; infinitive tenses in O. O.; subordinate clauses in O. O.; relative clause of purpose; indirect	

question ; perfect passive participle ; purpose and result clauses ; deponent verbs ; less vivid future condition ; dative with compound and with special verbs ; causal and concessive <i>cum</i> ; accusative of extent in space ; verbs of commanding ; verbs of fearing.....	Pages 124-151
LESSONS LXVII—LXX. Double dative ; deponents governing the ablative ; four ways of expressing (1) purpose, (2) the ablative absolute, and (3) the <i>cum</i> clause ; dative of possession ; temporal clauses ; dative of agency with the periphrastic ; impersonal verbs ; uses of the relative ; verbs of hindering ; ablative with the comparative.....	Pages 152-161
LESSONS LXXI—LXXV. Substitutes for the perfect active participle ; adverbial accusative ; ablative of quality ; partitive genitive ; <i>persuādeō</i> in the passive ; periphrasis for supineless verbs, etc. ; how 'ought' and 'must' are expressed ; relative clause of result ; commands and exhortations, same in O. O. ; hortatory subjunctive, same in O. O. ; conditionals in O. O. ; table and rule for <i>mood</i> and <i>tense</i> in O. O.....	Pages 161-172
SPECIMENS OF 'INDIRECT DISCOURSE'.....	" 175-177
ADAPTED AND SIMPLIFIED CAESAR.....	" 178-198
TEXT OF CAESAR, Book Two complete.....	" 201-219
NOTES TO THE SECOND BOOK.....	" 222-255
VERBS IN BOOK TWO, WITH MEANINGS.....	" 256-260
PARADIGMS OF NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES.....	" 261-270
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.....	" 271-273
PARADIGMS OF REGULAR VERBS.....	" 274-291
PARADIGMS OF VERBS, IRREGULAR AND DEPONENT... ..	" 292-309
PARADIGMS OF THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION... ..	" 310-311
RULES OF QUANTITY.....	" 312-314
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.....	" 315-341
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.....	" 342-350
INDEX.....	" 351-357

## INTRODUCTION.

---

**Alphabet.**—The Latin alphabet has twenty-four letters: *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.* *i* serves for both *i* and *j*; as the former it is called *vowel i*, as the latter *consonant i*. There is no *w*: properly *v* represented also the vowel *u*, but in this book *v* is used for the consonant and *u* for the vowel sound of *v* (*u*).

**Vowels.**—The vowels are *a, e, i, o, u*, and *y*, sounded thus:

ā as in <i>father</i> .	ǣ as in the first syllable in <i>aha</i> .
ē “ “ <i>prey</i> .	ĕ “ “ <i>net</i> .
ī “ “ <i>unique</i> .	ĭ “ “ <i>him</i> .
ō “ “ <i>hope</i> .	ö “ “ <i>harmony</i> .
ū “ “ <i>rude</i> .	ŭ “ “ <i>put</i> .

*y* is sounded like the French *u*, German *ü*.

**Diphthongs.**—Some diphthongs are here omitted as being unimportant.

*ae* is sounded *eye*.

*au* as *ow* in *how*.

*eu* as *ew* in *new*.

*oe* as *oi* in *soil*.

**Consonants.**—The consonants *b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu* are pronounced as in English. *c, g, t* have the hard sound, as *cold, get, take*; *ti* never like the English *sh* in *tion*. *s* has a sharp hissing sound, as *send, this*; never

sounds like *z*. *i* consonant (for *j*) has the sound of *y*, as *million, yet*. *r* was probably slightly trilled. *v* has the sound of *w*, as *vinum, wine*.

**Syllables.**—In a Latin word there is a syllable for each vowel or diphthong. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the syllable before the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*. Monosyllables are words containing *one* syllable; dissyllables, words of *two* syllables; polysyllables, words of more than two syllables. Utter separately all vowels except those combined as diphthongs. In dividing a word into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the following vowel; as, *lĕ-gā-tus*. In the case of two or more consonants, join with the following vowel those consonants that can be pronounced with the vowel; as, *ca-stel-lum*.

**Parts of speech.**—Functions as in English: verb, noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb, preposition, conjunction, interjection.

**Inflection.**—The regular change in the form of a Latin word, by which its different relations to other words are shown, is called inflection. The inflection of nouns, pronouns, participles, and adjectives is called Declension; that of verbs, Conjugation. There are five declensions of nouns and four conjugations of verbs.

**Comparison.**—Adjectives and adverbs have three degrees of comparison: positive, comparative, superlative.

**Number, voice, etc.**—There are two numbers, singular and plural; three persons, first, second, and third; three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter; two voices in the verb, active and passive.

**Cases.**—In the inflection of nouns, etc., Latin has the following six cases:

---

<sup>1</sup> The cases, except the nominative and vocative, are called *oblique cases*.

*Nominative* = simple meaning of the word, as subject.

*Genitive* = *of* + meaning of the word with the values of the English prepositional phrase.

*Dative* = *to* or *for* + meaning of the word—as *indirect object*.

*Accusative* = simple meaning of the word—as *direct object*.

*Vocative* = *O* + the English meaning.

*Ablative* = *from, with, by, in* or *on* + meaning of the word.

**Accent.**—The accent of a syllable is the stress of voice laid upon it.

1. Words of *two* syllables are accented upon the *penult*; as, *tu'-ba*.

2. Words of *more* than *two* syllables are accented upon the *penult*, if that is long; otherwise upon the *antepenult*; as, *a-mā'-vi*, *a-mā'-ve-ram*.

3. The accent should not fall upon the last syllable.

**Quantity.**—Latin vowels marked with a horizontal line above them are long in quantity, i.e., long in duration of the time required to sound them. Vowels not so marked may be regarded as short and require half as much time in sound as long vowels. The length or shortness of a vowel or a syllable is called *quantity*. A syllable is long in quantity (1) if it contains a long vowel or diphthong; (2) if the vowel of the syllable precedes *x*, or two consonants, except a mute and a liquid. A syllable is short if its vowel precedes another vowel or *h*. A syllable is common when it contains a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r*; as, *lā'-cri-ma*. In this book all long vowels are marked, special attention having been given to determining hidden quantities. For rules of quantity see (500–504).





## LESSON I.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

(See Introduction for the names and meanings of the cases.)

#### 1. *Fossa*, *a* or *the ditch*, declined in the singular number.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>fossa</i> , <i>a ditch</i> ("as subject")
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>fossae</i> , <i>of a ditch</i> (pronounced foss-eye)
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>fossae</i> , <i>to or for a ditch</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>fossam</i> , <i>a ditch</i> ("as object")
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>fossa</i> , <i>O ditch</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>fossā</i> , <i>from, with, by, in, or on a ditch</i>

2. The *stem* of a noun is the common part to which terminations are annexed to distinguish the different cases. The stem of *fossa* ends in *ā*, and is the same as the word itself in the nominative case. The stem originally ended in *ā*.

The stem form appears in each case; the nominative and vocative have nothing additional; the ablative is distinguished from the nominative and vocative by the lengthening of the stem vowel *ā*; the genitive and dative annex *e* to the stem, and the accusative annexes *m*. These terminations may be called case-endings, though strictly speaking they are combinations of the stem and the true ending.

#### 3. VOCABULARY.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a* in the nominative singular and are *feminine* except when males are meant, as in *poeta*, a poet. In the vocabularies of this declension, when no gender is specified the feminine is meant.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<i>causa</i>	<i>causae</i>	<i>cause</i>
<i>porta</i>	<i>portae</i>	<i>gate</i>
<i>Italia</i>	<i>Italiae</i>	<i>Italy</i>
<i>fuga</i>	<i>fugae</i>	<i>flight</i>

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>silva</b>	<b>silvae</b>	<i>forest</i>
<b>tuba</b>	<b>tubae</b>	<i>trumpet</i>
<b>prōvincia</b>	<b>prōvinciae</b>	<i>province</i>
<b>lāta</b>	<b>lātae</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	<i>wide or broad</i>
<b>māgna</b>	<b>māgnae</b> ( <i>adj.</i> )	<i>great or large</i>
<b>amicitia</b>	<b>amicitiae</b>	<i>friendship</i>

**4. Agreement of the adjective.**—An adjective agrees with the noun which it limits in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. Thus: *silvae lātae*, of a broad forest; *tubā māgnā*, with a large trumpet.

The adjective is usually placed *after* the noun it modifies. For emphasis it may precede the noun.

## 5.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Causam.<sup>1</sup> 2. Ītaliae. 3. Portae. 4. Tubā. 5. Fuga. 6. Silvam lātam. 7. Prōvinciae māgnae. 8. Fugā.

II.—1. Of the province. 2. Flight (*obj.*). 3. For the province. 4. Of a wide ditch. 5. By flight. 6. A large trumpet (*obj.*). 7. To the cause.

## LESSON II.

## FIRST DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

## 6. Fossa declined in the plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>fossae</b> ,	<i>the ditches</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>fossārum</b> ,	<i>of the ditches</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>fossīs</b> ,	<i>to or for the ditches</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>fossās</b> ,	<i>the ditches</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>fossae</b> ,	<i>O ditches</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>fossīs</b> ,	<i>from, with, by, in, or on the ditches</i>

The stem **fossa** is unchanged throughout the plural except in the dative and ablative, where final **a** is omitted before the case-ending **īs**.

<sup>1</sup> There is no Latin word for *the* or *a*, which words must be supplied according to the sense, as also often *his*, *hers*, *theirs*.

**7. Use of the genitive.**—A noun in the genitive case limits another noun. One genitive may modify another genitive. Sometimes a noun in the genitive is translated by the English *possessive case* instead of *of*.

Thus: *Galbae tuba* may mean *the trumpet of Galba* or *Galba's trumpet*. Here *Galbae* is a noun in the genitive limiting the noun *tuba*.

**The ablative causā.**—*Causā* means *for the sake of*, and must stand *after a genitive*; as, *fugae causā*, *for the sake of flight*.

## 8.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
pūgna	pūgnae	fight
Gallia	Galliae	Gaul
Galba	Galbae, <i>mas.</i>	Galba ( <i>man's name</i> )
galea	galeae	helmet
ripa	ripae	bank
cōpia	cōpiārum, usually plur.	forces
Belgae	Belgārum, <i>mas.</i>	Belgians
amāta	amātae, <i>adj.</i>	beloved
nova	novae, <i>adj.</i>	new
alta	altae, <i>adj.</i>	tall or deep
multa	multae, <i>adj.</i>	much or many
et, conjunction		and
in, preposition with the abl.		in

**9. Use of in.**—The preposition *in* is used with the *ablative* to denote place where. Thus: *in prōvinciā novā*, *in the new province*.

## 10.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cōpiārum. 2. Prōvinciis. 3. Galeae. 4. Amīci-  
tiae causā. 5. Rīpās altās. 6. In silvā lātā. 7. Galbae  
tubā novā. 8. Galeīs multīs. 9. Belgārum cōpiās multās.  
10. Galbae cōpiārum causā in Galliā.

- II.—1. With a trumpet. 2. By Galba's flight. 3. For the beloved forces. 4. The flight (*obj.*) of the Belgians. 5. For the sake of a new province.

### LESSON III.

#### FIRST-CONJUGATION VERB. FIRST DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

#### 11. Present indicative active of *portō*, *I carry*.

##### SINGULAR.

1. *portō*, *I carry, am carrying,*
2. *portās*, *you carry* [*do carry*]
3. *portat*, *he carries*

##### PLURAL.

1. *portāmus*, *we carry*
2. *portātis*, *you carry*
3. *portant*, *they carry*

The *present stem* of this verb is *portā*, which appears in each form except the *first person singular*, where final *ā* is lost before *ō*. The endings *s, t, mus, tis, nt*, annexed to the stem, denote the different persons of the verb and its subject, and are called *personal endings*. To conjugate this tense of a verb, change *final ō* of the *first person singular* to *ās, at, āmus, ātis, ant*.

Conjugate and give meanings of *pūgnō*, *parō*, and *superō* in the *present indicative active*. Decline and give meanings in both singular and plural of *tuba*, *galea*, and *silva alta* (*together*).

#### 12.

##### VOCABULARY.

<i>pūgnō</i> ,	<i>I fight</i>
<i>parō</i> ,	<i>I prepare</i>
<i>superō</i> ,	<i>I overcome</i>
<i>occupō</i> ,	<i>I seize</i>
<i>cēlō</i> ( <i>pronounced ka-lo</i> ),	<i>I conceal</i>
<i>vītō</i> ( <i>pronounced we-to</i> ),	<i>I avoid</i>

#### 13. Commit to memory the following examples:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>portat</i> ,                      | <i>he carries</i>                        |
| 2. <i>galeam parat</i> ,                | <i>he prepares a helmet</i>              |
| 3. <i>Galba Belgās superat</i> ,        | <i>Galba overcomes the Belgians</i>      |
| 4. <i>occupant</i> ,                    | <i>they seize</i>                        |
| 5. <i>fugam cēlant</i> ,                | <i>they conceal their flight</i>         |
| 6. <i>Belgae cōpiās Galbae vītant</i> , | <i>the Belgians avoid Galba's forces</i> |

In sentences (1) and (2), as no subject is separately expressed, *he* is to be supplied. In (3) the subject *Galba* is separately given and therefore *he* should be omitted. Again in (3) *Belgās* is the *direct object* of the verb *superat*, which it precedes: so in (2), (5), and (6), the *direct object* is in the *accusative* and stands before the verb, which comes last.

## LESSON IV.

### FIRST DECLENSION AND FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

14. Conjugate and give meanings of *occupō*, *cēlō*, and *vitō* in the *present indicative active*.

Decline and give meanings of *ripa*, *cōpia*, and *porta magna*.

Review vocabularies in Lessons I and II.

15. Example of the direct and indirect objects.

*Galba cōpiis galeās multās Galba prepares many helmets  
parat, for his forces*

In this sentence *cōpiis* is in the *dative* and is called the *indirect object* of the verb *parat*; the *indirect object* usually precedes the *direct*, as *cōpiis* here precedes *galeās*.

16. Fix in mind this common *order of words*:

- a. Place the adjective *after* the noun it modifies.
- b. *causā*, *for the sake of*, always comes *after a genitive*.
- c. The verb stands at the end of a sentence with the *direct object* before it.
- d. The *indirect (dative) object* comes before the *direct*.
- e. The subject comes first; if not separately expressed, it is indicated by the *ending* of the verb.

17.

### EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Occupat. 2. Cēlāmus. 3. Superās. 4. Vitātis.
5. Belgās superāmus. 6. Belgae fugam cēlant. 7. Cōpiis

tubās novās occupat. 8. Galbae cōpiae galeās multās portant (are carrying). 9. Belgae in Galliā cōpiās māgnās parant. 10. Galba in Italiā Belgārum cōpiās superat.

II.—1. We seize. 2. You (*sing.*) are fighting (or fight). 3. You (*plur.*) are preparing helmets for the beloved forces. 4. They avoid a fight for the sake of friendship. 5. They seize helmets and trumpets for the Belgians. 6. Galba avoids a fight and conceals his flight.

## LESSON V.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

#### 18. *Servus*, *slave*, declined in the singular.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>servus</i> ,	<i>a slave</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>servī</i> , <sup>1</sup>	<i>of a slave</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>servō</i> ,	<i>to or for a slave</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>servum</i> ,	<i>a slave</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>serve</i> , <sup>2</sup>	<i>O slave</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>servō</i> ,	<i>from, with, by, etc., a slave</i>

The stem of nouns in the second declension ends in *o*. In combination with the case-endings *o* undergoes changes, appearing as *ō*, *u*, *e*, or disappearing altogether. The stem of *servus* is *servo*.

#### 19. Table of case-endings.—Commit to memory:

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>-us</b>	= <i>subject</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>-ī</b>	= <i>of</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>-ō</b>	= <i>to or for</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>-um</b>	= <i>object</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>-e</b>	= <i>O</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>-ō</b>	= <i>from, with, by, in, or on</i>

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced *ser-we*, with the *r* slightly trilled.

<sup>2</sup> Pronounced *ser-wăy*, with the *r* slightly trilled.

## 20.

## VOCABULARY.

Nouns of this declension ending in **us** are mostly masculine; when no gender for such nouns is specified, the *masculine* is meant.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>mūrus</b>	<b>mūrī</b>	<i>wall</i>
<b>vīcus</b>	<b>vīcī</b>	<i>village</i>
<b>amīcus</b>	<b>amīcī</b>	<i>friend</i>
<b>gladius</b>	<b>gladiī</b>	<i>sword</i>
<b>dō</b> ( <i>conjugated like pūgnō</i> )		<i>I give</i>
<b>novus</b>	<b>novī, adj.</b>	<i>new</i>
<b>māgnus</b>	<b>māgnī, adj.</b>	<i>great or large</i>
<b>multus</b>	<b>multī, adj.</b>	<i>much or many</i>
<b>amātus</b>	<b>amāti, adj.</b>	<i>beloved</i>

**21. Agreement of adjective. (4.<sup>1</sup>)**—Notice carefully the agreement of the adjective in the following examples; thus far the noun and its limiting adjective have the same ending:

1. **fossae latae**, *of a wide ditch*
2. **mūrī latī**, *of a wide wall*
3. **galea novā**, *with a new helmet*
4. **gladiō novō**, *with a new sword*

## 22.

## EXERCISES.

- I.—1. **Mūrō**. 2. **Gladium novum**. 3. **Amīcī causā**.  
 4. **Caesar amīcō galeam novam et gladium māgnū dat**.  
 5. **Galba in vīcō tubās multās occupat**.

- II.—1. **Of a large village**. 2. **To a beloved friend**.  
 3. **Galba is preparing a high wall for the village**. 4. **Caesar conceals in the village the helmets of his forces**.

---

<sup>1</sup> All references are made to paragraphs.

## LESSON VI.

FIRST CONJUGATION AND SECOND DECLENSION,  
CONTINUED.23. Imperfect Indicative of *portō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. portābam, <i>I was carrying—</i> <i>I carried</i>	1. portābāmus, <i>we were carry-</i> <i>ing</i> [ing]
2. portābās, <i>you were carrying</i>	2. portābātis, <i>you were carry-</i>
3. portābat, <i>he was carrying</i>	3. portābant, <i>they were car-</i> <i>rying</i>

The stem is *portā*, which appears in each form. To make this tense of a verb, change final *ō* to *ā*, which forms the *present stem*; thus the stem of *occupō* is *occupā*: to the stem annex *ba*, which is called the *tense-sign*, and to this add the personal endings *m, s, t, mus, tis, nt*.

## 24. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-bam	-bāmus
-bās	-bātis
-bat	-bant

25. *Servus* declined in the plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>servī,</i>	<i>slaves</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>servōrum,</i>	<i>of slaves</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>servīs,</i>	<i>to or for slaves</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>servōs,</i>	<i>slaves</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>servī,</i>	<i>O slaves</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>servīs,</i>	<i>from, with, etc., slaves</i>

## 26. Table of case-endings.

<i>Nom.</i>	-ī	<i>Acc.</i>	-ōs
<i>Gen.</i>	-ōrum	<i>Voc.</i>	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	-īs	<i>Abl.</i>	-īs



## 27.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>lĕgātus</b>	<b>lĕgātī</b>	<i>ambassador</i>
<b>Rōmānus</b>	<b>Rōmānī</b>	<i>Roman (noun or adj.)</i>
<b>populus</b>	<b>populī</b>	<i>people</i>
<b>Gallus</b>	<b>Gallī</b>	<i>Gaul (noun or adj.)</i>
<b>numerus</b>	<b>numerī</b>	<i>number</i>
<b>nūntius</b>	<b>nūntiī</b>	<i>message</i>
<b>hiemō</b>		<i>I winter</i>
<b>aedificō</b>		<i>I build</i>
<b>conlocō</b>		<i>I place</i>
<b>in, prep. with the accusative</b>		<i>into</i>
<b>in Galliam, in Ītaliā</b>		<i>into Gaul, into Italy</i>

## 28.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hiemāmus. 2. Hiemābāmus. 3. Aedificat. 4. Aedificābat. 5. Caesar Gallōrum cōpiās superābat. 6. Cōpiaē populī<sup>1</sup> Rōmānī<sup>2</sup> in vicō Belgārū hiemant. 7. Gallī amīcīs Galbae gladiōs novōs dabant.

II.—1. They were building. 2. Caesar is wintering in a new village. 3. Galba was building a high wall for his forces. 4. The ambassadors of the Belgians give swords and helmets to Galba's slaves.

## LESSON VII.

## FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

29. Future Indicative of *portō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. portābō, <i>I shall carry</i>	1. portābimus, <i>we shall carry</i>
2. portābis, <i>you will carry</i>	2. portābitis, <i>you will carry</i>
3. portābit, <i>he will carry</i>	3. portābunt, <i>they will carry</i>

The stem is **portā** ; the tense-signs are **bō**, **bi**, and **bu**, to which are annexed the personal endings **s**, **t**, **mus**, **tis**, **nt**.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive singular.<sup>2</sup> Adjective.

## 30. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-bō	-bimus
-bis	-bitis
-bit	-bunt

31. Order of words.—For answers to questions in the following sentence see (16).

**Caesar in Galliā cōpiis Galbae** *Caesar will seize in Gaul new*  
**vīcīs novīs occupābit,** *villages for Galba's forces*

Point out the subject. What does the adverbial phrase in Galliā limit? “Use of adjunct” (84). Name and give position of the *indirect object*. The genitive Galbae limits what? (7). *Direct object* and position? *Agreement of adjective* and its position? (4).

## 32.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
locus	locī	place
liberī	liberōrum ( <i>plur. only</i> )	children
Germānī	Germānōrum	Germans
fīnitimī	fīnitimōrum	neighbours
nostrī	nostrōrum	our (men) <sup>1</sup>
idōneus or	idōnea, <i>adj. mas. or fem.</i>	suitable
reliquus <sup>2</sup> or	reliqua, <i>adj. mas. or fem.</i>	remaining
mātūrō		I hasten
contrā,	<i>prep. with the acc.</i>	against

33. Conjugate in the present, imperfect, and future indicative mātūrō, conlocō, and hiemō, and give meanings.

<sup>1</sup> For this use of nostrī see (258).

<sup>2</sup> reliquus often means ‘the rest of,’ but the ‘of’ does not necessitate the use of a genitive: cōpiāe reliquae—cōpiās reliquās, may mean ‘the rest of the forces.’

Decline and give meanings of *causa*, *prōvincia*, *mūrus*, *gladius*, and *finitimi*.

**34. Use of the adjunct or adverbial phrase.**—The preposition with its noun forms an adverbial phrase and modifies the verb. Only the accusative and ablative cases demand the use of prepositions. The accusative contains the idea of *place whither*, the ablative *place whence* and *where*. Prepositions are used to define more exactly the local ideas involved in these cases.

**35. Uses of *in*.**—*In* + ablative = *in* or *on*, and modifies a verb of *rest* within the limits of one place. *In* + accusative = *into* (*to*, *against*), and modifies a verb of *motion* from one place to another.

*Caesar in Galliā (abl.) hiemā-* *Caesar was wintering (resting)*  
*bat,* *in Gaul*

*Caesar in Galliam (acc.) mā-* *Caesar will hasten into Gaul*  
*tūrābit,*

## 36.

## EXERCISE.

1. *Nostrī Germānōs et Belgās superābunt.* 2. *Germānī in locīs idōneīs liberōs cēlābant.* 3. *Reliquae Belgārum cōpiae contrā populum Rōmānum pūgnant.* 4. *Cōpiae Rōmānae (adj.) in Galliam pūgnae causā mātūrābunt.* 5. *Galbae amīcī nostrīs numerum gladiōrum māgnūm parant.*

## LESSON VIII.

## SECOND DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

**37. Nouns in *um*.**

Nouns ending in *um* are neuter. The *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative* are alike, ending in *um* in the *singular* and *a* in the *plural*.

**Oppidum, town.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Gen.</i>	oppidī	oppidōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	oppidō	oppidīs
<i>Acc.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Voc.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Abl.</i>	oppidō	oppidīs

Singular nouns ending in **a**, genitive **ae**, are *feminine* and are declined like *fossa*.

Plural nouns ending in **a**, genitive **ōrum**, are *neuter* and are declined like the *plural* of *oppidum*.

**38. Table of case-endings.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	-um	-a	<i>Acc.</i>	-um	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	-ī	-ōrum	<i>Voc.</i>	-um	-a
<i>Dat.</i>	-ō	-īs	<i>Abl.</i>	-ō	-īs

**39.****VOCABULARY.**

(The gender is *neuter*.)

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
scūtum	-ī	shield
vāllum	-ī	rampart
perīculum	-ī	danger
arma	armōrum ( <i>plur. only</i> )	arms
loca	locōrum	places <sup>1</sup>
nōn ( <i>adv.</i> )		not
expūgnō		I storm
per, <i>prep. with the acc.</i>		through
multus	multa	multum, <i>adj.</i> much <sup>2</sup>
altus	-a	-um, <i>adj.</i> high
māgnus	-a	-um, <i>adj.</i> great

<sup>1</sup> *Locus*, place, may in the plural take the endings of the *masculine* gender, like the plural of *servus*; or the endings of the *neuter*, like the plural of *oppidum*. In Caesar's Latin the *neuter* plural is regularly used.

<sup>2</sup> The three genders of the adjective occur side by side.

## 40.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostri in Galliam arma multa portābunt. 2. Cō-piae Rōmānae (*adj.*) Belgārum vicōs et oppida expūgnā-bant. 3. Germānī per oppida Belgārum arma et liberōs portant. 4. Belgae pūgnae causā in silvis altīs galeās et gladiōs et scūta cēlābunt. 5. Lēgātus populi Rōmānī nostrīs loca idōnea parat.

II.—1. Slaves were carrying Galba's arms through places of danger. 2. Neighbours of the Roman people (*sing.*) build large ramparts for Galba's forces. 3. Caesar will give helmets and shields to his beloved forces and storm the walls of the town.

## LESSON IX.

## SECOND DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

41. Puer,<sup>1</sup> boy, mas. Ager, field, mas. Vir, man, mas.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum	virī	virōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	puerōs	agrum	agrōs	virum	virōs
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs

42. Rule of gender.—Second-declension nouns ending in **us** are mostly *masculine*, sometimes *feminine*. Nouns in **er** and **ir** are *masculine*, those in **um** are *neuter*.

Decline the *nouns* of the first and second declensions (453, 454), and conjugate (with meanings) the present, imperfect, and future indicative of **amō** (474).

43. Ablative with *cum*.—When *with* means *together*

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the noun and agreeing adjective need not *end alike*; as, puer amātus, the beloved boy.

*with*, it is expressed not by the *ablative alone*, but by **cum** + *ablative*. This is called the “*ablative of attendance*.”

**Galba in Galliam cum cōpiis** *Galba hastens into Gaul with his forces*  
**mātūrat,**

In this example the two adverbial phrases in **Galliam** and **cum cōpiis** precede and limit the verb **mātūrat**, which they follow in the translation.

**Ablative without cum.**—The “*ablative of means or instrument*.”

**Nostri pīlis multīs castra ex-** *Our men are storming the camp*  
**pūgnant,** *with many javelins*

When means or instrument is to be expressed, the *ablative without cum* is used.

## 44.

## VOCABULARY.

(The gender is *neuter*.)

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>proelium</b>	<b>proeliī</b>	<i>battle</i>
<b>pīlum</b>	<b>-ī</b>	<i>javelin</i>
<b>castra</b>	<b>castrōrum</b> ( <i>plur. only</i> )	<i>camp</i> <sup>1</sup>
<b>hiberna</b>	<b>-ōrum</b>	<i>winter-quarters</i>
<b>praesidium</b>	<b>praesidiī</b>	<i>defence</i>
<b>cum, prep.</b> <i>with the abl.</i>		<i>with</i>
<b>redintegrō</b>		<i>I renew</i>

## 45.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānī cum nostrīs proelium nōn redintegrābunt. 2. Nostri gladiīs et pīlis praesidia Gallōrum expūgnābant. 3. Galba in Galliam cum cōpiis mātūrābit et armīs castra Gallōrum expūgnābit. 4. Cōpiae reliquae in castra arma portant et praesidia nova parant.

II.—1. Caesar places his new forces in winter-quarters for the sake of a defence. 2. Our men were storming the walls of the town and renewing battle with the Germans. 3. The friends of the Romans (*noun*) will build many ramparts for our men.

<sup>1</sup> Decline **castra** (37).

## LESSON X.

## ADJECTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

46. *Altus, alta, altum, high.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>altus</b>	<b>alta</b>	<b>altum</b>	<b>altī</b>	<b>altæ</b>	<b>alta</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>altī</b>	<b>altæ</b>	<b>altī</b>	<b>altōrum</b>	<b>altārum</b>	<b>altōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>altō</b>	<b>altæ</b>	<b>altō</b>	<b>altīs</b>	<b>altīs</b>	<b>altīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>altum</b>	<b>altam</b>	<b>altum</b>	<b>altōs</b>	<b>altās</b>	<b>alta</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>alte</b>	<b>alta</b>	<b>altum</b>	<b>altī</b>	<b>altæ</b>	<b>alta</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>altō</b>	<b>altā</b>	<b>altō</b>	<b>altīs</b>	<b>altīs</b>	<b>altīs</b>

47. *Uses of the ablative.*

1. Ablative of *place where* takes the preposition *in*, thus:  
**Caesar in Galliā hiemābit.**

2. Ablative of *attendance* takes the preposition *cum*, thus:  
**Galba cum cōpiīs mātūrat.**

3. Ablative of *means or instrument* has *no preposition*, thus: **Rōmāni gladiīs pūgnābant.**

In (1) and (2) the adverbial phrases **in Galliā** and **cum cōpiīs** modify the verb; in (3) **gladiīs**, though a noun in the ablative case, modifies **pūgnābant** in an adverbial sense.

## 48.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>nūntius</b>	<b>nūntiī, mas.</b>	<i>messenger</i>
<b>mora</b>	<b>-æ, fem.</b>	<i>delay</i>
<b>auxilium</b>	<b>auxiliī, neut.</b>	<i>aid or help</i>
<b>imperium</b>	<b>-ī, neut.</b>	<i>power or command</i>
<b>sine, prep. with the abl.</b>		<i>without</i>
<b>ē or ex, prep. with the abl.</b>		<i>out of</i>
<b>convocō</b>		<i>I summon</i>
<b>ut, conjunction</b>		<i>so that</i>
<b>Rēmī</b>	<b>-ōrum, mas.</b>	<i>the Remi</i>
<b>dubitō</b>		<i>I hesitate</i>

## 49.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostri cum Germānōrum finitimis proelium nōn redintegrābunt. 2. Lēgātus Rōmānus sine morā ex hibernis nūntiōs multōs convocābat. 3. Galba oppidī mūrōs expūgnābit et imperiī causā cōpiās Belgārum superābit. 4. Rēmī in proeliis multīs populō Rōmānō auxilium dant. 5. Caesar per prōvinciam cum cōpiis mātūrābit et in Italiā sine periculō hiemābit.

II.—1. Slaves were carrying arms out of the town into winter-quarters. 2. Caesar will not give help to the remaining Remi. 3. Germans seize the fields of the Gauls and renew the battle against our men.

## LESSON XI.

## FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

50. Present subjunctive of *portō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. portem, <i>I may</i> <sup>1</sup> <i>carry</i>	1. portēmus, <i>we may carry</i>
2. portēs, <i>you may carry</i>	2. portētis, <i>you may carry</i>
4. portet, <i>he may carry</i>	3. portent, <i>they may carry</i>

The present subjunctive is formed by changing final *ā*, of the stem *portā*, to *e* and annexing the *personal endings m, s, t, mus, tis, nt*.

This is the only tense in which the stem *portā* undergoes a change of the final vowel.

## 51. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-em	-ēmus
-ēs	-ētis
-et	-ent

<sup>1</sup> This meaning of the *present subjunctive* is given with a view to its use in *final clauses of purpose*. Other English renderings will be given later.



## 52.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>frumentum</b>	-ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>corn</i>
<b>equus</b>	-ī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>horse</i>
<b>oppidānī</b>	-ōrum, <i>mas.</i>	<i>townsmen</i>
<b>sīgnum</b>	-ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>signal</i>
<b>ut</b> ( <i>with the subjunctive</i> )		<i>so that</i>
<b>coniūrō</b>		<i>I conspire</i>
<b>vāstō</b>		<i>I lay waste</i>
<b>appellō</b>		<i>I call</i>
<b>praefectus</b>	-ī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>general</i>

**53. Use of *ut*.**—When *ut* means *so that*, it introduces a subordinate clause of *purpose*, and the verb of this clause is in the subjunctive. This *ut* + subjunctive may be translated by the *English infinitive*.

**54. Apposition.**

**Rōmānī Rēmīs amicīs auxiliū dant,**      *The Romans give help to the Remi, their friends*

In the English sentence *friends* is in apposition with and limits *Remi*; the Latin equivalent for *friends* is put in the *dative* to agree with **Rēmīs**, as the *appositive* takes the *case of the noun which it limits*.

**Example of the *ut* clause.**

**Pūgnant ut superent,**      *They fight so that they may overcome (or to overcome)*

The *English infinitive* “to overcome” is not rendered by the *Latin infinitive*; it must be changed to the *subjunctive*.

## 55.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Rōmānī gladiīs pūgnant, ut Gallōs superent.  
 2. Galba nostrīs equōs dabit, ut ex Italiā mātūrent. 3.  
 Caesar cum cōpiīs per prōvinciam mātūrat ut Gallōrum vicōs occupet. 4. Germānī cum Belgīs, finitimīs populī

Rōmānī, coniūrābunt. 5. Caesar signum proeliī dat et cōpiaē Rōmānae oppidum māgnū expūgnant.

II.—1. The Gauls build high walls so that they may avoid a battle with our men. 2. The Romans will not lay waste the fields of the Remi, their friends. 3. Caesar hastens into Gaul to prepare<sup>1</sup> a suitable camp for our men.

## LESSON XII.

### ADJECTIVE AND VERB, CONTINUED.

#### 56. Integer, integra, integrum, *fresh*.

The masculine gender is inflected like *ager*, the feminine like *fossa*, and the neuter like *oppidum*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	integer	-gra	-grum	integrī	-grae	-gra
<i>Gen.</i>	integrī	-grae	-grī	integrōrum	-grārum	-grōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	integrō	-grae	-grō	integrīs	-grīs	-grīs
<i>Acc.</i>	integrū	-gram	-grum	integrōs	-grās	-gra
<i>Voc.</i>	integer	-gra	-grum	integrī	-grae	-gra
<i>Abl.</i>	integrō	-grā	-grō	integrīs	-grīs	-grīs

57. **Principal parts of the verb.**—Latin verbs have four principal parts, so called because when these parts are known, the other forms of the verb may be found.

They are *present indicative*, *present infinitive*, *perfect indicative*, and the *first supine*. The *present infinitive* of the first conjugation is formed by changing *final* ō of the verb to ā-re (pronounced *ah-re*); thus, *portō*, *portāre* (to carry).

---

<sup>1</sup> Not infinitive in Latin.

## 58.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
subsidiū	-ī, neut.	<i>relief</i>
cōsiliū	-ī, neut.	<i>plan</i>
initium	-ī, neut.	<i>beginning</i>
œdificiū	-ī, neut.	<i>building</i>
impedimenta	-ōrum, neut. plur.	<i>baggage</i>
ferus -a, -um, adj.		<i>fierce</i>
sed, conj.		<i>but</i>
trāns, prep. with the acc.		<i>across</i>
propter, prep. with the acc.		<i>on account of</i>
ad, prep. with the acc.		<i>to or towards</i>
quod, conj.		<i>because</i>
cōfirmō		<i>I establish</i>

Conjugate the following verbs in the present subjunctive, and review them in the present, imperfect, and future indicative with meanings: *dubitō, appellō, convocō, and parō*. Decline *altus* and *crēber* (466).

59. Use of *ad*.—When “to” means *towards* (of place), it is expressed *not* by the *dative*, but by *ad* + *accusative*. This phrase—*ad* + *accusative*—modifies a verb which denotes *motion* from one place to another. Thus:

*Nostri ad Galbae castra mā-*    *Our men hasten to Galba's*  
*tūrant,*                                *camp*

But:

*Caesar Galbae (dat.) equum*    *Caesar gives a horse to Galba*  
*dat,*

## 60.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Galba proeliū causā ē castris nostrōs convocāre nōn dubitābit.* 2. *Praefecti nostrī (adj.) ad Galbae castra gladiōs et scūta portāre parant.* 3. *Praefectus Rōmānus in Galliā aedificia nōn vāstābat sed cum Gallis amicitiam cōfirmābat.* 4. *Caesar cōpiis amātis arma nova dabit ut castra Germānōrum expūgent.*

II.—1. The Belgians do not hesitate to build high walls so that they may avoid a battle. 2. The remaining Gauls were preparing to renew the battle with the Germans, their neighbours. 3. The fierce Germans are carrying corn to the camp of the Belgians; they will not give aid to Galba.

## LESSON XIII.

### VERB, CONTINUED.

#### 61. Imperfect subjunctive of *portō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>portārem, I might carry</i>	1. <i>portārēmus, we might carry</i>
2. <i>portārēs, you might carry</i>	2. <i>portārētis, you might carry</i>
3. <i>portāret, he might carry</i>	3. <i>portārent, they might carry</i>

#### 61. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-rem	-rēmus
-rēs	-rētis
-ret	-rent

These endings are annexed to the stem *portā*.

Conjugate in both *present* and *imperfect subjunctive*, and give meanings of *fugō*, *mandō*, and *imperō*.

#### 63. Principal parts of verbs.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Indic.	First Supine.	
<i>fugō</i>	<i>fugāre</i>	<i>fugāvī</i>	<i>fugātum</i>	<i>to rout</i>
<i>pūgnō</i>	<i>pūgnāre</i>	<i>pūgnāvī</i>	<i>pūgnātum</i>	<i>to fight</i>
<i>occupō</i>	<i>occupāre</i>	<i>occupāvī</i>	<i>occupātum</i>	<i>to seize</i>

64. Moods and tenses.—The indicative mood has six tenses, viz.: present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect.

The subjunctive has four tenses: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.

The first *three* of the indicative and the first *two* of the subjunctive are formed upon the *present stem*.

**65. Ablative of time.**—*Time when or within which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

**Vigiliā secundā trāns Rhēnum** *He hastens across the Rhine in*  
*mātūrat,* *(during) the second watch*  
**Nostri initiō proeliī Germānōs** *Our men rout the Germans in*  
*fugant,* *the beginning of the battle*

**Vigiliā** and **initiō**, though nouns in the ablative case, in an adverbial sense modify the verb.

## 66.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>animus</b>	-ī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>mind</i>
<b>Rhēnus</b>	-ī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>the Rhine</i>
<b>tēlum</b>	-ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>weapon</i>
<b>prō, prep.</b>	<i>with the abl.</i>	<i>in front of</i>
<b>primus</b>	-a, -um, <i>num. adj.</i>	<i>first</i>
<b>secundus</b>	-a, -um, “ “	<i>second</i>
<b>extrēmus</b>	-a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>farthest</i>
<b>oppūgnō</b>	-āre	<i>to attack</i>
<b>mandō</b>	-āre	<i>to direct or instruct</i>
<b>imperō</b>	-āre	<i>to command</i>
<b>fugō</b>	-āre	<i>to rout</i>
<b>vigilia</b>	-ae, <i>fem.</i>	<i>watch (division of the night)</i>

## 67.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostri prō castris vālla alta aedificant. 2. Caesar cum cōpiis trāns Rhēnum ad oppida Germānōrum mātūrābat. 3. Germānī in castra lēgātōs Rōmānōs convocant et nostris auxilium dare parant. 4. Nostri in Galbae castra tēla multa portābunt et primā vigiliā Belgās fugābunt. 5. Gallī prō mūrō oppidī cōpiās integrās conlocābant ut proelium cum nostris redintegrārent.

II.—1. Our (*adj.*) general will not hesitate to attack a

town of the Belgians in farthest Gaul. 2. Our men were carrying new weapons into the general's camp so that they might rout the Gauls. 3. The Belgians in many places build high walls for the sake of defence.

## LESSON XIV.

### VERB AND ADJECTIVE, CONTINUED. REVIEW OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

#### 68. Conjugation of *imperō*.

Present Indicative. <i>I command.</i>	Imperfect Indicative. <i>was commanding.</i>	Future Indicative. <i>shall command.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. <i>imperō</i>	<i>imperābam</i>	<i>imperābō</i>
2. <i>imperās</i>	<i>imperābās</i>	<i>imperābis</i>
3. <i>imperat</i>	<i>imperābat</i>	<i>imperābit</i>
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. <i>imperāmus</i>	<i>imperābāmus</i>	<i>imperābimus</i>
2. <i>imperātis</i>	<i>imperābātis</i>	<i>imperābitis</i>
3. <i>imperant</i>	<i>imperābant</i>	<i>imperābunt</i>
Present Subjunctive. <i>may command.</i>	Imperfect Subjunctive. <i>might command.</i>	
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	
1. <i>imperem</i>	<i>imperārem</i>	
2. <i>imperēs</i>	<i>imperārēs</i>	
3. <i>imperet</i>	<i>imperāret</i>	
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	
1. <i>imperēmus</i>	<i>imperārēmus</i>	
2. <i>imperētis</i>	<i>imperārētis</i>	
3. <i>imperent</i>	<i>imperārent</i>	

69. Agreement of the adjective.—Compare the *ending* of the *adjective* and the *ending* of the *noun* which it limits, in the following:

**Nostrī Belgās ferōs fugābunt,** *Our men will rout the fierce Belgians*

Do the noun **Belgās** and the adjective **ferōs** end alike? Look up the *gender* of **Belgās** and apply the rule for agreement of the adjective (4).

### 70. Imperative mood of *portō*.

#### SINGULAR.

#### PLURAL.

- |                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. [wanting]                       | [wanting]                          |
| 2. { <i>portā, carry (thou)</i>    | { <i>portāte, carry (ye)</i>       |
| { <i>portātō, thou shalt carry</i> | { <i>portātōte, ye shall carry</i> |
| 3. <i>portātō, he shall carry</i>  | <i>portantō, they shall carry</i>  |

### Examples of the use of the imperative.

**Gladiōs portā, serve!**                      *Slave, carry the swords!*  
**Oppidum, praefectī, expūgnāte!**      *Generals, storm the town!*

Do not place the person addressed (*voc.*) *first* in a Latin sentence.

### 71.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Germānōs fugāte, Rōmānī!* 2. *Gallī, ut periculum vitent, ex oppidis mātūrant.* 3. *Galba tubā signum proeliī dabit et nostrī in Germānōrum castrīs equōs et arma occupābunt.* 4. *Germānī cum Belgīs coniūrābant ut populī (gen.) Rōmānī praesidia expūgnārent.* 5. *Praefectī Rōmānī in hibernīs idōneō in vicō cōpiās conlocābunt.*

II.—1. *General, give the signal!* 2. *The Germans will attack the remaining towns and winter in the villages of the Gauls.* 3. *The townsmen hasten to Galba's camp to establish<sup>1</sup> friendship with<sup>2</sup> the Roman people.*

<sup>1</sup> Not infinitive in Latin.

<sup>2</sup> Use *cum*.

## LESSON XV.

**PORTŌ, CONTINUED. PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES, COMPLETED.****72. Present system of *portō* completed.***Present participle* portāns, *carrying**Present infinitive* portāre, *to carry**Gerund* portandī, *of carrying*

**73. Gerund defined and declined.**—The gerund is, in form, a neuter verbal noun of the second declension, corresponding in meaning to the English verbal noun ending in *ing*.

The gerund is thus declined. The *nominative* is supplied by the present infinitive active.

*Gen.* portandī, *of carrying**Dat.* portandō, *to or for carrying**Acc. (ad)* portandum, *for carrying**Abl.* portandō, *from, with, by, etc., carrying*

**74. Use of the gerund.**—The gerund in any form governs the same case as the verb of which it is a part. As:

*Agrōs vāstandō, By laying waste the fields*

**75. Synopsis of *portō* in the present system.**—The following nine forms are built upon the *present stem portā*:

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	portō,	<i>I carry</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	portābam,	<i>I was carrying</i>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	portābō,	<i>I shall carry</i>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	portem,	<i>I may carry</i>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	portārem,	<i>I might carry</i>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	portā,	<i>carry (thou)</i>
7. <i>Present participle</i>	portāns,	<i>carrying</i>
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	portāre,	<i>to carry</i>
9. <i>Gerund</i>	portandī,	<i>of carrying</i>



Give complete synopsis, *present system*, in order of "tense-name," "tense-form," and "meaning," of *incūsō* and *sustentō*.

Decline the *nouns* of the *first* and *second declensions* (453, 454), also *altus* and *crēber* (466). Name *four* kinds of *ablatives*.

## 76.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
rēgnum	-ī, neut.	kingdom or royal power
facile, adv.		easily
castellum	-ī, neut.	redoubt
armātus	-a, -um, adj.	armed
proximus	-a, -um, "	next
parātus	-a, -um, "	ready
incūsō	-āre, -āvī, -ātum	to blame
sustentō	-āre, -āvī, -ātum	to hold out
impetrō	-āre, -āvī, -ātum	to obtain

## 77. Relation of words and clauses.

Lēgātī Belgārum ad Galbae castra veniunt, ut cum populō Rōmānō amicitiam cōnfirmēt,  
*Ambassadors of the Belgians come to Galba's camp to establish\* friendship with the Roman people*

Lēgātī = subject of the principal verb *veniunt* (indicative mood).

Belgārum = genitive plural modifying *lēgātī*.

{ ad = preposition governing the noun *castra* in the accusative.

{ Galbae = genitive singular limiting *castra*.

{ castra = object of *ad*: this phrase limits the principal verb *veniunt*—a verb of motion.

*veniunt* = present indicative active, 3d plural, *not of the first conjugation*.

---

\* To establish, etc., subordinate clause denoting purpose (53).

**ut** = conjunction going with **cōfirment**: this entire clause denotes *purpose* and is subordinate to **veniunt**.

**cum** = preposition governing the noun **populō** in the *ablative*.

**populō** = object of **cum**: this phrase limits the verb **cōfirment**.

**Rōmānō** = adjective modifying **populō** in the *ablative singular masculine*.

**amicitiā** = direct object of **cōfirment**.

**cōfirment** = present subjunctive active, 3d plural; subjunctive of *purpose after ut*.

## 78. REVIEW VOCABULARY.

## LESSONS I—XV.

1. **trāns** (prep. with the *acc.*), *across*
2. **contrā** (prep. with the *acc.*), *against*
3. **auxilium, auxiliī** (neut.), *aid*
4. **iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum**, *to aid*
5. **adiuvō, adiuuāre, adiūvī, adiūtum**, *to aid*
6. **sum, esse, fui** [no supine], *be or am*
7. **lēgātus, lēgātī** (mas.), *ambassador*
8. **et** (conj.), *and*
9. **armātus, armāta, armātum** (adj.), *armed*
10. **arma, armōrum** (neut.), *arms*
11. **oppūgnō, oppūgnāre, oppūgnāvī, oppūgnātum**, *attack*
12. **vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātum**, *avoid*
13. **impedimenta, impedimentōrum** (neut.), *baggage*
14. **rīpa, rīpae** (fem.), *bank*
15. **proelium, proeliī** (neut.), *battle*
16. **quod** (conj.), *because*
17. **initium, initiī** (neut.), *beginning*
18. **Belgae, Belgārum** (mas.), *Belgians*
19. **amātus, amāta, amātum** (adj.), *beloved*
20. **incūsō, incūsāre, incūsāvī, incūsātum**, *blame*
21. **puer, puerī** (mas.), *boy*
22. **lātus, lāta, lātum** (adj.), *broad or wide*
23. **aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātum**, *build*
24. **aedificium, aedificiī** (neut.), *building*
25. **sed** (conj.), *but*
26. **appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum**, *call*
27. **castra, castrōrum** (neut.), *camp*
28. **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum**, *carry*
29. **causa, causae** (fem.), *cause*
30. **liberī, liberōrum** (mas.), *children*
31. **imperium, imperiī** (neut.), *command*

32. imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, *to command*
33. cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātum, *conceal*
34. coniūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī, coniūrātum, *conspire*
35. frūmentum, frūmentī (neut.), *corn*
36. periculum, periculī (neut.), *danger*
37. praesidium, praesidiī (neut.), *defence*
38. mora, morae (fem.), *delay*
39. mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātum, *direct or instruct*
40. fossa, fossae (fem.), *ditch*
41. facile (adv.), *easily*
42. cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvī, cōfirmātum, *establish*
43. extrēmus, extrēma, extrēmum (adj.), *farthest*
44. ager, agrī (mas.), *field*
45. ferus, fera, ferum (adj.), *fierce*
46. pūgna, pūgnae (fem.), *fight*
47. pūgnō, pūgnāre, pūgnāvī, pūgnātum, *to fight*
48. primus, prima, primum, *first*
49. fuga, fugae (fem.), *flight*
50. causā (stands *after* the gen.), *for the sake of*
51. cōpia, cōpiarum (fem.), *forces*
52. silva, silvae (fem.), *forest*
53. integer, integra, integrum (adj.), *fresh*
54. amicus, amicī (mas.), *friend*
55. amicitia, amicitiae (fem.), *friendship*
56. Galba, Galbae (mas.), *Galba*
57. porta, portae (fem.), *gate*
58. Gallia, Galliae (fem.), *Gaul (country)*
59. Gallus, Gallī (mas.), *Gaul (citizen)*
60. praefectus, praefectī (mas.), *general*
61. Germānī, Germānōrum (mas.), *Germans*
62. dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give*
63. māgnus, māgna, māgnum, *great or large*
64. mātūrō, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī, mātūrātum, *hasten*
65. galea, galeae (fem.), *helmet*
66. auxilium, auxiliī (neut.), *help*
67. dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātum, *hesitate*

68. **altus, alta, altum** (adj.), *high, tall, or deep*
69. **sustentō, sustentāre, sustentāvī, sustentātum**, *hold out*
70. **equus, equī** (mas.), *horse*
71. **in** (prep. with the *abl.*), *in*; (with the *acc.*) *into*
72. **prō** (prep. with the *abl.*), *in front of*
73. **Ītalia, Ītaliae** (fem.), *Italy*
74. **pīlum, pīlī** (neut.), *javelin*
75. **rēgnum, rēgnī** (neut.), *kingdom or power*
76. **vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum**, *lay waste*
77. **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum**, *love*
78. **vir, virī** (mas.), *man*
79. **multus, multa, multum** (adj.), *much or many*
80. **nūntius, nūntiī** (mas.), *message or messenger*
81. **animus, animī** (mas.), *mind*
82. **finitimī, finitimōrum** (mas.), *neighbours*
83. **novus, nova, novum** (adj.), *new*
84. **proximus, proxima, proximum** (adj.), *next*
85. **nōn** (adv.), *not*
86. **numerus, numerī** (mas.), *number*
87. **impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātum**, *obtain*
88. **propter** (prep. with the *acc.*), *on account of*
89. **noster, nostra, nostrum** (adj.), *our*
90. **nostrī, nostrōrum** (mas.), *our men*
91. **ē** or **ex** (prep. with the *abl.*), *out of*
92. **superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum**, *overcome*
93. **populus, populī** (mas.), *people*
94. **locus, locī** (mas.), *place*; (plur. neut.) *loca*
95. **conlocō conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātum**, *to place*
96. **loca, locōrum** (neut.), *places*
97. **cōnsilium, cōnsiliī** (neut.), *plan*
98. **parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum**, *prepare*
99. **prōvincia, prōvinciae** (fem.), *province*
100. **vāllum, vāllī** (neut.), *rampart*
101. **parātus, parāta, parātum** (adj.), *ready*
102. **castellum, castellī** (neut.), *redoubt*
103. **subsidium, subsidīī** (neut.), *relief*

104. **Rēmī, Rēmōrum** (mas.), *Remi*
105. **reliquus, reliqua, reliquum** (adj.), *remaining*
106. **redintegrō, redintegrāre, redintegrāvī, redintegrātum, renew**
107. **Rhēnus, Rhēnī** (mas.), *Rhine*
108. **Rōmānus, Rōmānī** (mas.), *Roman*
109. **Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum** (adj.), *Roman*
110. **fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum, rout**
111. **prōfigō, prōfigāre, prōfigāvī, prōfigātum, rout**
112. **secundus, secunda, secundum** (adj.), *second*
113. **occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum, seize**
114. **servus, servī** (mas.), *servant or slave*
115. **scūtum, scūtī** (neut.), *shield*
116. **sīgnum, sīgnī** (neut.), *signal*
117. **ut** (conj.), *so that*
118. **expūgnō, expūgnāre, expūgnāvī, expūgnātum, storm**
119. **idōneus, idōnea, idōneum** (adj.), *suitable*
120. **convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātum, summon**
121. **gladius, gladii** (mas.), *sword*
122. **per** (prep. with the acc.), *through*
123. **ad** (prep. with the acc.), *to, towards*
124. **oppidum, oppidī** (neut.), *town*
125. **oppidānī, oppidānōrum** (mas.), *townsmen*
126. **tuba, tubae** (fem.), *trumpet*
127. **vīcus, vīcī** (mas.), *village*
128. **mūrus, mūrī** (mas.), *wall*
129. **tēlum, tēlī** (neut.), *weapon*
130. **hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātum, winter**
131. **hīberna, hībernōrum** (neut.), *winter-quarters*
132. **cum** (prep. with the abl.), *with*
133. **sine** (prep. with the abl.), *without*

## LESSON XVI.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

79. Qui, quae, quod, *who, which, what, or that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
Gen.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
Acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 80. Review of the declension of the relative in English grammar.

<i>who.</i>			<i>which.</i>		
	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	<i>who</i>	<i>who</i>		<i>which</i>	<i>which</i>
Nom.	<i>who</i>	<i>who</i>	Nom.	<i>which</i>	<i>which</i>
Poss.	<i>whose</i>	<i>whose</i>	Poss.	<i>whose, of which</i>	<i>whose, of which</i>
Obj.	<i>whom</i>	<i>whom</i>	Obj.	<i>which</i>	<i>which</i>

Observe that the English pronoun *who* may be *masculine* or *feminine*, *singular* or *plural*, as is seen in the following examples: 1. This is the *boy who* is diligent. 2. These are the *boys who* are truthful. 3. Tell me the name of the *girl who* is reciting. 4. There are many *girls who* read good books.

In example (1) '*who*' is *singular* and *masculine*, agreeing with its antecedent, '*boy*.' In example (2) '*who*' is *plural* and *masculine* to agree with its antecedent, '*boys*.' In (3) '*who*' is *singular feminine* to agree with its antecedent, while in (4) '*who*' is *plural feminine*.

## 81.

## VOCABULARY.

Review words 1-66 in 'review vocabulary' (78).

## 82. Commit to memory:

- |                         |                                   |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Lēgātus quī mātūrat, | <i>The ambassador who hastens</i> |
| 2. Gallī quī hiemant,   | <i>The Gauls who winter</i>       |

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| 3. Cōpiæ quæ parant,     | <i>The forces which prepare</i>         |
| 4. Tuba quæ signum dat,  | <i>The trumpet which gives a signal</i> |
| 5. Praesidia quæ cēlant, | <i>The defences which conceal</i>       |
| 6. Pīlum quod superat,   | <i>The javelin which overcomes</i>      |

**83. Agreement of the relative.**—The relative *must* agree with its antecedent in *number, gender, and person*; the case of the relative is determined *by its function in its own clause*, which function is always different from that of its antecedent. There can be no relative pronoun without at least two verbs in the sentence.

## LESSON XVII.

### RELATIVE PRONOUN, CONTINUED.

**84. *Castra* and the relative pronoun.**—As *castra* is *plural* in form and *singular* in meaning and also *neuter*, a relative pronoun referring to *castra* as its antecedent must be *neuter* and *plural*, as in example (1).

When *castra* becomes the *subject* of a verb, the latter takes a *plural form* in Latin, although it is *singular* in English, as in example (2).

#### **85. Examples of *castra*, etc.**

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Caesar castra quæ impedī-<br>menta cēlant expūgnat, | <i>Caesar storms the camp which<br/>conceals the baggage</i> |
| 2. Castra Galbae equōs cēlā-<br>bant,                  | <i>The camp concealed Galba's<br/>horses</i>                 |

#### **86.**

#### **VOCABULARY.**

Review words 67–133 in ‘review vocabulary’ (78).

**87.** Conjugate and give meanings of *fugō* and *mandō* in the *imperative* (70); also decline their *gerunds* and give their *present participles* and *present infinitives* (72, 73).



88. What is the *present stem* of *cōfirmō*?

*How many* forms are derived from this stem?

Give full synopsis of these *with meanings*.

How express in Latin a subordinate clause of *purpose*?

Explain fully the agreement of the *relative quae* in Latin sentence (3) below.

89.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Praefectus quī in Galliā hiemat cum Belgis proelium redintegrābit. 2. Galba pilis multis aedificia Germānōrum quī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrant expūgnat. 3. Praefectī nostrī (*adj.*) in hibernis in prōvinciā cōpiās quae castella nova aedificant conlocābunt. 4. Germānī quī in castra cōpiās convocant, ut pūgnam vītent, proelium nōn redintegrābunt sed ē castris fugā mātūrābunt.

II.—1. With the aid of the Remi Galba overcomes the remaining Belgians who are laying waste the fields of the Romans. 2. Slaves were carrying many weapons into the camp which concealed the baggage of the Roman general. 3. Our men overcome in many battles the forces which are building defences in Gaul. 4. The fierce Belgians will establish friendship with their neighbours and storm the town which gives aid to the Roman forces.

### LESSON XVIII.

#### RELATIVE PRONOUN, CONTINUED.

90. Examples of the relative as the object:

1. Oppidum quod Galba occupat, *The town which Galba seizes*
2. Agrī quōs Germānī vāstant, *The fields which the Germans lay waste*

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 3. <i>Castra quae Rēmī in Galliā conlocant,</i>      | <i>The camp which the Remi place in Gaul</i>         |
| 4. <i>Cōpiae quās Caesar in prōvinciam convocat,</i> | <i>Forces which Caesar summons into the province</i> |
| 5. <i>Tuba quam Galba servō dat,</i>                 | <i>The trumpet which Galba gives to (his) slave</i>  |
| 6. <i>Lēgātus quem praefectī incūsant,</i>           | <i>The ambassador whom the generals blame</i>        |

## 91.

## VOCABULARY.

Learn the *principal parts* and *meanings* of verbs 1-10 (448).

92. How words are joined together in a sentence.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Belgae contrā integrās cōpiās quās Caesar in castra convocat nōn sustentābunt,</i> | <i>The Belgians will not hold out against the fresh forces which Caesar is summoning into camp</i> |
|---|--|

**Belgae:** subject of **sustentābunt**, which is the *principal verb* in the sentence and is placed *at the end*. **contrā integrās cōpiās:** adverbial phrase, modifies **sustentābunt**. **integrās:** *precedes cōpiās*, because **cōpiās** is the antecedent of the relative **quās** and should immediately precede the relative. **quās:** begins the relative clause and is the *direct object* of **convocat**. **Caesar:** subject of **convocat**. **in castra:** adverbial phrase limiting the *next verb*, **convocat**. **nōn:** adverb limiting **sustentābunt**.

## 93.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Cōpiae quās Galba in hibernīs conlocat Belgārum praesidia nōn oppugnābunt.* 2. *Nostri cum Rēmīs coniūrandō castra quae Germānī in Galliā conlocābant oppugnāre parābant.* 3. *Praefectī Galbae in Galliam mātūrāre*

nōn dubitant, ut oppida quae amīci Germānōrum imperiī causā aedificant oppūgnent. 4. Caesar cōpiīs amātīs vicōs quōs nostrī in Galliā facile expūgnābant (*stormed*) dabit.

II.—1. The slaves whom Galba conceals in a suitable place will carry relief to the Remi. 2. Caesar was giving swords and javelins to the Remi, whom he calls friends, so that they might attack the large camp which the Germans were preparing to place in Gaul. 3. O Romans! storm the redoubt which the Belgians are preparing. 4. Galba's forces will attack the wall which the Germans are building.

## LESSON XIX.

### RELATIVE PRONOUN, CONTINUED. IRREGULAR VERB SUM, I AM.

**94. Present indicative, *sum, I am*. Imperfect indicative, *eram, I was*. Future indicative, *erō, I shall be*.**

<i>I am.</i>		<i>I was.</i>		<i>I shall be.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>sum, I am</i>	<i>sumus, we are</i>	<i>eram</i>	<i>erāmus</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>erimus</i>
2. <i>es, you are</i>	<i>estis, you are</i>	<i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>	<i>eris</i>	<i>eritis</i>
3. <i>est, he is</i>	<i>sunt, they are</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>erant,</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

**95. Use of *sum*—Predicate nominative.**—Forms of *sum* are followed by a *noun* or an *adjective* in the nominative case; such a nominative is called a *predicate nominative*. If the predicate nominative is an *adjective*, it takes the *gender* and *number* of the *subject* to which it belongs. The case with *esse* will be explained later.

## 96.

### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 11–20 (448).

## 97. Examples of the predicate nominative :

- |                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Mūrus altus est,    | <i>The wall is tall</i>         |
| 2. Porta lāta est,     | <i>The gate is wide</i>         |
| 3. Oppidum māgnū erat, | <i>The town was large</i>       |
| 4. Cōpiae ferae erant, | <i>The forces were fierce</i>   |
| 5. Belgae ferī erant,  | <i>The Belgians were fierce</i> |
| 6. Castra māgna erunt, | <i>The camp will be large</i>   |

In the above sentences the *predicate adjective* is in the *nominative*, having the *number* and *gender* of the subject to which it belongs. In (2) *lāta* is *nominative singular feminine*, to agree with *porta*. In (6) *castra* is *plural*, hence *erunt* is *plural* and *māgna* is *nominative plural neuter*, agreeing with *castra*.

## 98. The pronoun in the genitive (possessive) case.

## EXAMPLES.

- |                             |                                       |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Germānī quōrum castra    | <i>The Germans whose camp Galba</i>   |
| Galba occupābit,            | <i>will seize</i>                     |
| 2. Cōpiae quārum tēla nova  | <i>The forces whose weapons are</i>   |
| sunt,                       | <i>new</i>                            |
| 3. Oppidum cūius mūrī altī  | <i>The town whose walls are tall</i>  |
| sunt,                       |                                       |
| 4. Praefectus Rōmānus cūius | <i>The Roman general whose forces</i> |
| cōpiae Gallōs superābant,   | <i>overcame the Gauls</i>             |

## 99.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Silvae in Galliā multae sunt (*there are many*, etc.).  
 2. Mūrus oppidī altus est. 3. Sumus amīci populī Rōmānī.  
 4. Nostri tēlīs et armīs vicum cūius mūrī nōn māgnī sunt expūgnābunt. 5. Caesar praefectō cūius cōpiae ad Belgās auxilium nōn portābant pīla multa dabat. 6. Nostri frūmentō Belgās quōrum oppida in prōvinciā sunt iuvābant (*were aiding*).

II.—1. The walls are tall. 2. Galba's camp is new.  
 3. The Roman forces are fresh. 4. Caesar will give help to the Remi whose fields are in farthest Gaul. 5. Our generals will carry corn into the town whose walls the fierce Belgians

are preparing to storm. 6. The forces whose generals Galba summons out of winter-quarters will renew the battle, so that they may rout the Germans.

## LESSON XX.

### PORTŌ, CONTINUED. PERFECT STEM.

**100. Perfect indicative of *portō*, I carried, have carried, did carry.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. portāvī	1. portāvimus
2. portāvistī	2. portāvistis
3. portāvit	3. portāvērunt (ēre)

### Personal endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-ī	-imus
-istī	-istis
-it	-ērunt (ēre)

**101. Portāv**, the stem of this tense, called the *perfect stem*, is found by dropping *final i* from the first person singular of the *perfect indicative*.

Conjugate, with meanings, *vītō*, *parō*, and *occupō* in the *perfect indicative*.

**102. Meanings of the perfect and imperfect indicative.**—The *perfect* tense has *two* uses, denoting (1) an action *completed just now* (*Definite perfect*), or (2) one *completed at some point of past time* (*Indefinite* or *Historical perfect*): as, (*definite perfect*) *pater pervēnit*, *father has (already) arrived*; (*indefinite perfect*) *Caesar omnem Galliam vicit*, *Caesar conquered all Gaul*.

The *imperfect* tense represents an action as *continued* in

the *past*. The action may be (1) *continuous* in the past; as, *oppidānī oppidum aedificābant*, *the townsmen were building a town*;—(2) *customary* or *usual* action; as, *Germānī Rhēnum trānsībant*, *the Germans used to cross (kept crossing) the Rhine*;—(3) *attempted* action (*Conative imperfect*); as, *hostēs pontem incendēbant*, *the enemy tried to burn the bridge*.

## 103.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 21–30 (448).

104. Use of *quod*,<sup>1</sup> *because*.—*Quod* introduces a subordinate clause to show ‘reason why,’ and such a clause is called a *causal clause*.

Causal clauses do not usually stand last.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. <i>Quod nostrī ad pūgnandum</i>   | <i>Galba gives the signal, because</i> |
| <i>(gerund) parātī sunt, Galba</i>   | <i>our men are ready for fight-</i>    |
| <i>sīgnum dat,</i>                   | <i>ing</i>                             |
| 2. <i>Quod Belgae coniūrāvērunt,</i> | <i>Because the Belgians conspired,</i> |
| <i>Galba oppida oppugnāre</i>        | <i>Galba prepared to attack their</i>  |
| <i>parāvit,</i>                      | <i>towns</i>                           |

In (1) above *quod* introduces *sunt parātī*, giving the *cause* of and modifying the *principal verb*, *dat*. So in (2) *quod . . . coniūrāvērunt* limits *parāvit*, stating the *reason* for the action.

## 105.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Servī fugae causā praefectīs equōs parāvērunt*.  
 2. *Quod Germānī quōs fugāvit ex Galliā mātūrābant*,  
*Caesar in hibernīs cōpiās conlocāvit*. 3. *Caesar praefectōs*  
*incūsābat, quod contrā Belgās proeliō nōn sustentāvērunt*  
*(did not hold out) sed fugā in castra mātūrāvērunt*. 4.  
*Belgārum cōpiae quās nostrī initiō proeliī superāvērunt*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Quod, quia, quoniam*, discussed in (276).

equōs parābant (*were making ready*), ut trāns Rhēnum mātūrārent. 5. Galba, praefectus Rōmānōrum, quod Germānī multōs populī Rōmānī agrōs vāstābant, proelium redintegrāre parāvit.

II.—1. The generals in Galba's camp routed the remaining Belgians with the forces<sup>1</sup> which the Remi gave (*dedē-runt*) to the Roman people. 2. The general to whom Caesar gave fresh forces will easily storm the redoubt of the Belgians. 3. The townsmen to whom Caesar gives corn and weapons are friends of the Roman people. 4. The Germans will hasten out of the village, in which they are wintering, to lay waste the fields of the Belgians.

## LESSON XXI.

### PORTŌ AND SUM, CONTINUED.

106. Pluperfect indicative of *portō*. Future perfect indicative.

*had carried.*

SINGULAR.

1. portāveram
2. portāverās
3. portāverat

PLURAL.

1. portāverāmus
2. portāverātis
3. portāverant

*shall have carried.*

SINGULAR.

- portāverō
- portāveris
- portāverit

PLURAL.

- portāverimus
- portāveritis
- portāverint

107. These two tenses *complete* the indicative mood of *portō* in the active voice. See indicative mood, active, (*six tenses*,) of *amō* (474). Conjugate the entire indicative mood of *sustentō*, *convocō*, and *dō*. Distinguish the indicative tenses with respect to *stems*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of means (43), 'ablative without cum.'

108. Present subjunctive of *sum*. Imperfect subjunctive.

<i>may be.</i>		<i>might be.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
2. <i>sis</i>	<i>sītis</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
3. <i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>

## 109.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 31–40 (448).

110. Subordinate clauses.—Three kinds of subordinate clauses have thus far been used, viz.: the *ut clause*, the *relative*, and the *quod clause*. What can be said of the *ut clause*? of the agreement and position of the *relative*? of the meaning of the *quod clause*?

## 111.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānī prō oppidī mūrīs vālla alta conlocandō praesidia parāverant. 2. Quod perīcula proelii māgna sunt, Caesar in silvīs altīs pūgnam nōn redintegrābit. 3. Praefectus cōpiīs integrīs equōs et arma dedit, ut ad Rēmōs, amīcōs, subsidium portārent. 4. Germānī propter māgnū nostrōrum numerum vīcum novum in quem liberōs et impedimenta portāre parābant aedificāvērunt. 5. Lēgātus Rōmānōrum oppidānōs, quod amīcīs populī Rōmānī subsidium nōn dederant, incūsābat.

II.—1. Because the Germans gave aid to the Belgians who were not friends of the Roman people, Caesar<sup>1</sup> hastened<sup>2</sup> to attack with many forces the redoubt which they had placed in front of their camp. 2. With the help<sup>3</sup> of the slaves whom Galba had summoned into Gaul, our generals<sup>1</sup> built<sup>3</sup> a large camp in which they placed weapons for storming (*ad + gerund*) the towns of the Belgians.

<sup>1</sup> Place first in sentence.<sup>2</sup> Place last.<sup>3</sup> Ablative of means (43), 'ablative without cum.'



## LESSON XXII.

## THIRD DECLENSION. SUM, CONTINUED.

112. *Miles, soldier, mas.*

## Case-endings.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>mīles</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	—	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>mīlitum</i>	-is	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mīlitī</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	-ī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	-em	-ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>mīles</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	—	-ēs
<i>Abī.</i>	<i>mīlite</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	-e	-ibus

113. The stem<sup>1</sup> of *mīles* may be found by dropping *is* from the *genitive singular*: *mīlitis*, stem *mīlit*.

The *nominative* and *vocative* singular are alike, differing somewhat from the *stem*; the remaining cases of the *singular* and *all* the cases of the *plural* are formed by annexing the *case-endings* to the *stem*. The *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative plural* end in *ēs*, the *dative* and *ablative plural* in *ibus*.

## 114. VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 41-46 (448).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<i>pedes</i>	<i>peditis, mas.</i>	<i>footman, plural infantry</i>
<i>eques</i>	<i>equitis, mas.</i>	<i>horseman, plural cavalry</i>
<i>obses</i>	<i>obsidis, mas.</i>	<i>hostage</i>
<i>bellum</i>	-ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>war</i>
<i>Sēquani</i>	-ōrum, <i>mas.</i>	<i>the Sequani</i>
<i>inimicus</i>	-a -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>unfriendly</i>
<i>bonus</i>	-a -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>good</i>
<i>armō</i>	(give principal parts)	<i>to arm</i>
<i>dēcertō</i>	" " "	<i>to contend</i>
<i>exercitō</i>	" " "	<i>to train</i>

Decline *pedes*, *eques*, and *obses*.

<sup>1</sup> For the classification of stems see Third Declension (455).

115. Notice carefully the *agreement* of *adjective* and *noun* in the following:

1. *servī bonī, of a good slave*
2. *mīlītis bonī, of a good soldier*

Nouns and their modifying adjectives end alike only when declined alike, as in (1) above. In (2) the requirement is that each should have the ending proper to *identity* of *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

### 116. Imperative of *sum*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. [wanting]	1. [wanting]
2. { <i>es, be thou</i>	2. { <i>este, be ye</i>
{ <i>estō, thou shalt be</i>	{ <i>estōte, ye shall be</i>
3. <i>estō, he shall be</i>	3. <i>suntō, they shall be</i>

### Present infinitive.

*esse, to be.*

This completes the *present system* of tenses of the verb *sum*.

### 117. Synopsis of *sum* (*present stem es*):

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	<b>sum</b>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	<b>eram</b>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	<b>erō</b>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	<b>sim</b>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<b>essem</b>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	<b>es</b>
7. <i>Present participle</i>	[lacking]
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	<b>esse</b>
9. <i>Gerund</i>	[lacking]

### 118.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Galbae mīlītēs ad pūgnandum parātī sunt.*  
 2. *Praefectus noster mīlītibus Rōmānīs galeās quās in castrīs Germānōrum occupāverat (had taken possession of) dedit.* 3. *Mūrī quōs Gallī praesidiī causā prō oppidīs aedificāvērunt altī et lātī erant.* 4. *Praefectī nostrī Gallōs*

incūsāvērunt et oppida quae sine praesidiō erant oppūgnāvērunt, quod populō Rōmānō liberōs obsidēs<sup>1</sup> nōn dederant.

II.—1. Caesar will have given a new shield to the good soldier. 2. Galba was summoning the fresh infantry out of camp. 3. Caesar was blaming the general to whom he had given the signal, because he hesitated to renew the battle with<sup>2</sup> the cavalry of the Sequani. 4. The Germans gave their children to Galba as hostages, so that they might establish friendship with<sup>2</sup> the Roman people.

## LESSON XXIII.

### FIRST CONJUGATION AND THIRD DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

#### 119. Perfect subjunctive of *portō*. Pluperfect subjunctive.

*may have carried.*

*might have carried.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. portāverim
2. portāveris
3. portāverit

##### SINGULAR.

- portāvissem
- portāvissēs
- portāvisset

##### PLURAL.

1. portāverimus
2. portāveritis
3. portāverint

##### PLURAL.

- portāvissēmus
- portāvissētis
- portāvissent

#### Perfect infinitive.

portāvisse, *to have carried*

This completes the *perfect system of tenses* formed upon the perfect stem **portāv**.

<sup>1</sup> Appositive, as *hostages* (54).

<sup>2</sup> Use prep. *cum*. Why? (48.)

120. Synopsis of the perfect system of *portō* (*six tenses*):

1. Perfect indicative	portāvī
2. Pluperfect indicative	portāveram
3. Future perfect indicative	portāverō
4. Perfect subjunctive	portāverim
5. Pluperfect subjunctive	portāvissem
6. Perfect infinitive	portāvisse

## 121.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 47-52 (448).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
imperātum	-ī, neut.	order or command
levitās	levitātis, fem.	fickleness
facultās	-tātis, "	opportunity
aestās	-tātis, "	summer
potestās	-tātis, "	power
auctōritās	-tātis, "	influence
flūmen	flūminis, neut.	river
homō	hominis, mas.	man
rūmor	rūmōris, mas.	report
cum, conj.		while

## 122. Declension of nouns.

Civitās, state, fem. Agmen, line (of march), neut.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	civitās	civitātēs	agmen	agmina
Gen.	civitātis	civitātum	agminis	agminum
Dat.	civitātī	civitātibus	agminī	agminibus
Acc.	civitātem	civitātēs	agmen	agmina
Voc.	civitās	civitātēs	agmen	agmina
Abl.	civitāte	civitātibus	agmine	agminibus

Nouns in *ās, gen. ātis*, are feminine. Nouns in *men, gen. minis*, are neuter.

Lapis, stone, mas.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	lapis	lapidēs	Acc. lapidem	lapidēs
Gen.	lapidis	lapidum	Voc. lapis	lapidēs
Dat.	lapidī	lapidibus	Abl. lapide	lapidibus

Nouns in *is, gen. idis*, and *es, gen. itis* or *idis*, are masculine.

Combined declension of **miles ferus** (miles, third-declension noun; **ferus**, an adjective with the second-declension endings):

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> miles ferus	militēs ferī
<i>Gen.</i> militis ferī	militum ferōrum
<i>Dat.</i> militī ferō	militibus ferīs
<i>Acc.</i> militem ferum	militēs ferōs
<i>Voc.</i> miles fere	militēs ferī
<i>Abl.</i> milite ferō	militibus ferīs

## 123.

## EXERCISE.

1. Praefectus cui Caesar proelium redintegrandī signum dat Germānōrum peditēs facile fugābit. 2. Noster praefectus in Galliam cum peditibus integrīs quōs in hibernīs in prōvinciā Rōmānā conlocāverat mātūrāvit et obsidēs multōs postulāvit. 3. Belgae lēgātō nostrō liberōs obsidēs dabant, ut in potestāte populī Rōmānī essent. 4. Caesar multīs cum civitātibus quae in armīs nōn erant et contrā populum Rōmānum nōn coniūrāverant amicitiam cōfirmāvit. 5. Quod Germānī obsidēs quōs postulāverat nōn dedērunt,<sup>1</sup> Caesar oppida trāns flūmen Rhēnum oppūgnāvit.

## LESSON XXIV.

## THIRD DECLENSION. SUM, CONTINUED.

## 124. Pater, father, mas.

## Rūmor, report, mas.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> pater	patrēs	rūmor	rūmorēs
<i>Gen.</i> patris	patrum	rūmoris	rūmōrum
<i>Dat.</i> patri	patribus	rūmorī	rūmoribus
<i>Acc.</i> patrem	patrēs	rūmorem	rūmorēs
<i>Voc.</i> pater	patrēs	rūmor	rūmorēs
<i>Abl.</i> patre	patribus	rūmore	rūmoribus

Nouns in **er** and **or** are *masculine*.

<sup>1</sup> Would not give.

**Latus, side or flank, neut.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Gen.</i>	lateris	laterum
<i>Dat.</i>	laterī	lateribus
<i>Acc.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Voc.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Abl.</i>	latere	lateribus

**Corpus, body, neut.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	corpus	corpora
<i>Gen.</i>	corporis	corporum
<i>Dat.</i>	corporī	corporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	corpus	corpora
<i>Voc.</i>	corpus	corpora
<i>Abl.</i>	corpore	corporibus

Nouns in *us*, gen. *eris* or *oris*, are *neuter*.

**Legiō, legion, fem.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	legiō	legiōnēs
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnis	legiōnum
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnī	legiōnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnem	legiōnēs
<i>Voc.</i>	legiō	legiōnēs
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōne	legiōnibus

Nouns in *ō* are *masculine*, save those in *dō*, *gō*, and *iō*, which are *feminine*.

**125.****VOCABULARY.****Verbs 53-66 (448).**

**126. Dative with adjectives.** — Adjectives of *likeness*, *fitness*, *nearness*, and the like with their opposites take the *dative*; as,

**Belgae sunt proximī Germānīs,** *The Belgians are next to the Germans*

**127. Sum in the perfect tenses.** — Principal parts: **sum, esse, fui, no supine.** Upon the *perfect stem fu* are formed *six tenses*. For synopsis of the *present system*, see (117).

Synopsis of the *perfect system* of **sum** (*stem fu*):

<i>Perfect indicative</i>	fui, <i>I have been—was</i>
<i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	fueram
<i>Future perfect indicative</i>	fuerō
<i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	fuerim
<i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	fuissem
<i>Perfect infinitive</i>	fuisse

**128. Use of *cum* + subjunctive.**—*Cum*,<sup>1</sup> *when*, is followed by a verb in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive*. *Cum* + *imperfect subjunctive* means '*when*' in the sense of *while*, denoting action *unfinished*; *cum* + *pluperfect subjunctive* means '*when*' in the sense of *after*, denoting action *finished*. If the first verb after *cum* is in the *imperfect subjunctive*, then *cum* = *while (when)*, not *with*, and the verb is translated *as if it were imperfect indicative*; as, *cum Caesar in Galliā esset, while Caesar was in Gaul*.

## 129.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Cum Caesar equitēs integrōs expectāret, peditēs oppidum cūius mūrī nōn altī fuērunt expūgnāvērunt.* 2. *Praefectī tubīs militibus integris signum dedērunt et ē castrīs celeritāte magnā mātūrāvērunt, ut Germānōrum hiberna quae in Galliā erant occupārent.* 3. *Cum reliquae civitatēs quae Galbae amīcae' erant ad castra Rōmāna auxilium portārent, Caesar trāns Rhēnum cum peditibus et equitibus mātūrāvit et Germānōrum castella, quod populō Rōmānō obsidēs novōs nōn dederant, oppūgnāvit.* 4. *Caesar auctōritātem amplificandī causā cum civitatibus multīs in Galliā amicitiam cōfirmāvit.*

II.—1. The state in which Caesar placed his camp will give much corn to the Roman infantry. 2. While our soldiers were preparing to attack the walls of the town, the townsmen hastened out of the town, so that they might avoid (to avoid) the dangers of battle. 3. While the Sequani were awaiting the forces of the neighbouring Belgians, the Roman legions hastened with great swiftness through the province and seized the camp which the Sequani had prepared for the sake of defence.

<sup>1</sup> For treatment of *historical cum* see (208).

<sup>2</sup> Adjective, *friendly*.

## LESSON XXV.

FIRST CONJUGATION AND THIRD DECLENSION  
CONTINUED.130. *Collis, hill, mas.**Rēx, king, mas.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>collis</i>	<i>collēs</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>collis</i>	<i>collium</i>	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>rēgum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>collī</i>	<i>collibus</i>	<i>rēgī</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>collem</i>	<i>collēs -is</i>	<i>rēgem</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>collis</i>	<i>collēs</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>colle</i>	<i>collibus</i>	<i>rēge</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>

*Flūmen lātum, a wide river, neut.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>flūmen lātum</i>	<i>flūmina lāta</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>flūminis lātī</i>	<i>flūminum lātōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>flūminī lātō</i>	<i>flūminibus lātīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>flūmen lātum</i>	<i>flūmina lāta</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>flūmen lātum</i>	<i>flūmina lāta</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>flūmine lātō</i>	<i>flūminibus lātīs</i>

131. Nouns ending in *is* *not increasing* the number of syllables in the *genitive* are called “*vowel-stems in i*,” and have *ium*<sup>1</sup> in the *genitive plural* and *is* or *ēs* in the *accusative plural*. Many have the *ablative* in *i* (457). The stem of nouns in *is* or *es* *increasing* the number of syllables in the *genitive* is found by dropping *is* from the *genitive*; thus, *lapis, lapidis*, stem *lapid*; *miles, militis*, stem *milit*. The stem of nouns in *is* or *es* *not increasing* in the *genitive* ends in *i*; as, *collis, collis*, stem *collī*.

Nouns in *is* or *es* (*vowel-stems in i*) are masculine, sometimes *feminine*.

<sup>1</sup> For summary of the *genitive plural* in *um* and *ium* see (460).



## 132.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 67-80 (448).

**133. Supine system of *portō*.**—The *supine stem*, upon which *four* forms are based, is found by dropping *um* from the first supine: *portātum*, supine stem *portāt*.

The following, formed upon the stem *portāt*, complete the active voice of *portō*:

1. *First supine*      *portātum*,                      *to carry*
2. *Second supine*   *portātū*,                      *to carry*
3. *Future participle* *portātūrus, -a, -um*, *being about to carry*
4. *Future infinitive* *portātūrum, -am, -um esse*, *to be about to carry*

Write a *complete synopsis* of *superō* in the active voice in order of *stems*, giving *name of tense and meaning*, with *nine* forms upon *superā* (75), *six* upon *superāv* (120), and *four* upon *superāt*.

**134. Dative with *imperō* and *mandō*.**—*Imperō*, *I command*, and *mandō*, *I direct*, take their *object*, the person commanded, in the *dative*; thus:

*Caesar legiōnibus imperat*,    *Caesar commands the legions*  
*Galba praefectis mandāvit*,   *Galba directed his generals*

**135. Rule of sequence of tenses.**—When the verb in the *principal clause* denotes *present* or *future time*, the verb in the *dependent clause* is *present* or *perfect subjunctive*.

When the verb in the *principal clause* denotes *past time*, the verb in the *dependent clause* is *imperfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive*.

**136. Table of sequence.**

Present	} are fol- lowed by	{ present subjunctive to show <i>con-</i> <i>temporaneous</i> or <i>subsequent</i> <i>action (unfinished)</i> ; perfect subjunctive to show <i>an-</i> <i>tecedent action (finished)</i> .
Future		
Future-perfect		

Imperfect Perfect Pluperfect	} are followed by	{	imperfect subjunctive to show <i>contemporaneous or subsequent action (unfinished);</i>
			pluperfect subjunctive to show <i>antecedent action (finished).</i>

### 137. Application of the rule of sequence in the *ut* clause.

Caesar obsidēs postulat ut auctōritātem amplificet,	Caesar demands hostages so that he may increase his power
Caesar obsidēs postulābit ut auctōritātem amplificet,	Caesar will demand hostages so that he may increase his power
Caesar obsidēs postulāverit ut auctōritātem amplificet,	Caesar will have demanded hostages so that he may in- crease his power
Caesar obsidēs postulābat ut auctōritātem amplificāret,	Caesar kept demanding hostages so that he might increase his power
Caesar obsidēs postulāvit ut auctōritātem amplificāret,	Caesar demanded hostages so that he might increase his power
Caesar obsidēs postulāverat ut auctōritātem amplificāret,	Caesar had demanded hostages so that he might increase his power

## LESSON XXVI.

### THIRD DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

#### 138. Multitūdō, multitudo, fem.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
Nom.	multitūdō	multitūdinēs
Gen.	multitūdinis	multitūdinum
Dat.	multitūdinī	multitūdinibus
Acc.	multitūdinem	multitūdinēs
Voc.	multitūdō	multitūdinēs
Abl.	multitūdine	multitūdinibus

**Vis, force, vigor, fem.****Iter, march, neut.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	vīs	vīrēs	iter	itinera
<i>Gen.</i>	vīs	vīrium	itineris	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	—	vīribus	itinerī	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	vim	vīrēs	iter	itinera
<i>Voc.</i>	—	vīrēs	iter	itinera
<i>Abl.</i>	vī	vīribus	itinere	itineribus

For 'general rules of gender' in the *third declension* see (458).

139. Review declension of all the *nouns* in the third declension (458, 459). Give synopsis in the entire active voice of *imperō* in order of 'tense-name,' 'stem,' and 'meaning.' Give synopsis, active voice, of *amō*, by *moods, etc.* (474). What can be said of the *relative clause* and subordinate clauses introduced by *ut, quod, and cum*? Give the *rule of sequence*.

## 140.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
hostis	hostis, <i>mas.</i>	enemy
ignis	ignis, <i>mas.</i>	fire
finis	finis, <i>mas.</i>	end (in the plural, <i>territory</i> )
turris	turris, <i>fem.</i>	tower
calamitās	-tātis, <i>fem.</i>	calamity
pāx	pācis, <i>fem.</i>	peace
pars	partis, <i>fem.</i>	part
subitō, <i>adv.</i>		suddenly
fortiter, <i>adv.</i>		bravely
ōrātiō	-ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	speech
profectiō	-ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	departure
dēditiō	-ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	surrender
mūnitiō	-ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	fortification

ignis has the ablative *igne* or *ignī*.

## 141.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cum Caesar in Galliā esset, lēgātī multārum civitātum ad castra quae in hostium finibus parābat mātū-

rāvērunt. 2. Equitēs Rōmānī auxiliō Rēmōrum castellum in quō arma multa erant expūgnāvērunt et agmina hostium facile prōfligāvērunt. 3. Quod hostēs proeliō cum Caesaris legiōnibus nōn dēcertābant sed in oppidō cōpiās cēlābant, militēs nostrī altās turrēs quibus oppidī mūrōs facile expūgnāvērunt aedificāvērunt. 4. Germānī in quōrum finibus nostrī praesidia parant ad Caesaris castra liberōs obsidēs, ut pācem impetrent, portābunt. 5. Galba in finēs hostium cum peditibus et māgnā equitum parte mātūrāvit, ut māgnū obsidum numerum postulāret.

II.—1. Caesar blamed the soldiers of the first and second legion, because they did not renew the battle with the enemies' infantry. 2. While Caesar was preparing on the hill a place for his camp, the enemies' forces suddenly hastened out of the woods towards our men. 3. Our general whose soldiers routed the Sequani will hasten into the territory of the Belgians to prepare<sup>1</sup> new fortifications. 4. While Galba was contending in the boundaries<sup>2</sup> of the Belgians, Caesar's legions easily routed the infantry of the Sequani and gave to the rest of<sup>3</sup> the enemy an opportunity of establishing peace with the Roman people.

## LESSON XXVII.

### USE OF IMPERŌ AND MANDŌ.

**142.** Review **sum**—*present system* (117), *perfect system* (127). Also conjugate with meanings all of **sum** in the order given in (484); observe carefully the *future participle* and *future infinitive*. What forms of **sum** are lacking?

**143.** Decline the nouns of the *first* and *second declensions*

---

<sup>1</sup> How is *purpose* expressed in Latin? (53.)

<sup>2</sup> 'boundaries' = territory.

<sup>3</sup> 'rest of': *dative of reliquus*.

(453, 454), and also *altus* and *crēber* (466). What is the *case* of the *predicate noun* or *adjective* after forms of *sum*? What adjectives govern the *dative*? Give example, both English and Latin, illustrating the *agreement* of the *relative* with its *antecedent*, and explain.

## 144.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 81–92 (448).

145. Use of *imperŏ* and *mandŏ*.—*Imperŏ* and *mandŏ* take the person commanded in the *dative* and an *ut* clause to denote what is commanded to be done. This *ut* clause is translated by the *present infinitive*.

- |                                |                                   |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Caesar servŏ ut mātūret im- | Caesar commands the slave to      |
| perat,                         | hasten                            |
| 2. Galba praefectis ut frūmen- | Galba will direct his generals to |
| tum impetrent mandābit,        | obtain corn                       |
| 3. Praefectus nostris ut mūnī- | The general commanded our         |
| tiōnēs expūgnārent im-         | men to storm the fortifica-       |
| perāvit,                       | tions                             |

Notice very carefully the *sequence of tenses in the ut clauses* when the *English infinitive verb* is turned into the *subjunctive in Latin*. In (1) and (2) the *present subjunctive* is used because the *time* of the *leading verb* is in (1) *present* and in (2) *future*; see 'table of sequence' (first part) (136). In (3) the *imperfect subjunctive* is used because the *principal verb* denotes *past time* ('table of sequence,' second part).

## 146.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar Germānis quī in finibus nostris hiemant imperābit ut in prōvinciam Rōmānam liberŏs obsidēs portent. 2. Caesar praefectŏ equitum mandat ut in hostium finēs mātūret et cōpiās prŏfliget. 3. Galba praefectŏ cūius militēs mūnitiōnēs novās aedificābant mandāvit ut in hibernis peditēs et equitēs conlocāret (*sequence*). 4. Cum Rēmī, amīcī nostrī (*adj.*), contrā Germānŏrum et Belgārum

cōpiās fortiter sustentārent, Caesar Galbae imperāvit ut in Galliam cum mīlitibus primae et secundae legiōnis mātūraret et ad Rēmōs subsidium portāret.

II.—1. Because the fortifications in the enemies' territory were large, Galba directed (*past time*) his soldiers to build a tall tower. 2. The Remi direct their ambassadors to obtain peace for their state which had given aid to the Roman legions in many battles. 3. While Caesar was preparing to attack a large town, messengers hastened into our camp to announce' the departure of the enemy out of the town. 4. The general whom Caesar commanded to attack the new fortifications will seize the enemies' baggage.

## LESSON XXVIII.

### SECOND-CONJUGATION VERB.

147. Present indicative of *dēleō*, *I destroy*. Meanings of persons as in *portō*.

*I destroy.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	dēleō	dēlēmus
2.	dēlēs	dēlētis
3.	dēlet	dēlent

The *stem* in this verb is *dēlē*, found by dropping *final ō*.

148.

### VOCABULARY.

videō,	<i>I see</i>
habeō,	<i>I have</i>
teneō,	<i>I hold</i>
moveō,	<i>I move</i>
contineō,	<i>I keep</i>
prohibeō,	<i>I prevent or cut off</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Infinitive to express *purpose*. Do not render by the *Latin infinitive*.

149. Notice carefully the endings of the *present subjunctive* in the *first* conjugation and those of the *present indicative* in the *second* conjugation. Note the loss of a syllable in the second person singular of *dēleō*: not *dē-le-ēs*, but *dē-lēs*.

**First conjugation—present subjunctive.**      **Second conjugation—present indicative.**

*Table of endings.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-em	-ēmus
-ēs	-ētis
-et	-ent

*Table of endings.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-eō	-ēmus
-ēs	-ētis
-et	-ent

150. Thus if a verb ends in *et* or *ent*, for instance, it is *present subjunctive* when the verb is of the *first* conjugation; *present indicative* when the verb is of the *second* conjugation.

Conjugate the *present subjunctive* of *postulō* and *imperō*; *present indicative* of *habeō*, *moveō*, and *teneō*.

151.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Praefectus Rōmānus, quod hostium profectiōnem videt, cum legiōne primā ad collem in quō<sup>1</sup> Galbae castra sunt mātūrat. 2. Nostri Germānōrum profectiōnem prohibent, ut Caesarī obsidēs novōs impetrent. 3. Peditēs Caesaris gladiis et pilis mūnitiōnēs quās Sēquanī praesidiī causā aedificāvērunt facile dēlent. 4. Quod Belgae ferī<sup>2</sup> in Galliā finēs lātōs<sup>3</sup> habent, Caesar castra movet et in Galliam mātūrat, ut agrōs vāstet. 5. Cum hostēs trāns flūmen impedimenta portārent, Galba in colle proximō flūminī cōpiās conlocāvit et Caesaris imperāta exspectāvit.

II.—1. The soldiers of the second legion easily routed

<sup>1</sup> on which.

<sup>2</sup> Explain agreement of *ferī* and *lātōs*.

the enemies' infantry and seized the baggage which the enemy had concealed in their fortifications. 2. Because Caesar sees the enemies' forces on the hill in front of the town whose walls he is preparing to attack, he keeps his infantry and cavalry in camp. 3. Galba commands the generals of the infantry to hasten across the river and await the departure of the enemy.

## LESSON XXIX.

### SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

**152. Imperfect indicative of *dēleō*. Future indicative. Present subjunctive.**

<i>was destroying.</i>		<i>shall destroy.</i>		<i>may destroy.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>dēlēbam</i>	<i>dēlēbāmus</i>	<i>dēlēbō</i>	<i>dēlēbimus</i>	<i>dēleam</i>	<i>dēleāmus</i>
2. <i>dēlēbās</i>	<i>dēlēbātis</i>	<i>dēlēbis</i>	<i>dēlēbitis</i>	<i>dēleās</i>	<i>dēleātis</i>
3. <i>dēlēbat</i>	<i>dēlēbant</i>	<i>dēlēbit</i>	<i>dēlēbunt</i>	<i>dēleat</i>	<i>dēleant</i>

**153.** The stem in the above tenses is *dēlē*. The endings of the *imperfect* and *future* indicative are the same as in *portō*. The endings of the *present subjunctive* of *dēleō* are very much like the *present indicative* endings of *portō*. Compare these endings: *portō*, *present indicative* *ō, ās, at, āmus, ātis, ant*; *dēleō*, *present subjunctive* *am, ās, at, āmus, ātis, ant*. Therefore when the verb ends, for instance, in *at* or *ant*, it is *present indicative* if it belongs to the *first conjugation*; *present subjunctive* if it belongs to the *second conjugation*.



## 154.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>habeō</b>	<b>habēre</b>	<i>to have</i>
<b>prohibeō</b>	<b>prohibēre</b>	<i>to prevent</i>
<b>valeō</b>	<b>valēre</b>	<i>to be strong</i>
<b>distineō</b>	<b>distinēre</b>	<i>to divide</i>
<b>sustineō</b>	<b>sustinēre</b>	<i>to withstand</i>
<b>iubeō</b>	<b>iubēre</b>	<i>to order</i>

155. Use of *iubeō*, *I order*.—*Iubeō* is followed by the *accusative (subject) + infinitive*; as,

**Caesar militēs hostium profectiōnem prohibēre iubēbit,** *Caesar will order his soldiers to prevent the enemies' departure*

In this sentence **militēs** is in the *accusative case*, *subject* of the infinitive **prohibēre**, which, being a transitive active verb, takes its *direct object*, **profectiōnem**, in the *accusative* also.

## 156.

## EXERCISES.

In the following sentences distinguish carefully the verb-forms in *et*, *at*; *ent*, *ant*.

I.—1. Quod civitās auctōritāte et numerō militum valēbat, Caesar lēgātis ut obsidēs multōs postulārent imperāvit. 2. Praefectī nostrī peditēs distinēbunt, ut in Galliā populī Rōmānī imperium amplificent et hostium cōpiās sustineant. 3. Galba militēs integrōs trāns flūmen ad collem in quō hostēs mūnitiōnēs novās aedificant mātūrāre iubēbit. 4. Praefectus peditum numerum amplificat et finitimōs in castra frūmentum portāre iubet, ut in Galliā hiemet et hostium profectiōnem prohibeat. 5. Galli turrēs novās quās nostrī ad oppidum oppūgnandum aedificāvērunt igni dēlēbunt.

II.—1. Our infantry will obtain corn and arms from many states which are preparing to give hostages to Caesar,

so that they may have peace. 2. While the states next to the Roman province were preparing a plan of surrender, Caesar was keeping his new legions in camp. 3. Galba commands<sup>1</sup> his generals to place the baggage in camp and with javelins and swords to withstand the infantry of the enemy. 4. Write sentence (3) again, substituting 'orders' for 'commands': Galba *orders*<sup>2</sup> his generals, etc.

### LESSON XXX.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

##### 157. Imperfect subjunctive of *dēlēō*, *might destroy*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>dēlērem</i>	<i>dēlērēmus</i>
2. <i>dēlērēs</i>	<i>dēlērētis</i>
3. <i>dēlēret</i>	<i>dēlērent</i>

##### Imperative.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. [ <i>wanting</i> ]	[ <i>wanting</i> ]
2. { <i>dēlē</i> , <i>destroy thou</i>	{ <i>dēlēte</i> , <i>destroy ye</i>
{ <i>dēlētō</i> , <i>thou shalt destroy</i>	{ <i>dēlētōte</i> , <i>ye shall destroy</i>
3. <i>dēlētō</i> , <i>he shall destroy</i>	<i>dēlentō</i> , <i>they shall destroy</i>

##### Present participle.

*dēlēns*, *destroying*

##### Present infinitive.

*dēlēre*, *to destroy*

##### Gerund.

*Gen.* *dēlendī*

*Dat.* *dēlendō*

*Acc.* *dēlendum*

*Abl.* *dēlendō*

158. This completes the *present system* of forms belonging to the *present stem*, *dēlē*, as is seen in the following synopsis:

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	<i>dēlēō</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	<i>dēlēbam</i>

<sup>1</sup> Use *impero*.

<sup>2</sup> Use *iubeo*.

3. <i>Future indicative</i>	dēlēbō
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	dēleam
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlērem
6. <i>Imperative</i>	dēlē
7. <i>Present participle</i>	dēlēns
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	dēlēre
9. <i>Gerund</i>	dēlendī

## 159.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
frāter	-tris, <i>mas.</i>	brother
imperātor	-tōris, <i>mas.</i>	commander
lēx	lēgis, <i>fem.</i>	law
nox	noctis, <i>fem.</i>	night
virtūs	-tūtis, <i>fem.</i>	courage
compleō	-plēre, <i>second conj.</i>	to fill
obtimeō	-nēre, " "	to hold

160. *Principal parts of second-conjugation verbs.*—Only a few verbs of the second conjugation have the *perfect indicative* in *vī*; *dēleō* is given for better comparison with *portō*. Most verbs of this conjugation have *uī* in the *perfect*.

The ending of the *present infinitive* is *ēre*.

dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum
compleō	complēre	complēvī	complētum
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitum
valeō	valēre	valuī	valitum
sustineō	sustinēre	sustinuī	sustentum

## 161. Review of subordinate clause—order of words.

Cum nostrī prō oppidō fossās  
complērent, hostium cōpiaē  
in mūrō pīla et lapidēs con-  
locābant,

*While our men were filling the  
ditches in front of the town,  
the enemies' forces were plac-  
ing javelins and stones upon  
the wall*

The **cum** clause, ending with **complērent**, modifies and marks the *time* of the action in the principal verb, **conlocābant**; **prō oppidō**, adverbial phrase (*within the cum clause*), modifies **complērent**; in the principal clause **hostium** (*genitive*) limits the subject, **cōpiaē**; in **mūrō** modifies **conlocābant** and denotes *place where*; the direct objects precede their verbs.

## 162.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar imperātōrī legiōnis primae ut vigiliā secundā castra moveat imperat. 2. Galba partem legiōnis oppidum subitō oppugnāre et partem profectiōnem hostium prohibēre iubet. 3. Caesar militibus quōs in hibernis in prōvinciā conlocāvit imperābit ut castra moveant et in Galliā praesidia et mūnitiōnēs aedificent. 4. Cum Galba cōpiās distinēret et ad <sup>1</sup> mūrōs oppidī expūgnandum parāret, oppidānī ex oppidō mātūrāvērunt et māgnā virtūte nostrōs fugāvērunt.

II.—1. Galba directed 'the commanders of the new legions to renew' the battle with great courage. 2. The enemy build many fortifications, so that they may withstand the great multitude of our men. 3. Our commanders divided their forces in the first watch, that they might storm the enemies' redoubts in many places. 4. Galba demands the surrender of many hostages, because the Gauls have great influence and hold command in many states.

---

<sup>1</sup> ad . . . expūgnandum, to attack.

<sup>2</sup> For mood see (145); for tense see (135).

## LESSON XXXI.

## SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

163. Dēlēō in the *perfect system*; stem dēlēv.

Perfect indicative.	Pluperfect indicative.	Future-perfect indicative.	Perfect subjunctive.
<i>destroyed.</i>	<i>had destroyed.</i>	<i>shall have destroyed.</i>	<i>may have destroyed.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. dēlēvī	dēlēveram	dēlēverō	dēlēverim
2. dēlēvistī	dēlēverās	dēlēveris	dēlēveris
3. dēlēvit	dēlēverat	dēlēverit	dēlēverit
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. dēlēvimus	dēlēverāmus	dēlēverimus	dēlēverimus
2. dēlēvistis	dēlēverātis	dēlēveritis	dēlēveritis
3. dēlēvērunt (ēre)	dēlēverant	dēlēverint	dēlēverint

## Pluperfect subjunctive.

*might have destroyed.*

SINGULAR.

1. dēlēvissem
2. dēlēvissēs
3. dēlēvisset

PLURAL.

1. dēlēvissēmus
2. dēlēvissētis
3. dēlēvissent

## Perfect infinitive.

dēlēvisse, *to have destroyed*Synopsis of the *perfect system*:

- |              |               |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1. dēlēvī    | 4. dēlēverim  |
| 2. dēlēveram | 5. dēlēvissem |
| 3. dēlēverō  | 6. dēlēvisse  |

## 164. Compare the personal endings of the following:

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Present indicative.*

1. portō portāmus
2. portās portātis
3. portat portant

*Present subjunctive.*

1. portem portēmus
2. portēs portētis
3. portet portent

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Present indicative.*

- dēlēō dēlēmus
- dēlēōs dēlētis
- dēlet dēlent

*Present subjunctive.*

- dēleam dēleāmus
- dēleās dēleātis
- dēleat dēleant

## 165.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 1-10 (449).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
nōmen	-minis, <i>neut.</i>	<i>name</i>
prīnceps	-cipis, <i>mas.</i>	<i>chief</i>
cohors	-hortis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>cohort</i>
altitūdō	-dinis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>height</i>
ibi, <i>adv.</i>		<i>there</i>
salūs	-ūtis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>safety</i>

## 166. Points to remember.

1. **Ut**, *so that*, introduces a *purpose clause* with the *verb* in the *subjunctive*. This *ut* + *subjunctive* is often translated by the *infinitive*.

2. **Cum**, *while*, takes the *imperfect subjunctive*, translated like the *imperfect indicative*.

3. **Quod**, *because*, introduces a *causal clause* whose *verb* is often in the *indicative*.

4. The *relative qui*, etc., usually follows its *antecedent* and stands *first* in its clause, the *verb* of which is often in the *indicative*.

5. **Imperō** and **mandō** take the *dative* and an *ut* clause; the *verb* in the *ut* clause is in the *subjunctive*.

6. **Inbeō** is used with the *accusative* + *infinitive*.

## 167.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Quod civitās auctōritāte<sup>1</sup> magnā est, Caesar Belgīs ut imperātoribus Rōmānīs liberōs principum ob-  
sidēs dent mandat. 2. Hostēs quī nostrōrum virtūtem et  
multitūdinem magnam vidēbant (*saw*) cum liberis et  
finitimis trāns flūmen in Galliam mātūrāvērunt et ibi  
castra conlocāvērunt. 3. Cum cohortēs legiōnis primae

<sup>1</sup> auctōritāte magnā = *of great influence*; 'ablative of quality' (376).  
Translate, 'because their state is one of great influence,' etc.

in castris essent, cohortēs reliquae ad oppugnandum mūrōs māgnae altitudinis turris (*acc.*) altās aedificābant. 4. Quod hostēs in castris milites continēbant et nostris facultātem pugnandī nōn dabant, Caesar praefectis ut agrōs hostium vāstarent imperāvit.

II.—1. On account of the great courage of our men the enemy did not attack the town in which the Roman legions were wintering. 2. Caesar will hasten out of camp with the remaining cohorts to destroy<sup>1</sup> the redoubt which the enemy are building for the sake of safety. 3. Our commanders gave aid to many states of Gaul and called the Gauls friends of the Roman people, because they had many fields and villages and much influence. 4. Caesar commanded Galba to keep<sup>1</sup> his cavalry ready upon the hill and to prevent the flight of the enemy.

## LESSON XXXII.

### SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

#### 168. Perfect system of *sustineō*; perfect stem *sustinu*.

Principal parts: **sustineō sustinēre sustinui sustentum**

*From sustinui is derived the stem sustinu.*

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. sustinui    | 4. sustinuerim  |
| 2. sustinueram | 5. sustinuissem |
| 3. sustinuerō  | 6. sustinuisse  |

#### 169. Supine system of *dēleō* (*four forms*).

*Supine, dēlētum; supine stem, dēlēt.*

*First supine* dēlētum, to destroy

*Second supine* dēlētū, to destroy

*Future participle* dēlētūrus, -a, -um, being about to destroy

*Future infinitive* dēlētūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to destroy

---

<sup>1</sup> Be careful about choice of tense—'rule of sequence' (135).

**170.** The ending of the *future participle* is *ūrus, -a, -um*; that of the *future infinitive* *ūrum, -am, -um esse*. To form these, strike off *um* from the *supine* and *annex* the above endings; as, *parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum*; *supine stem, parāt*; *future participle, parātūrus*; *future infinitive, parātūrum esse*. *videō, vidēre, vidī, visum*; *supine stem, vis*; *future participle, visūrus*; *future infinitive, visūrum esse*.

## 171.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 11-22 (449).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>tempus</b>	<b>-poris, neut.</b>	<i>time</i>
<b>eōdem tempore</b> , <i>adverbial phrase</i>		<i>at the same time</i>
<b>explōrātor</b>	<b>-tōris, mas.</b>	<i>scout</i>
<b>pēs</b>	<b>pedis, mas.</b>	<i>foot</i>
<b>pōns</b>	<b>pontis, mas.</b>	<i>bridge</i>
<b>undique</b> , <i>adv.</i>		<i>from (on) all sides</i>
<b>tum</b> , <i>adv.</i>		<i>then</i>

**172.** Repeat the rule of sequence. What adjectives govern the dative? What is the *case* of the *predicate* word with *sum*, etc.? Give rules for the agreement of *adjective* and *relative*. Name four kinds of *ablatives*. Decline the nouns of the first, second, and third declensions (453, 454, 458, 459), and *altus* and *crēber* (466).

## 173.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar Gallīs ut in castra Rōmāna liberōs principum obsidēs portārent imperāvit. 2. Quod Caesar explōrātōrēs pontem dēlēre iusserat, hostēs primā vigiliā cum liberīs et impedimentīs trāns flūmen mātūrāvērunt. 3. Nostrī quibus Caesar tēla nova dedit peditēs hostium,



quod virtūte et numerō hominum nōn valēbant, facile prōfligāvērunt. 4. Militēs legiōnis primae hominēs virtūtis māgnae erant et nōn fugā sed fortiter dīmicanđō salūtem impetrāvērunt. 5. Quod Galli mūnitiōnēs novās nostrās oppūgnābant, Caesar imperātorem cūius cōpiaie tēla multa et bona habēbant in Galliam mātūrāre, ut Gallōrum castella et vālla dēlērent, iussit.

II.—1. Caesar ordered the infantry of the second legion to attack the town whose walls were not high. 2. With great swiftness and courage our cavalry hastened out of the redoubts and easily routed the enemies' lines. 3. Galba commanded scouts to destroy the new bridge and prevent the departure of the Belgians who had not given hostages to Caesar. 4. While the Belgians were awaiting the aid of their neighbours, Caesar suddenly attacked their town on all sides with his infantry<sup>1</sup> and destroyed the new fortifications.

## LESSON XXXIII.

### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### 174. Present indicative of *pōnō*, *I place*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. pōnō	pōnimus
2. pōnis	pōnitis
3. pōnit	pōnunt

#### Personal endings.

-ō	-imus
-is	-itis
-it	-unt

---

<sup>1</sup> 'Ablative of means' (48); 'ablative without cum.'

Like **pōnō**, conjugate **mittō**, to send, **dūcō**, to lead, and **cōgō**, to collect.

## 175.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 23-32 (449).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>fertilitās</b>	-tātis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>fertility</i>
<b>ab latere</b> , adverbial phrase		<i>on the flank</i>
<b>ac</b> , conj.		<i>and</i>
<b>parātus</b> -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>		<i>prepared</i>
<b>inīqūs</b> -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>		<i>unfavourable</i>
<b>inter</b> , <i>prep. with the acc.</i>		<i>among or between</i>
<b>cis</b> , “ “ “ “		<i>on this side of</i>
<b>tam</b> , <i>adv.</i>		<i>so</i>

**176. Order of words.**—Though the *subject* usually tends to stand first and the *verb* last in the Latin sentence, this arrangement of words is frequently greatly varied. Often the *most prominent* word in the speaker's mind comes *first* and other words follow in order of prominence. For position of forms of **sum**, for example, see the first line in “*Caesar's Gallic War*,” Book II, Chapter I: “**cum esset Caesar in Galliā**”; again in Chapter IX: “**palūs erat nōn māgna**.” Then we find the *verb first* in the sentence, as in Chapter II, third paragraph: “**dat negōtium Senonibus**,” *he employs the Senones*; and in Chapter XVII. line 12: “**adiuvābat etiam . . . cōnsilium**,” *it was of advantage, too, to the plan*.

**177.** Review the entire verb **sum** (484), and *all* of the active voice of **amō** and **moneō** (474, 476).

## 178.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar incūsāvit imperātōrem cui sīgnum dedit, quod ad mūrum oppidī turrēs nōn prōmōvit. 2. Eōdem

tempore hostēs in multis Galliae cīvitātibus cōpiās magnās cōgunt ut legiōnēs Rōmānās sustineant. 3. Imperātor Rōmānus, quod profectiōnem hostium videt, trāns flūmen ad collem in quō sunt Galbae castra peditēs primae legiōnis mittit ut fugam prohibeant. 4. Praefecti hostium, quod virtūtem ac numerum nostrōrum peditum vidēbant, in castris cōpiās continēbant neque<sup>1</sup> nostris facultātem pūgnandī dabant. 5. Galba nōmine populi Rōmāni obsidēs multōs cōgit (*collects*) et in hibernis inter cīvitātēs quārum auctōritās est nōn magna legiōnēs novās pōnit.

II.—1. Caesar places (**pōnō**) in winter-quarters among the Remi the new cavalry which Galba is collecting from all sides. 2. Because the courage of the Roman legions is so great, the enemy send to Galba the children of their chiefs as hostages. 3. Caesar leads his new legions into the boundaries of farthest Gaul and commands the Gauls,<sup>2</sup> who are unfriendly to the Roman people, to prepare<sup>3</sup> winter-quarters for our men and to carry corn into our camp.

## LESSON XXXIV.

### THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED. FOURTH DECLENSION.

#### 179. Imperfect indicative of *pōnō*. Future indicative.

<i>was placing.</i>		<i>shall place.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. pōnēbam	pōnēbāmus	pōnam	pōnēmus
2. pōnēbās	pōnēbātis	pōnēs	pōnētis
3. pōnēbat	pōnēbant	pōnet	pōnent

180. The *present stem (verb-stem)*, **pōnē**, ending in *short e*, is found by dropping **re** from the *present infinitive active*. The stem vowel **ē** is lost before **ō**, is changed to **u** before **nt**,

<sup>1</sup> *neque* = *et* . . . *nōn*; see vocab. (202).

<sup>2</sup> Case after *imperō*?

<sup>3</sup> Mood with *imperō*?

to *ī* before the other endings of the *indicative* and *imperative*; in the *imperfect* and *future indicative* it becomes *ē*, and in the *present subjunctive* *ā*.

## 181.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 33-42 (449).

<b>exercitus</b> -ūs, <i>mas.</i>			<i>army</i>
<b>incendō</b> ,	<i>third conjugation</i>		<i>to burn</i>
<b>relinquō</b> ,	"	"	<i>to leave</i>
<b>cōscribō</b> ,	"	"	<i>to enroll</i>
<b>expellō</b> ,	"	"	<i>to drive out</i>
<b>incolō</b> ,	"	"	<i>to inhabit</i>
<b>permittō</b> ,	"	"	<i>to entrust</i>

Verbs of the third conjugation have *short e* in the *penult* of the *present infinitive*, the accent falling upon the *antepenult*: **pōnō**, **pōnēre**; **mittō**, **mittēre**.

## 182. Fourth declension.

**Cāsus**, *fate*, *mas.***Cornū**, *horn or wing*, *neut.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>cāsus</b>	<b>cāsūs</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornua</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cāsūs</b>	<b>cāsuum</b>	<b>cornūs</b>	<b>cornuum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cāsui(ū)</b>	<b>cāsibus</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>cāsū</b>	<b>cāsūs</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornua</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>cāsus</b>	<b>cāsūs</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornua</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>cāsū</b>	<b>cāsibus</b>	<b>cornū</b>	<b>cornibus</b>

The stem ends in *u*. Nouns in *us* are *masculine* with a few *feminine* exceptions; those in *ū* are *neuter*.

## 183. Comparison of tenses having similar endings.

	Present subjunctive.	Present indicative.	Future indicative.
	(First conjugation.)	(Second conjugation.)	(Third conjugation.)
1.	<b>portem</b> <b>portēmus</b>	<b>dēlēō</b> <b>dēlēmus</b>	<b>pōnam</b> <b>pōnēmus</b>
2.	<b>portēs</b> <b>portētis</b>	<b>dēlēōs</b> <b>dēlētis</b>	<b>pōnēs</b> <b>pōnētis</b>
3.	<b>portet</b> <b>portent</b>	<b>dēlet</b> <b>dēlent</b>	<b>pōnet</b> <b>pōnent</b>

Thus it is seen that a verb ending in *et* or *ent* is *present subjunctive* if *first* conjugation; *present indicative* if *second* conjugation; *future indicative* if *third* conjugation.

## 184.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Imperatōrēs Rōmānī extrēmā in Galliā ut pōtēstātem amplificent legiōnēs novās cōscribent. 2. Praefectus quī māgnam hostium multitudinem videt trāns flūmen Rhēnum milites nōn dūcet. 3. Caesar in finibus Germānōrum exercitum māgnū relinquet ut nōmen et auctōritātem populi Rōmānī amplifcet. 4. Cīvitātēs Galliae quae virtūte et auctōritāte et numerō hominum valent nōn facile ē finibus Galliae legiōnēs nostrās expellent. 5. Nostrī in cīvitātibus proximīs Galliae (*dative*) māgnās cōpiās cōgent ac peditēs eōdem tempore cōscribent ut hostēs superent.

II.—1. The townsmen will burn their towns and carry their children and baggage into the boundaries of their neighbours. 2. The Gauls place their states under the power<sup>1</sup> of the Roman army and drive out the Germans who are in arms and are not friendly to Caesar. 3. The Roman commander leaves the cavalry among the Sequani, because they inhabit places next to our province, and hastens across the river with his infantry. 4. In the second watch our men will burn the bridge which the enemy built and will prevent their departure.

---

<sup>1</sup> Place under the power, *permittō* in + *accusative*.

## LESSON XXXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION. ADJECTIVES OF THE  
THIRD DECLENSION.185. Present subjunctive of *pōnō*. Imperfect subjunctive.*may place.**might place.*

## SINGULAR.

1. *pōnam*2. *pōnās*3. *pōnat*

## SINGULAR.

*pōnerem**pōnerēs**pōneret*

## PLURAL.

1. *pōnāmus*2. *pōnātis*3. *pōnant*

## PLURAL.

*pōnerēmus**pōnerētis**pōnerent*

186. As in the *second conjugation*, the *present subjunctive* ends in **am**, **ās**, **at**, etc. If a verb ends in **at**, for example, it is *present indicative* in the *first conjugation*, *present subjunctive* in *any other conjugation*. Conjugate *incendō* and *expellō* in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present and imperfect subjunctive.

## 187.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 1-6 (450).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>dux</b>	<b>ducis, mas.</b>	<i>leader</i>
<b>adventus</b>	<b>-tūs, mas.</b>	<i>arrival</i>
<b>equitātus</b>	<b>-tūs, mas.</b>	<i>cavalry</i>
<b>cōpia</b>	<b>-ae, fem.</b>	<i>abundance</i>
<b>omnis -nis, -ne, adj.</b>		<i>all</i>
<b>facilis -lis, -le, adj.</b>		<i>easy</i>

## 188. Adjective of the third declension.

**Fortis, brave.**

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	fortis	-is	-e	fortēs	-ēs	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	fortis	-is	-is	fortium	-ium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	fortī	-ī	-ī	fortibus	-ibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	fortem	-em	-e	fortēs (-īs)	-ēs (-īs)	-ia
<i>Voc.</i>	fortis	-is	-e	fortēs	-ēs	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	fortī	-ī	-ī	fortibus	-ibus	-ibus

**Fortis**, stem *forti* (vowel-stem in *i*), has *one* form for both *masculine* and *feminine*, and one for the *neuter* (*e*). Adjectives of *two* terminations, being *i*-stems, have *ī* in the *ablative singular*, *ia* in the *neuter plural*, *ium* in the *genitive plural*, and *is* often in the *accusative plural masculine* and *feminine*.

189. Use of *suus*, 'his' or 'theirs.'—**Suus**, *sua*, *suum* is a possessive *reflexive* pronoun of the third person, denoting *possession* and referring to the *subject* of a sentence or clause. It is declined like **altus**, -a, -um, and agrees in *gender*, *number*, and *case* with the *noun limited*, that is, the *thing possessed*, not the *possessor*. It means *his* or *theirs* according to the *number* of the *possessor*.

**Caesar ē castris suōs milītēs**      *Caesar leads his soldiers out*  
*dūcit,*      *of camp*

**Hostēs suum oppidum incendunt,**      *The enemy burn their town*

## 190.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar, cum in prōvinciā legiōnēs reliquās cōscriberet, ducibus equitātūs imperāvit ut hostium oppidum in quō erant multa impedimenta incenderent. 2. Caesar undique exercitum cōget ut Germānōs quī inter multās civitatēs valent ac multa oppida incolunt ē finibus Gallōrum expellat. 3. Caesar, ut Sēquanōs quī nostris sunt

inimicī expellat et ad fortēs Rēmōs auxilium portet, in Galliam sine morā suās cōpiās dūcet. 4. Quod imperātor hostium ē castrīs ad proelium exercitum nōn dūcēbat, Galba ut castra hostium expūgnāret milītēs aedificāre turrīs (*accus.*) altitūdinis māgnae iussit. 5. Quod explōrātōrēs adventum Caesaris exercitūs nūntiāvērunt, Belgae trāns Rhēnum sua castra movēbunt et cum Germānīs coniūrābunt ut militum nostrōrum (*adj.*) impetum sustineant.

II.—1. On account of the enemies' arrival Caesar will leave his infantry in winter-quarters among the Remi and will enroll new legions. 2. With the aid of the soldiers whom he will enroll in farthest Gaul Caesar will overcome and drive out the remaining enemy. 3. Galba directs his brave generals to lead the cavalry of the second legion into the territories next to the Roman province and to attack the new fortifications of the enemy.

## LESSON XXXVI.

### THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

#### 191. Imperative of *pōnō*, *place* (*thou*).

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2.	{ <i>pōne</i> <i>pōnitō</i>	{ <i>pōnite</i> <i>pōnitōte</i>
3.	<i>pōnitō</i>	<i>pōnuntō</i>

#### Present participle.

*pōnēns, placing*

#### Present infinitive.

*pōnēre, to place*

#### Gerund.

*of placing, etc.*

*Gen. pōnendī*

*Acc. pōnendum*

*Dat. pōnendō*

*Abl. pōnendō*

This completes the *nine* forms composing the *present system* of *pōnō*, based upon the *present stem pōne*.



192. Synopsis—present system—of *pōnō*.

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	<i>pōnō</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	<i>pōnēbam</i>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	<i>pōnam (-ēs)</i>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	<i>pōnam (-ās)</i>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>pōnerem</i>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	<i>pōne</i>
7. <i>Present participle</i>	<i>pōnēns</i>
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	<i>pōnere</i>
9. <i>Gerund</i>	<i>pōnendī</i>

Give synopsis in the *present system* of *mittō* and *relinquō*. Conjugate the *present subjunctive* of *dubitō*, *present indicative* of *habeō*, *future indicative* of *dūcō*.

## 193.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 7-14 (450).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<i>aditus</i>	<i>-ūs, mas.</i>	<i>access</i> or <i>approach</i>
<i>commeātus</i>	<i>-ūs, mas.</i>	<i>supplies</i>
<i>mōns</i>	<i>montis, mas.</i>	<i>mountain</i>
<i>statim, adv.</i>		<i>at once</i>
<i>manus</i>	<i>-ūs, fem.</i>	<i>band (hand)</i>

194. Decline *duplex* and *equester* (467). Observe that *equester* has *three* terminations in the *nominative*: *ter*, *tris*, *tre*; being a vowel-stem in *i (ri)*, it takes *i* in the *ablative*, etc., as in *fortis*. *Duplex*, increasing the number of syllables in the genitive, is a consonant-stem (*duplic*), and takes the form of *i-stems* in the cases pointed out above, except that the *ablative (singular)* often ends in *e*.

## 195.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar *prō oppidō cūius mūrī sunt nōn altī castra pōnet, quod aditum facilem habet.* 2. *Adventū equitātūs Caesar ē castrīs omnēs cōpiās dūcit et ab latere inīquō in locō hostium agmina exagitāre parat.* 3. *Germānī quī trāns Rhēnum agrōs multōs habent et māgna oppida in-*

colunt ex hibernis omnēs nostrōs militēs expellent. 4. Eōdem tempore Galba in extrēmōs Galliae finis (*acc. plur.*) praefectōs mittit ut legiōnēs novās cōscribant et frūmentum et commeātūs impetrent. 5. Caesar in hostium finēs, ut agrōs vāstent et mūnitiōnēs dēleant et exercitui Rōmānō commeātūs cōgant, fortēs praefectōs mittet.

II.—1. Because the brave messengers had announced the approach of the enemies' cavalry, Galba ordered his commanders to prepare all the forces for renewing the battle. 2. Caesar commands the brave general to collect an abundance of corn for the army whose camp he will place (*pōnō*) in Gaul. 3. While Galba was enrolling infantry and cavalry for the sake of overcoming the Gauls, ambassadors from a large part of Gaul hastened to Caesar's winter-quarters to give hostages and obtain peace. 4. Because the town has an easy access, Caesar directs his generals to lead all the forces out of camp and storm the walls from all sides.

## LESSON XXXVII.

### THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

#### 196. Perfect system of *pōnō*.—*Perfect stem posu.*

Perfect indicative. <i>placed.</i>	Pluperfect indicative. <i>had placed.</i>	Perfect subjunctive. <i>may have placed.</i>
SINGULAR.		
1. posuī	posueram	posuerim
2. posuisti	posuerās, etc.	posueris, etc.
3. posuit		
PLURAL.	Future-perfect indicative.	Pluperfect subjunctive.
1. posuimus	<i>shall have placed.</i>	<i>might have placed.</i>
2. posuistis	posuerō	posuissem
3. posuerunt (-ēre)	posueris, etc.	posuissēs, etc.

## Perfect infinitive.

posuisse, *to have placed*

197. *Supine system of pōnō (four forms); supine stem posit.*

- |                      |                     |                                   |
|----------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. First supine      | positum,            | <i>to place</i>                   |
| 2. Second supine     | positū,             | <i>to place</i>                   |
| 3. Future participle | positūrus, -a, -um, | <i>being about to place</i>       |
| 4. Future infinitive | positūrum, -am, -um | <i>esse, to be about to place</i> |

198.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 15–18 (450).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
mōs	mōris, <i>mas.</i>	<i>custom or habit</i>
servitūs	-tūtis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>slavery</i>
dēdō	(see principal parts in the general vocabulary)	<i>to surrender</i>
ēdūcō		<i>to lead out</i>
petō		<i>to seek or ask for</i>
timeō		<i>to fear</i>
novissimum agmen,	<i>neut.</i>	<i>the rear</i>

**Petō**, with the meaning ‘ask for,’ takes the direct object in the accusative, not the *dative*; as, **pācem petunt**, *they ask for peace*.

199. Decline **pūgnāns** (467). Give full synopsis, *entire active voice*, by stems, of **imperō**, **iubeō**, and **cōgō**. First repeat the *principal parts* of the verb and point out the *three stems*, stating the *number of forms derived from each stem*. Give the *name of the form*, next the *form itself*, and then the *meaning*.

200.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar in (*upon*) altum collem suās cōpiās dūxit et ibi castella ac mūnitiōnēs posuit ut primum hostium impetum sustinēret. 2. Dux Rōmānus in castris militēs continuit, quod hostēs liberōs principum obsidēs dēdiderant ac potestātī Caesaris oppida omnia permiserant. 3. Cum ducēs quōs Caesar in Galliam lēgātōs miserat ut exercitui

Rōmānō commeātum cōgerent frūmentum postulārent, Sēquanī castra nostra oppūgnāvērunt et incendērunt. 4. Quod explōrātōrēs quōs trāns Rhēnum commeātūs causā mīserat hostium adventum nūntiāvērunt, Caesar fortibus praefectīs ut statim in proximum montem omnem equitātum dūcerent mandāvit.

II.—1. While the cohorts of the first legion with great courage were withstanding the enemies' brave attack, Galba directed the cavalry to await his commands upon the nearest hill. 2. Upon the arrival of the Roman infantry which Caesar had trained in many battles, the townsmen will send into our camp suitable men so that they may surrender hostages and ask for peace 3. Caesar hastened at once with his armed infantry into the farthest boundaries of Gaul, and many states that feared the power of our army sought peace.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### THE IRREGULAR VERB POSSUM, I AM ABLE.

201. Learn the indicative mood of *possum* (485).—Principal parts, *possum, posse, potuī*—no supine.

*Decline altior* (467) and the fourth-declension nouns (461).

202.

#### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 19–23 (450).

<i>tantus, -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>so great</i>
<i>ubi, conj.</i>	<i>when</i>
<i>dē, prep. with the abl.</i>	<i>with respect to, about</i>
<i>discēdō</i>	<i>to depart</i>
<i>redigō</i>	<i>to reduce</i>
<i>nec (neque)</i> { conjunction, used in the second of two connected ideas }	<i>and . . . not</i>

203. Use of *cum* and *ubi*.—*Cum, when*, is used with the imperfect subjunctive to denote contemporaneous action

(*when* in the sense of 'while'); with the *pluperfect subjunctive* to denote *antecedent action* (*when* in the sense of 'after'). This is called *Historical cum* and describes the *circumstances* under which an action took place.

**Ubi**, *when*, commonly takes the *perfect indicative*, or the *Historical present indicative* (the present as a vivid representation of the past). The **ubi** clause defines the time during which an action took place. When to use **cum** or **ubi**, in writing English in Latin, is often difficult to determine.

#### 204. Analysis of a complex sentence.

<p><b>Cum</b> <b>mīlitēs</b> <b>quōs</b> <b>Caesar</b> <b>in</b>  <b>Galliam</b> <b>ut</b> <b>exercitū</b> <b>Rōmānō</b>  <b>commeātūs</b> <b>cōgerent</b> <b>miserat</b>  <b>frūmentum</b> <b>postulārent</b>,  <b>Sēquani</b> <b>castra</b> <b>nostra</b> <b>in-</b>  <b>cendērunt</b>,</p>	<p><i>While the soldiers whom Caesar  had sent into Gaul to collect  supplies for the Roman army  were demanding corn, the  Sequani set fire to our camp</i></p>
---	--

A complex declarative sentence, of which **Sēquani . . . incendērunt** is the *main clause*. Since the *subject*, **Sēquani**, is unmodified, the remainder of the sentence limits the *predicate* **incendērunt**. At a glance you see that the *subordinate* part of the sentence, **cum . . . postulārent**, has three component parts, viz., a **cum**, a *relative*, and an **ut** clause.

Begin with **cum**: looking for the verb introduced by **cum**, there appears a *relative clause* which is in turn divided in two by an intermediate **ut** clause, and the *latter* standing undivided ends with **cōgerent**. Since the **ut . . . cōgerent** clause *stands within* the *relative clause*, the *next verb* in order should complete the *relative clause*, beginning with **quōs** and ending with **miserat**; here bear in mind that **ut . . . cōgerent** shows *affirmative purpose* of, and gets its *sequence* from, **miserat**, and that **quōs . . . miserat** describes **mīlitēs**. Thus you find that **cum** introduces

**postularent**, and that this entire clause modifies the *principal verb incendērunt*, describing the *circumstances* of the action of the latter and denoting *time contemporaneous*.

## 205.

## EXERCISE.

1. Caesar ubi tantam hostium multitudinem vīdit, ē castris omnēs legiōnēs ēdūxit et mandāvit praefectis ut impetum hostium expectarent. 2. Quod militum nostrorum impetum sustinere nōn poterant, oppidānī proximis cum finitimis in extrēmōs Galliae finēs discesserunt. 3. Quod Galli nōn possunt contrā legiōnēs fortēs nostrās sustentāre, Caesar in servitūtem omnēs civitatēs quae arma et obsidēs nōn dēdidērunt rediget. 4. Hostēs reliquī quī armis ac hominum numerō nōn valēbant ad Caesarem principēs civitātum lēgātōs ut pācem peterent mīserunt. 5. Adventū hostium Galba suō mōre in castris partem equitum reliquit, partem in montem dūxit. 6. Castra Caesaris quae hostēs expūgnāre non potuerant proxima erant collī altō nec aditum facilem habēbant.

## LESSON XXXIX.

## POSSUM, CONTINUED. PERSONAL PRONOUN.

206. Learn the subjunctive and infinitive moods of *possum* (485).

*Decline all the nouns of the third declension (458, 459).*

207. Personal pronoun, first person.

Ego, I.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	ego, I	nōs, we	
Gen.	meī, of me	{ nostrum, } { nostri, }	{ of us
Dat.	mihi, to or for me	nōbis, to or for us	
Acc.	mē, me	nōs, us	
Abl.	mē, { with, from, by me, etc.	nōbis, from us, etc.	

208. **Demonstrative pronoun** (sometimes used for the personal pronoun, *third person*).

is, ea, id, *this or that, he, etc.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī or iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs or iīs		
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs or iīs		

209.

#### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 24–33 (450).

nōndum, <i>adv.</i>	not yet
nē, <i>conj.</i>	in order that . . . not
trādō	to hand over
circumdō	to surround

Nē in negative commands, prohibitions, etc., will be given later.

210. **How cause and manner are expressed.**—*Cause* is expressed by the simple ablative.

**Virtūte nostrōrum hostēs sustentāre nōn poterant,**     *On account of (because of) the courage of our men the enemy could not hold out*

The *manner* of an action is expressed by the ablative usually with **cum**, unless a limiting adjective accompanies the noun. But even with the adjective **cum** may be used. Sometimes it is almost impossible to distinguish *means* and *manner*.

**Hostēs cum celeritāte disces-**     *The enemy departed with speed*  
**sērunt,**

211. **Use of nē.**—Nē, *in order that . . . not*, introduces a subordinate clause of *negative purpose* with the verb in the *subjunctive*, the choice of *tense* being determined by the *rule of sequence*.

Dant obsidēs nē Caesar oppi-    *They give hostages in order that*  
 dum dēleat,                            *Caesar may not destroy their*  
    *town*

## 212.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar māgnō equitātūs numerō oppidum circum-  
 dedit nē hostēs noctū<sup>1</sup> discēderent. 2. Hostēs quī militum  
 nostrōrum impetum sustinēre possunt ad Caesarem dē  
 pāce lēgātōs nōn mittent. 3. Rēmī quī proximī Belgīs  
 et hominēs virtūtis māgnae erant ex suīs finibus Germānōs  
 facile expulērunt. 4. Ubi trāns flūmen hostium agmina  
 vīdit, Caesar in collem proximum cōpiās omnēs suās ēdūxit  
 ac praefectis equitum ut proeliū signum expectārent im-  
 perāvit. 5. Rēmī quī Caesaris exercitūs adventum timent  
 Belgās reliquōs, quod populō Rōmānō obsidēs trādidērunt  
 et pācem petīvērunt, incūsant.

II.—1. Because they were not able to withstand the  
 Roman infantry, the Sequani burned all their towns and  
 departed out of Gaul. 2. Upon the arrival of the cavalry  
 (*singular of equitātus*) which our leaders had collected  
 from (*ex*) many states the Gauls sent ambassadors to Caesar  
 with respect to a surrender. 3. While our men were  
 preparing to storm the walls of the town with weapons and  
 stones, the townsmen suddenly departed and placed (*pōnō*)  
 safety in flight. 4. When the enemy saw upon the hill our  
 cavalry whose approach (*adventus*) scouts had announced,  
 they did not await an attack but<sup>2</sup> fled at once into the  
 nearest (*proximus*) villages.

---

<sup>1</sup> An old ablative used adverbially, *by night*.

<sup>2</sup> Use *ac*.



## LESSON XL.

## THE IŌ VERB OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. Learn *capiō*,<sup>1</sup> *I take*, in the entire active voice (480).

—Principal parts, *capiō*, *capere*, *cēpi*, *captum*.

214. Reflexive (personal) pronoun of the third person.—

*Sui*, of himself, herself, etc.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> —	—
<i>Gen.</i> <i>sui</i> , of himself	<i>sui</i> , of themselves
<i>Dat.</i> <i>sibi</i> , to or for himself	<i>sibi</i> , to or for themselves
<i>Acc.</i> <i>sē</i> , himself	<i>sē</i> , themselves
<i>Abl.</i> <i>sē</i> , from, etc., himself	<i>sē</i> , from, etc., themselves

The reflexive (personal) pronoun *sē*, etc., like its corresponding possessive *suus*, etc., (189), refers to the *subject of the sentence or clause*: hence it is distinguished by the term ‘reflexive’ (from *reflectō*, bend or turn back).

*Cum Caesar in Galliā esset, lēgātī ad eum* (not reflexive) *While Caesar was in Gaul, ambassadors came to him*  
*vērērunt,*

*Caesar lēgātōs ad sē* (reflexive) *Caesar ordered ambassadors to*  
*venīre iussit,* *come to him*

## 215. VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 34–41 (450).

<i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> , prep. with the abl.	<i>from</i>
<i>ācritēr</i> , adv.	<i>fiercely</i>
<i>faciō</i> ,	<i>to do or make</i>
<i>impetum facere</i> ,	<i>to make an attack</i>
<i>accipiō</i> ,	<i>to receive</i>
<i>que</i> , conj.	<i>and</i>

<sup>1</sup> Verbs in *iō* retain *i* before *a*, *ō*, *u*, and *ē*: see *capiō* in the present indicative *capīunt*, imperfect *capīebam*, future *capīēs*, present subjunctive *capīat*. So with compounds of *capiō*.

**Que** is always *enclitic*, being attached to the *second* of two words connected: **ferrō ignique**, *with fire and sword*. When **que** joins clauses, it is attached to the *first* word of the *second* clause.

**Caesar vicōs incendit agrōsque vāstāvit,** *Caesar burnt the villages and laid waste the fields*

**216. Use of *impetum facere*.—***Impetum facere*, to make an attack, usually takes in + *accusative*.

**Hostēs in nostrōs impetum ācritēr fēcērunt,** *The enemy made a fierce attack upon our men*

An *adverb* is often used in *Latin* where the English makes use of an *adjective*, as with **ācritēr** in the above sentence.

**217. Review of important points.**—Define *meaning* and use of **suus** (189); distinguish **cum** and **ubi** clauses (203); explain use of **ut** and **quod**, and of **imperō** and **iubeō** (166); **nē** + *subjunctive* (211); predicate nominative with **sum**, etc.; position and agreement of the *relative*; rule of sequence; name *six* kinds of *ablatives*.

## 218.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Dux noster in deditiōnem Rēmōs accipiet et cōpiīs omnibus in Sēquanōrum finēs, ut in hostēs impetum ācritēr faciat, mātūrābit. 2. Caesar imperat Galbae ut cōpiīs quās ab Rēmīs, finitimīs, accēperat in oppidānōs impetum faciat. 3. Adventū equitātūs nostrī Caesar commeātibus hostēs prohibuit et māgnā hominum multitudīne oppidūm circumdedit, nē oppidānī fugā salūtem peterent. 4. Caesar mūnitiōnibus mūrisque altīs ea castra in quibus omnēs suās legiōnēs posuerat circumdedit ut exercitus noster ad hiemandum salūtis locum habēret. 5. Tum Rēmī ac Belgae quī civitatēs Galliae proximae prōvinciae sunt ad Caesaris castra dē deditiōne hominēs idōneōs mīsērunt.

II.—1. While our infantry in an unfavourable place were

withstanding the javelins of the enemy with courage, Caesar directed his generals to lead out the cavalry and make an attack upon the enemies' rear. 2. Because Caesar ordered the Remi to inhabit a part of the territories which he had received from (*ab*) the Gauls, many states next to Gaul blamed Caesar and prepared to attack our camp. 3. While the cavalry were making an attack upon the Gauls, Caesar ordered his scouts to destroy the bridge, which the enemy had built, in order that they might not be able to depart out of Gaul without a surrender.

## 219. REVIEW VOCABULARY.

### LESSONS XXII—XL.

1. **possum, posse, potuī**, [no supine], *to be able*
2. **cōpia, cōpiae** (fem.), *abundance*
3. **aditus, aditūs** (mas.), *access*
4. **omnis, omnis, omne** (adj.), *all*
5. **inter** (prep. with the *acc.*), *among*
6. **ac** (conj.), *and*
7. **nūtiō, nūtiāre, nūtiāvī, nūtiātum**, *announce*
8. **adventus, adventūs** (mas.), *approach*
9. **armō, armāre, armāvī, armātum**, *arm*
10. **arma, armōrum** (neut.), *arms*
11. **exercitus, exercitūs** (mas.), *army*
12. **petō, petere, petīvī, petitum**, *ask for or seek*
13. **impetus, impetūs** (mas.), *attack*
14. **eōdem tempore**, *at the same time*
15. **statim** (adv.), *at once*
16. **exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātum**, *await*
17. **manus, manūs** (fem.), *band*
18. **corpus, corporis** (neut.), *body*
19. **finis, finis** (mas.), *end, (plural) boundary or territories*
20. **fortis, fortis, forte** (adj.), *brave*
21. **fortiter** (adv.), *bravely*
22. **pōns, pontis** (mas.), *bridge*

23. **frāter, frātris** (mas.), *brother*
24. **incendō, incendere, incendi, incēsum**, *burn*
25. **Caesar, Caesaris** (mas.), *Caesar*
26. **calamitās, calamitātis** (fem.), *calamity*
27. **eques, equitis** (mas.), *horseman*, (plur.) *Roman cavalry*
28. **equitātus, equitātūs** (mas.), *cavalry*
29. **prīnceps, prīncipis** (mas.), *chief*
30. **cohors, cohortis** (fem.), *cohort*
31. **cōgō, cōgere, cōgī, cōactum**, *collect*
32. **imperātor, imperātōris** (mas.), *commander*
33. **contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum**, *contend*
34. **virtūs, virtūtis** (fem.), *courage*
35. **mōs, mōris** (mas.), *custom or habit*
36. **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum**, *defeat*
37. **postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātum**, *demand*
38. **discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum**, *depart*
39. **profectiō, profectiōnis** (fem.), *departure*
40. **dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēletum**, *destroy*
41. **distineō, distinēre, distinuī, distentum**, *divide*
42. **faciō, facere, fecī, factum**, *do or make*
43. **expello, expellere, expulī, expulsum**, *drive out*
44. **facilis, facilis, facile** (adj.), *easy*
45. **hostis, hostis** (mas.), *enemy*
46. **cōnscribō, cōnscribere, cōnscripsī, cōnscriptum**, *enroll*
47. **permittō, permittere, permīsī, permissum**, *entrust*
48. **pater, patris** (mas.), *father*
49. **fertilitās, fertilitātis** (fem.), *fertility*
50. **timeō, timēre, timuī**, [no supine], *fear*
51. **levitās, levitātis** (fem.), *fickleness*
52. **ācritē** (adv.), *fiercely*
53. **compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum**, *fill*
54. **īgnis, īgnis** (mas.), *fire*
55. **pēs, pedis** (mas.), *foot*
56. **mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis** (fem.), *fortification*
57. **undique** (adv.), *from or on all sides*
58. **bonus, bona, bonum** (adj.), *good*
59. **trādō, trādere, trādīdī, trāditum**, *hand over*
60. **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum**, *have*

61. altitūdō, altitūdinis (fem.), *height*
62. collis, collis (mas.), *hill*
63. suus, sua, suum (possessive adj. pron.), *his or their*
64. teneō, tenēre, tenuī, [no supine], *hold*
65. cornū, cornūs (neut.), *horn*
66. obses, obsidis (mas.), *hostage*
67. amplificō, amplificāre, amplificāvī, amplificātum, *increase*
68. pedes, peditis (mas.), *footman*, (plur.) *infantry*
69. auctōritās, auctōritātis (fem.), *influence*
70. incolō, incolere, incoluī, [no supine], *inhabit*
71. nē (conj.), *in order that . . . not*
72. contineō, continēre, continuī, contentum, *keep*
73. rēx, rēgis (mas.), *king*
74. lēx, lēgis (fem.), *law*
75. dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead*
76. dux, ducis (mas.), *leader*
77. ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum, *lead out*
78. relinquō, relinquere, reliquī, relictum, *leave*
79. legiō, legiōnis (fem.), *legion*
80. agmen, agminis (neut.), *line of march* (marching column)
81. homō, hominis (mas.), *man*
82. impetum facere, *make an attack*
83. mōns, montis (mas.), *mountain*
84. moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move*
85. multitūdō, multitūdinis (fem.), *multitude*
86. nōmen, nōminis (neut.), *name*
87. nox, noctis (fem.), *night*
88. nōndum (adv.), *not yet*
89. ab latere, *on the flank*
90. facultās, facultātis (fem.), *opportunity*
91. iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order*
92. pars, partis (fem.), *part*
93. pāx, pācis (fem.), *peace*
94. pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place*
95. potestās, potestātis (fem.), *power*
96. parātus, parāta, parātum (adj.), *prepared or ready*
97. prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum, *prevent*

98. novissimum agmen, novissimī agminis (neut.), *rear*
99. accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum, *receive*
100. redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctum, *reduce*
101. rūmor, rūmōris (mas.), *report*
102. flūmen, flūminis (neut.), *river*
103. salūs, salūtis (fem.), *safety*
104. explōrātor, explōrātōris (mas.), *scout*
105. videō, vidēre, vidī, visum, *see*
106. mitto, mittere, misī, missum, *send*
107. Sēquanī, Sēquanōrum (mas.), *Sequani*
108. gravis, gravis, grave (adj.), *severe*
109. latus, lateris (neut.), *side or flank*
110. servitūs, servitūtis (fem.), *slavery*
111. tam (adv.), *so*
112. tantus, tanta, tantum (adj.), *so great*
113. mīles, mīlitis (mas.), *soldier*
114. ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis (fem.), *speech*
115. civitās, civitātis (fem.), *state*
116. lapis, lapidis (mas.), *stone*
117. valeō, valēre, valui, valitum, *to be strong*
118. subitō (adv.), *suddenly*
119. aestās, aestātis (fem.), *summer*
120. commeātus, commeātūs (mas.), *supplies*
121. dēditō, dēditōnis (fem.), *surrender*
122. dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, *surrender*
123. circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatum, *surround*
124. capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take*
125. tum, inde (adverbs), *then*
126. ibi (adv.), *there*
127. cis (prep. with the acc.), *on this side of*
128. tempus, temporis (neut.), *time*
129. turris, turris (fem.), *tower*
130. inīquus, inīqua, inīquum (adj.), *unfavourable*
131. inimicus, inimīca, inimicum (adj.), *unfriendly*
132. bellum, belli (neut.), *war*
133. vigilia, vigiliae (fem.), *watch* (division of the night)
134. ubi (adv.), *when*

135. *cum* (conj.), *while*

136. *quī, quae, quod* (rel. pron.), *who, which, what, that*

137. *sustineō, sustinēre, sustinui, sustentum*, *withstand*

138. *dē* (prep. with the *abl.*), *with respect to*

## LESSON XLI.

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

**220. Rēs, thing, fem.**

**Diēs, day, mas.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rei</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diērum</i>
	<i>diēi</i>	<i>diēbus</i>
	<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>
	<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
	<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>

The stem of nouns in the fifth declension ends in *ē*. Nouns of the fifth declension are *feminine*, except *diēs*, which is *masculine*.

*Rēs* and *diēs* alone have the entire plural; others occur usually in the nominative and accusative plural—many have no plural.

**221. Ablative of separation.**—Separation is expressed by the ablative with or without a preposition; as,

*Caesar armīs hostēs dēspoliāt*, *Caesar deprives the enemy of their arms*

**222.**

### VOCABULARY.

<i>spēs</i>	<i>spei, fem.</i>	<i>hope</i>
<i>fidēs</i>	<i>fidei, fem.</i>	<i>confidence</i>
<i>propīnquitās</i>	<i>-tātis, fem.</i>	<i>nearness</i>
<i>exiguitās</i>	<i>-tātis, fem.</i>	<i>shortness</i>
<i>vulnus</i>	<i>-neris, neut.</i>	<i>wound</i>
<i>summus -a -um, adj.</i>		<i>top of</i>
<i>in summō colle</i>		<i>on the top of the hill</i>
<i>sī, conj.</i>		<i>if</i>
<i>nisi, conj.</i>		<i>unless</i>
<i>proelium committō</i>		<i>to begin battle</i>
<i>pellō</i>		<i>to defeat</i>

**223. Use of *si* and *nisi* in conditionals (335).—***Si, nisi*, etc., introduce conditional sentences. In a conditional sentence the *dependent* clause, *containing the condition*, is called the *protasis*; the clause containing the *conclusion* is called the *apodosis*.

**The more vivid future condition.**—(a) In the *more vivid* future condition the *future indicative* is used in both *protasis* and *apodosis*; as,

**Caesar pācem faciet, sī hostēs obsidēs dēdent,** *Caesar will make peace, if the enemy surrender hostages*

(b) If the conditional act is considered as *completed* before that of the *apodosis*, the *future perfect* is used in the *protasis*; as,

**Nisi hostēs omnia arma trāderint, Galba proelium committet,** *Unless the enemy hand over all their arms, Galba will begin battle*

(‘Hand over’ = *will have handed over*, representing action *completed* in the *future*, before *another future action* begins.)

**224.****EXERCISE.**

1. Caesar in servitūtem eās civitatēs quae cum nostris peditibus in Rēmōrum finibus proelium commiserunt facile redēgit. 2. Militēs quī commeātūs petendī causā ē castris discesserant adventum hostium nōn cōspēxērunt. 3. Nostri propter propīnquitātem celeritātemque hostium capere oppidum in quō erant commeātūs et multa arma nōn potuērunt. 4. Cum Caesar in colle adventum hostium exspectāret, praefectīs equitum mandāvit ut statim ē castris omnēs cōpiās ēdūcerent et ad committendum proelium parārent. 5. Noster imperātor in suam fidem<sup>1</sup> Rēmōs finitimōsque accipiet, sī eae civitatēs quae sine causā in

---

<sup>1</sup> In suam fidem = under his protection.



nostrōs impetum fēcērunt ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne lēgātōs mīserint. 6. Caesar in Belgās omnibus cōpiīs impetum faciet, nisi Belgae lēgātōs mīserint ut obsidēs dēdant pācemque petant. 7. Peditēs Rōmānī propter temporis exiguitātem celeritātemque hostium imperātum Caesaris nōn expectāvērunt sed in hostēs impetum ācritēr fēcērunt, nē pūgnandī facultātem āmitterent.

## LESSON XLII.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

**225. Mūniō, I fortify.** Principal parts **mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi, mūnītum.** The present system is as follows. The *present stem, mūnī,* is found by striking off *re* from the *present infinitive active, munire.*

**Present  
indicative.***I fortify.***SINGULAR.**

1. mūniō
2. mūnīs
3. mūnit

**PLURAL.**

1. mūnīmus
2. mūnītis
3. mūniunt

**Imperfect  
indicative.***was fortifying.*

mūniōbam  
mūniōbās, etc.

**Future  
indicative.**

*shall fortify.*  
mūniam  
mūniēs, etc.

**Present  
subjunctive.***may fortify.*

mūniam  
mūniās, etc.

**Imperfect  
subjunctive.**

*might fortify.*  
mūnīrem  
mūnīrēs, etc.

**Imperative.**

mūnī, *fortify thou*  
mūnīte, *fortify ye, etc.*

**Present participle.**mūniēns, *fortifying***Present infinitive.**mūnīre, *to fortify***Gerund.**mūniendī, *of fortifying*

## 226.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 1-9 (451).

<b>audiō</b>	<i>to hear</i>
<b>impediō</b>	<i>to hinder</i>
<b>veniō</b>	<i>to come</i>
<b>cōsentiō</b>	<i>to conspire</i>
<b>quis, interrogative pronoun</b>	<i>who?</i>
<b>aliquis</b> { <i>indefinite pronoun,</i> after <i>sī, nīsi, nē,</i> <i>num, quis.</i> }	<i>any one, some one</i>

227. Demonstrative pronoun *hīc, this.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>hīc</b>	<b>haec</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hī</b>	<b>hae</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hūius</b>	<b>hōrum</b>	<b>hārum</b>	<b>hōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>huic</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>hunc</b>	<b>hanc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hōs</b>	<b>hās</b>	<b>haec</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hāc</b>	<b>hōc</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>	<b>hīs</b>

228. Use of *nē (not)* in negative commands.—*Imperō, mandō*, and many verbs of *commanding* take *ut + subjunctive* in affirmative commands, and *nē + subjunctive* in negative commands.

**Caesar imperat militibus nē** *Caesar commands his soldiers*  
**oppidum incendant,** *not to burn the town*

## 229.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Hīs in locīs sunt nōn multa oppida idōnea tantae hominum multitudinī.* 2. *Germānī spē expūgnandī oppida multa trāns Rhēnum in Galliam suās cōpiās dūxerant.* 3. *Belgae omnibus cōpiīs in prōvinciam nostram ut in fidem populī Rōmānī liberōs obsidēs trādant veniunt.* 4. *Nisi Caesar in hās cīvitatēs quās Galba proeliīs multis in servitūtem redēgit contenderit, hostēs manūs novās cōgent ut mūnitiōnēs Rōmānās incendant.* 5. *Sēquani*

cum Belgis, finitimis, cōsentiunt et oppida sua fossis mūrisque mūniunt nē Caesar in potestātem populī Rōmānī civitatēs redigat.

II.—1. Because the enemy fear the approach of the Roman legions, they will depart out of these fortifications and leave in camp a large part of their baggage. 2. While Caesar's soldiers were fortifying that town which the Sequani had left, the Belgians made an attack upon Galba's infantry who were coming towards the town with all the baggage. 3. When Caesar saw the large number of ambassadors whom the enemy had sent into our camp, he commanded his generals not to make (nē + *imperf. subj.*) an attack upon the enemies' forces. 4. Unless the chiefs of these states which are strong in courage and in number of men come<sup>1</sup> into our camp and ask for<sup>1</sup> peace, Caesar will lead out his infantry and lay waste their towns and fields.

## LESSON XLIII.

### FOURTH CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

230. Perfect system of *mūniō*.—*Stem mūnīv.*

Perfect indicative. <i>I fortified.</i>	Pluperfect indicative. <i>had fortified.</i>	Perfect subjunctive. <i>may have fortified.</i>
<b>SINGULAR.</b>	<i>mūnīveram,</i> <i>mūnīverās, etc.</i>	<i>mūnīverim, etc.</i>
1. <i>mūnīvī</i>		<b>Pluperfect subjunctive.</b>
2. <i>mūnīvistī</i>		<i>might have fortified.</i>
3. <i>mūnīvit</i>	<b>Future-perfect indicative.</b>	<i>mūnīvissem, etc.</i>
<b>PLURAL.</b>		<b>Perfect infinitive.</b>
1. <i>mūnīvimus</i>	<i>shall have fortified.</i>	<i>to have fortified.</i>
2. <i>mūnīvistis</i>	<i>mūnīverō</i>	<i>mūnīvisse</i>
3. <i>mūnīvērunt (-ēre)</i>	<i>mūnīveris, etc.</i>	

<sup>1</sup> Future or future-perfect indicative.

Give synopsis, *by stems*, in entire active voice of **audiō** and **cōsentiō**.

Give synopsis in active voice of **mūniō**, *by moods*, etc., in the order given in (482).

**231. Supine system of mūniō.—Stem mūnit.**

- |                             |                                  |                               |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>First supine</i>      | mūnitum,                         | <i>to fortify</i>             |
| 2. <i>Second supine</i>     | mūnitū,                          | <i>to fortify</i>             |
| 3. <i>Future participle</i> | mūnitūrus -a, -um,               | <i>being about to fortify</i> |
| 4. <i>Future infinitive</i> | { mūnitūrum,<br>-am, -um esse, } | <i>to be about to fortify</i> |

**232.**

**VOCABULARY.**

**Verbs 10–19 (451).**

**233. Demonstrative pronoun ille, that, he.**

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

**234.**

**EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Nisi illae cīvitātēs reliquīs cum Belgīs cōsistent ac suis amicīs auxilium dabunt, Gallī Caesaris exercitūs adventum impedire nōn poterunt. 2. Exercitus noster vicōs omnēs incendit (*perf.*) et agrōs per quōs vēnerant vāstāvit, nē hostēs illa loca incolere possent. 3. Cum Rēmī in castra sua cum impedimentīs exercitūs venirent, nostrī in novissimum agmen impetum fēcērunt et agmina perturbāverunt. 4. Caesar hōc proeliō in servitūtem omnēs eās cīvitātēs quārum principēs cum Germānīs cōsēserant et obsidēs nōn dederant redēgit. 5. Quod hostēs, in castrīs suās manūs retinendō, nostrīs facultātem pūgnandī nōn

dedērunt, Caesar ducibus prīmae legiōnis ut omnibus cum cohortibus eius legiōnis ē castrīs contenderent et in mūrum oppidī impetum facerent imperāvit.

II.—1. When the enemy had lost hope with respect to withstanding the attack of our infantry, Caesar directed their chiefs to bring (**addūcō**) hostages into his camp and to surrender the town without delay. 2. At the same time ambassadors come to Caesar from all sides and bring corn and (**que**) supplies for our men, because Caesar had announced the approach of his army. 3. While the enemy were fortifying their camp on the top of the hill, our commanders surrounded the hill with (**omit**) infantry and (**que**) cavalry and began battle on all sides. 4. The Sequani into whose territories Caesar is preparing to lead a large army will ask for (**petō**) peace, in order that the Roman legions may not lay waste their fields, destroy their fortifications, and burn their towns.

## LESSON XLIV.

### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE.

#### 235. Present indicative passive of *portō*.

##### SINGULAR.

1. *portor, I am (being) carried*
2. *portāris (-re), you are carried*
3. *portātur, he is carried*

##### PLURAL.

1. *portāmur, we are carried*
2. *portāmini, you are carried*
3. *portantur, they are carried*

The *present stem* is **portā** as in the *active*, to which are annexed the following endings.

#### Table of endings.

##### SINGULAR.

**-or**  
**-ris (-re)**  
**-tur**

##### PLURAL.

**-mur**  
**-mini**  
**-ntur**

Conjugate **postulō** and **cōservō** in the *present indicative passive*.

## 236.

## VOCABULARY.

Review verbs 1-19 (451).

Decline **idem**, *the same* (464).

**237. Personal agent—how expressed.**—The agent or doer with a passive verb is put in the *ablative with ā or ab*. Distinguish carefully *means* or *instrument* from *agent*; thus,

(a) **Galli ā Rōmānis superantur**, *the Gauls are overcome by the Romans: by the Romans = persons by whom*, hence **ā** or **ab** + *ablative*, to denote *personal agent*.

(b) **agri igni vāstantur**, *the fields are laid waste by fire: by fire = thing by which*, hence *ablative of means* or *instrument* without a preposition.

## 238.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Eae cīvitatēs quae arma commeātūsque trādiderunt ā nostrīs cōservantur. 2. Proelium in summō colle ab imperātōre fortī redintegrātur. 3. Finēs per quōs Caesar suum exercitum dūxit ā peditibus nostrīs vāstantur. 4. Dēditio omnium armōrum ā Caesare postulātur, quod Sēquanī in Rēmōs, finitimōs amīcōsque populī Rōmānī, impetum ācriter fēcērunt. 5. Hostēs ad Caesarem liberōs principum obsidēs misērunt nē facultātem faciendī pācem āmitterent.

II.—1. New fortifications are being built by those soldiers whom Caesar had left in camp. 2. Those states into which the Roman commanders came to enroll new legions are spared by Caesar. 3. The number of soldiers is being increased by the Roman commanders in order that the enemy may not be able to defeat our army. 4. Unless

Caesar surrounds<sup>1</sup> the town on all sides, the enemy will depart by night<sup>2</sup> and seek safety in flight. 5. The enemies' forces which made an attack upon Caesar's infantry while they were fortifying their camp, are easily routed by Galba's soldiers.

## LESSON XLV.

### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, CONTINUED.

#### 239. *Portō* continued in the indicative passive.

**Imperfect indicative.**  
*was (being) carried.*

**SINGULAR.**

1. portābar
2. portābāris (-re)
3. portābātur

**PLURAL.**

1. portābāmur
2. portābāminī
3. portābantur

**Future indicative.**  
*shall be carried.*

**SINGULAR.**

- portābor
- portāberis (-re)
- portābitur

**PLURAL.**

- portābimur
- portābiminī
- portābuntur

#### Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-bar	-bāmur	-bor	-bimur
-bāris (-re)	-bāminī	-beris (-re)	-biminī
-bātur	-bantur	-bitur	-buntur

240. Use of *ā* or *ab*.—*Ā* or *ab* means *from* (denoting origin or source) when the adverbial phrase (*preposition + noun*) limits a verb in the *active voice*; but it means *by* (denoting personal agent) if it limits a *passive verb*:

1. **Hostēs ab Gallīs auxilium accipiunt,** *The enemy receive aid from the Gauls*
2. **Auxilium hostibus (dat.) ab Gallīs datur,** *Aid is given to the enemy by the Gauls*

<sup>1</sup> Fut. perf. indic.; see 223 (b).

<sup>2</sup> noctū.

## 241.

## VOCABULARY.

Review words 1-46 in the 'review vocabulary' (219).

<b>auxilia</b>	<b>-ōrum, neut.</b>	<i>auxiliaries</i>
<b>medius</b>	<b>-a, -um, adj.</b>	<i>middle of</i>
<b>dē mediā nocte</b>		<i>about the middle of the night</i>
<b>eō, adv.</b>		<i>thither</i>
<b>ad eum, ad eōs</b>		<i>to him, to them</i>

242. Decline *quis, who?* (465).

Sometimes *is, ea, id, he, she, it*, is used as the personal pronoun of the third person ; thus,

1. **Cum Caesar esset in Galliā,** *While Caesar was in Gaul,*  
**lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt,** *ambassadors came to him*
2. **Nisi Belgae pācem petent** *Unless the Belgians ask for*  
**(petiverint), Caesar statim in eōs impetum faciet,** *peace, Caesar will make an*  
*attack upon them at once*

## 243.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Causa coniūrandī erat haec, quod multis in locis oppida Gallōrum ā militibus nostrīs vāstābantur.* 2. *Sīgnum ad proelium committendum ab imperātore cūius cōpiaē in silvīs cēlantur*<sup>1</sup> *subitō dabitur hostēsque ā legiōnibus fortibus prōfligābuntur.* 3. *Cum exercitus noster in extrēmā Galliā esset, obsidēs nōmine populī Rōmānī ā ducibus nostrīs postulābantur et in castra Rōmāna sine morā ab hostibus portābantur.* 4. *Potestās populī Rōmānī inter eās civitatēs quārum virtūs māgna est ā Caesare amplificābitur, nē hostēs commeātibus nostrōs prohibeant.* 5. *Eōdem tempore oppida Sēquanōrum ab hīs cōpiīs quibus Galba tēla nova dedit occupantur, quod ad Caesarem de pāce lēgātōs nōn mīsērunt.*

II.—1. The enemy fled with all their baggage out of the territories through which our men were coming, because

<sup>1</sup> The present indicative passive denotes the *continuance* of an action in the present; *cēlantur* = 'are being concealed.'



they feared the power of our army. 2. The brave soldiers of the second legion were overcome by many wounds, which they received when they made an attack upon the Germans. 3. While Caesar was wintering among the Remi whose fields are next to the Roman province, corn and supplies were carried to him by many states. 4. When the enemy saw the high towers which were being built by our men so that they might storm the walls of the town, they at once surrendered to Caesar the children of their chiefs as hostages and asked for peace.

## LESSON XLVI.

## FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, CONTINUED.

244. *Portō* continued in the present system passive.

## Present subjunctive.

*may be carried.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>porter</i>	<i>portēmur</i>
2. <i>portēris (-re)</i>	<i>portēmini</i>
3. <i>portētur</i>	<i>portentur</i>

## Imperfect subjunctive.

*might be carried.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>portārer</i>	<i>portārēmur</i>
<i>portārēris (-re)</i>	<i>portārēmini</i>
<i>portāretur</i>	<i>portārentur</i>

## Imperative.

## SINGULAR.

2. { *portāre*, *be thou carried*  
       *portātor*, *thou shalt be carried*  
 3. *portātor*, *he shall be carried*

## PLURAL.

2. *portāmini*, *be ye carried*  
 3. *portantor*, *they shall be carried*

## Present infinitive.

## Gerundive.

*portārī*, *to be carried*    *portandus, -a, -um*, (*worthy*) *to be carried*

245. This completes the *eight* forms in the *passive*, based upon the *present stem portā*. The *present stem portā* undergoes a change in the *present subjunctive* where final *ā*

becomes *e*. Compare the *ending* of the *present infinitive active* (*āre*) with that of the *present infinitive passive* (*ārī*).

**246. Synopsis of *portō* in the present system passive.—**  
*Stem portā.*

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	portor,	<i>I am being carried</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	portābar,	<i>I was being carried</i>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	portābor,	<i>I shall be carried</i>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	porter,	<i>I may be carried</i>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	portārer,	<i>I might be carried</i>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	portāre,	<i>be thou carried</i>
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	portārī,	<i>to be carried</i>
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	portandus -a -um,	<i>(worthy) to be carried</i>

**247.****VOCABULARY.**

Review words 47–92, in ‘review vocabulary’ (219).

vadum, -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>ford</i>
concilium, -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>council of war</i>
post, <i>prep. with the acc.</i>	<i>behind or after</i>
prōtinus, <i>adv.</i>	<i>immediately</i>
atque, <i>conj.</i>	<i>and also</i>

**248.****EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Proximō diē Caesar fortibus equitātūs praefectīs ut in Sēquanōrum finēs cōpiās omnēs dūcerent imperāvit, nē auxilia ā Sēquanīs ad Aeduōs portārentur. 2. Aeduī, quod nostrī exercitūs quem timēbant adventum audīverant (*had heard of*), ad Germānōs, finitimōs, lēgātōs mīserunt ut ab eīs cīvitatibus quae populō Rōmānō sē nōndum dēdiderant auxilia impetrārent. 3. Nisi Galba suōs milītēs in novissimum agmen Aeduōrum impetum facere iusserit commeātibusque eōs prohibuerit, Aeduī ex Italiā contendēt et cum Germānīs coniūrābunt. 4. Cum Caesar castra mūnīret, lēgātī ex māgnā parte Galliae ad eum vērēbunt atque ut in dēditionem eōs acciperet petivērunt.

II.—1. Because the Belgians burned our fortifications in the territories of Gaul, a large number of hostages was demanded by Caesar according to his custom. 2. Galba will enroll new legions and hasten (*mātūrō*) into the boundaries of the Gauls whose fields are being laid waste by the Germans, so that aid may be given to his friends<sup>1</sup> and the enemy may be overcome. 3. A camp will be placed (*conlocō*) on the top of the hill and the battle will be renewed by those generals whose brave forces have defeated (*pellō*) the enemy in many battles.

## LESSON XLVII.

## FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, PERFECT SYSTEM.

249. Principal parts of *portō* in the passive :

Present indicative. Present infinitive. Perfect indicative.

portor

portārī

portātus sum

The perfect stem *portāv* does not occur in the passive voice.

The remaining *eight forms* of the passive are based upon the *supine stem* *portāt* which is seen in the *perfect passive participle*, *portātus*; these compose the *perfect system* of the passive.

250. Perfect system of *portō* in the passive.—*Stem portāt.*

Perfect indicative.

Perfect subjunctive.

*have been—was carried.**may have been carried.*

SINGULAR.

SINGULAR.

1. portātus, -a, -um sum

portātus, -a, -um sim

2. " " " es

" " " sis

3. " " " est

" " " sit

PLURAL.

PLURAL.

1. portātī, -ae, -a sumus

portātī, -ae, -a simus

2. " " " estis

" " " sitis

3. " " " sunt

" " " sint

<sup>1</sup> *Suis amīcīs.*

**Pluperfect indicative.***had been carried.***SINGULAR.**

- |    |                   |      |
|----|-------------------|------|
| 1. | portātus, -a, -um | eram |
| 2. | " " "             | erās |
| 3. | " " "             | erat |

**PLURAL.**

- |    |                  |        |
|----|------------------|--------|
| 1. | portātī, -ae, -a | erāmus |
| 2. | " " "            | erātis |
| 3. | " " "            | erant  |

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***might have been carried.***SINGULAR.**

- |                   |       |
|-------------------|-------|
| portātus, -a, -um | essem |
| " " "             | essēs |
| " " "             | esset |

**PLURAL.**

- |                  |         |
|------------------|---------|
| portātī, -ae, -a | essēmus |
| " " "            | essētis |
| " " "            | essent  |

**Future-perfect indicative.***shall have been carried.***SINGULAR.**

- |    |                   |      |
|----|-------------------|------|
| 1. | portātus, -a, -um | erō  |
| 2. | " " "             | eris |
| 3. | " " "             | erit |

**PLURAL.**

- |    |                  |        |
|----|------------------|--------|
| 1. | portātī, -ae, -a | erimus |
| 2. | " " "            | eritis |
| 3. | " " "            | erunt  |

**Perfect infinitive.**

portātum, -am, -um esse  
*to have been carried.*

**Future infinitive.**

portātum iri  
*to be about to be carried*

**Perfect participle.**

portātus, -a, -um  
*having been carried.*

**251.** The above compound tenses are formed by annexing parts of the verb **sum** to the perfect passive participle, **portātus, -a, -um.**

The participial parts of these tenses, such as **portātus, -a, -um, portātī, -ae, -a, portātum, -am, -um, etc.,** are made to agree in *gender, number, and case* with the *subject* of the verb.

**252.****VOCABULARY.**

Review words 93-138 in 'review vocabulary' (219).

**253. The gerundive construction.**—Instead of the accusative-object with the gerund, put the *object* in the *case* in which the gerund would stand (*were it used*), and place the *gerundive* in agreement with this noun in the *same gender, number, and case.*

1. By drawing up a line of battle: the gerund construction is *instruendō aciēm*; change *aciēm* to the *ablative aciē* (the case indicated by *instruendō*); place the gerundive *instruendus* in the *ablative, singular, feminine* to agree with *aciē* and the phrase is correctly written *aciē instruendā*.

2. By destroying the fortifications: the gerund construction is *dēlendō mūnitiōnēs*; gerundive, *mūnitiōnibus dēlendis*.

**254. Commit to memory the following :**

- |                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| 1. Imperātor amātus est,  | <i>The commander has been or was loved</i> |
| 2. Virtus amāta est,      | <i>Courage has been or was loved</i>       |
| 3. Nōmen amātum est,      | <i>The name was loved</i>                  |
| 4. Militēs amātī sunt,    | <i>The soldiers were loved</i>             |
| 5. Cīvitātēs amātae sunt, | <i>The states were loved</i>               |
| 6. Castra amāta sunt,     | <i>The camp has been loved</i>             |

### LESSON XLVIII.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE. ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES.

**255. Synopsis of the passive—first conjugation—by stems.**

*Present system, stem portā.*

- |                          |           |
|--------------------------|-----------|
| 1. Present indicative    | portor    |
| 2. Imperfect indicative  | portābar  |
| 3. Future indicative     | portābor  |
| 4. Present subjunctive   | porter    |
| 5. Imperfect subjunctive | portārer  |
| 6. Imperative            | portāre   |
| 7. Present infinitive    | portārī   |
| 8. Gerundive             | portandus |

*Perfect system, stem portāt.*

- |                          |                           |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Perfect indicative    | portātus sum <sup>1</sup> |
| 2. Pluperfect indicative | portātus eram             |

---

<sup>1</sup> The perfect indicative passive (*indefinite perfect*) represents the action as *past*, without reference to its *duration*, merely as *something ended*.

3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i>	portātus erō
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	portātus sim
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	portātus essem
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	portātum esse
7. <i>Future infinitive</i>	portātum iri
8. <i>Perfect participle</i>	portātus, -a, -um

Conjugate the entire verb *amō*, *active* and *passive*, as given in (474, 475).

256.

## VOCABULARY.

Review verbs 1–41 (450).

**257. Perfect passive participle.**—The perfect passive participle (p. p. p.) is found by changing final *m* of the *first supine* to *s*: *moveō*, *movēre*, *mōvi*, *mōtum*; supine *mōtum*, p. p. p. *mōtus*, -a, -um, *having been moved*. *cōgnōscō*, *cōgnōscere*, *cōgnōvi*, *cōgnitum*; supine *cōgnitum*, p. p. p. *cōgnitus*, *having been found out*.

**258. Adjectives used as substantives.**—The *adjective* in the *masculine plural* is often used as a noun, meaning *men*, *soldiers*, *friends*, etc.; as, *ad eōs*, *to those (men)*; *primōrum*, *of the foremost (men)*; *reliqui*, *the rest*; *ad suōs*, *to his or their (friends)*;—so *noster* in the *masculine plural*: *nostri*, *our men*.

The *adjective* in the *neuter plural*, as a substantive, means *things* or *possessions*; as, *ea*, *those (things)*; *haec*, *these (things)*; *sua omnia*, *all his or their (possessions)*.

259.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Multa Gallōrum castella ā ncstris quī conlocātī erant in hibernīs in Galliā occupāta sunt. 2. Proelium ab eīs quōs Caesar in Sēquanōrum finīs mīsit redintegrātum est. 3. Lēgātī Rōmānī in extrēmās Galliae partēs vērērunt ut ea quae hostēs facerent<sup>1</sup> cōgnōscerent.

<sup>1</sup> *were doing*; for mood of *facerent* see (276)—'subjunctive by attraction.'

4. Omnia quae erant idōnea bellō ā Belgīs comparāta erant, quod adventum nostrī exercitūs exspectābant. 5. Eī quibus Galba loca in Galliā ad hiemandum dedit ā Gallis fortibus facile prōturbāti sunt. 6. Gallī spē<sup>1</sup> pācis faciendae obsidēs dēdent.

II.—1. All who handed over arms and (que) gave hostages were spared by our general and called friends of the Roman people. 2. About the middle of the night Caesar will send scouts into those territories, in which the camp of the Germans has been placed, to find out those things which the enemy are doing.\* 3. The rest of the Gauls (*nom.*) from whom Caesar had received hostages were incited by the enemies of the Roman people. 4. When (*ubi*) the ambassador of the Belgians came into our camp, Caesar ordered him to surrender to the Roman people all the fields on this side of the river Rhine. 5. The Gauls surround their towns with high walls that they may not be overcome by the Romans.

### LESSON XLIX.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF DĒLEŌ.

260. The present system of *dēleō* continued in the passive.

Present indicative.	Imperfect indicative.	Future indicative.
<i>am being destroyed.</i>	<i>was being destroyed.</i>	<i>shall be destroyed.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. dēleor	dēlēbar	dēlēbor
2. dēlēris (-re)	dēlēbāris (-re)	dēlēberis (-re)
3. dēlētur	dēlēbātur	dēlēbitur
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. dēlēmur	dēlēbāmur	dēlēbimur
2. dēlēmini	dēlēbāmini	dēlēbimini
3. dēlentur	dēlēbantur	dēlēbuntur

<sup>1</sup> Abl. of cause : *because of their hopes.*

<sup>2</sup> *faciant* ; see (276).

The *present stem* is **dōlē**, as in the *active*. The *personal endings* are the same as in the *corresponding* tenses of the *first-conjugation verb*. Avoid putting in an extra syllable in the second person singular, present indicative; it is **dō-lē-ris**, not **dō-lē-e-ris**.

**261.** Compare carefully the following tenses:

First conjugation, present subjunctive.		Second conjugation, present indicative.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. porter	portēmur	dēleor	dēlēmur
2. portēris (-re)	portēminī	dēlēris (-re)	dēlēminī
3. portētur	portentur	dēlētur	dēlentur

When the verb ends in **ētur**, **entur**, etc., it is *present subjunctive* in the *first* conjugation, *present indicative* in the *second* conjugation.

**262.**

#### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 42-48 (450).

sagittārius, sagittāriī, <i>mas.</i>	bowman
funditor, funditōris, <i>mas.</i>	slinger
quīnque, <i>indecl. num. adj.</i>	five
circiter, <i>adv.</i>	about
cum, <i>conj.</i>	after
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum,	to lead across
pervenīō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum,	to arrive at
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum,	to drive
tum, <i>adv.</i>	then

**263.** Cum + pluperfect subjunctive (203, 359).—Cum, when, in the sense of ‘after,’ takes the pluperfect subjunctive, translated like the *pluperfect indicative*; as,

Cum Caesar in Galliam iter fēcisset, multae civitatēs ad eum lēgātōs dē pāce mīsē- runt,	After Caesar had marched into Gaul, many states sent am- bassadors to him with respect to peace
---	--

**264.**

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Exercitus noster in Galliā distinētur, nē rēgnum  
ā Caesaris hostibus occupētur. 2. Fossae quae oppidum



circumdant corporibus eorum quī peditum Rōmānōrum impetum nōn sustinuērunt complentur. 3. Cum Caesar eō vēnisset, Rēmi quōrum civitatēs proximae Belgīs sunt ad eum principēs lēgātōs, ut eī' sua omnia trādant, mittunt. 4. Caesar māgnō numerō cōpiārum fortium collem in quō hostēs sua castra mūniēbant circumdedit praefectisque, ut in eōs māgnā cum virtūte impetum ācritur facerent, imperāvit.

II.—1. Unless Caesar leads<sup>1</sup> the bowmen and (que) slingers across the bridge and prevents<sup>1</sup> the departure of the enemy, he will not receive the hostages which he had demanded. 2. That state, from (ā) which auxiliaries came so that they might aid our army, will not be attacked by the Roman soldiers. 3. Because the Rēmi are ready to give hostages and receive him in their towns, Caesar will command his generals not to lead the army through that state. 4. After the Rēmi had surrendered all their (possessions), Caesar ordered them to inhabit that part of Gaul from which he had driven (expellō) the bands of the enemy.

## LESSON L.

### SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF DĒLEŌ, CONTINUED.

265. The present system of *dēleō* completed in the passive.

Decline ūnus, duo, and trēs (468).

Present subjunctive.		Imperfect subjunctive.	
<i>may be destroyed.</i>		<i>might be destroyed.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. dēlear	dēleāmur	dēlērēr	dēlērēmur
2. dēleāris (-re)	dēleāmini	dēlērēris (-re)	dēlērēmini
3. dēleātur	dēleantur	dēlērētur	dēlērentur

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

<sup>2</sup> Future or future-perfect indicative.

Imperative.		Present infinitive.
<i>be thou destroyed, etc.</i>		<i>dēlēri, to be destroyed</i>
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	Gerundive.
2. { <i>dēlere</i>	<i>dēlēminī</i>	
{ <i>dēlētor</i>		
3. <i>dēlētor</i>	<i>dēlentor</i>	<i>dēlendus, -a, -um, (worthy) to be destroyed</i>

The *stem* is **dēlē**: this completes the *present system* of eight forms based upon **dēlē**.

**266.** Compare carefully the following tenses :

First conjugation, present indicative, stem <i>portā</i> .		Second conjugation, present subjunctive, stem <i>dēlē</i> .	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>portor</i>	<i>portāmur</i>	<i>dēlear</i>	<i>dēlēāmur</i>
2. <i>portāris (-re)</i>	<i>portāminī</i>	<i>dēlēāris (-re)</i>	<i>dēlēāminī</i>
3. <i>portātur</i>	<i>portantur</i>	<i>dēlēātur</i>	<i>dēleantur</i>

Thus when a verb ends in **ātur, antur, etc.**, it is *present indicative* in the *first* conjugation, *present subjunctive* in the *second* conjugation.

**267.**

#### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 49–55 (450).

<i>ūnus, ūna, ūnum, num. adj.</i>	<i>one</i>
<i>quantus, quanta, quantum, adj.</i>	<i>how great</i>
<i>neque . . . neque, conj.</i>	<i>neither . . . nor</i>
<i>celeriter, adv.</i>	<i>quickly</i>
<i>ipse, ipsa, ipsum, emphatic pron.</i>	<i>he, self</i>
<i>quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum,</i>	<i>to inquire</i>
<i>palūs, palūdis, fem.</i>	<i>swamp</i>
<i>coniungo, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūctum,</i>	<i>to join</i>

**268.**

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Omnēs reliquī Belgae in armīs sunt Germānique quī cis Rhēnum incolunt sē cum hīs coniūnxērunt, nē sua oppida ā nostrīs dēleantur. 2. Cum Germānī suās cōpiās trāns Rhēnum trādūxissent, ibi cōnsēdērunt Gallōsque quī ea loca incolēbant armīs expulērunt. 3. Cum ab hīs

Caesar quaereret quantae civitātēs in armīs essent<sup>1</sup> atque quantum exercitum hostēs cōgere possent,<sup>2</sup> haec reperiēbat. 4. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum et hostēs trāns hanc suās cōpiās trādūcere parābant. 5. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est contendērunt.

II.—1. Caesar leads out all the army and prepares to storm the walls so that the town may be destroyed and many weapons may be seized. 2. After Caesar had come into those parts in which he had placed (pōnō) his camp, many states joined themselves with our army so that their children might not be reduced into slavery. 3. While Caesar was inquiring of (ab) the scouts with respect to the number of the enemy, ambassadors of the Germans came into our camp and surrendered themselves and (que) all their (possessions) to Caesar (dative). 4. After Caesar had driven the enemy out of these boundaries and had received a suitable number of hostages, he led his soldiers back into camp.

## LESSON LI.

### SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF DĒLEŌ, CONTINUED.

**269. Principal parts of dēleō in the passive: dēleor, dēlēri, dēlētus sum.**

*For the tense names of these forms, see (249).*

**Perfect system of dēleō in the passive.—Stem dēlēt.**

#### Perfect indicative.

*have been—was—destroyed.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
1.	dēlētus,	-a,	-um	sum	dēlētī.	-ae, -a	sumus
2.	"	"	"	es	"	"	estis
3.	"	"	"	est	"	"	sunt

<sup>1</sup> were.

<sup>2</sup> were able; for mood in both, see (§13), 'indirect question.'

**Pluperfect indicative.***had been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
1.	dēlētus, -a, -um	eram		dēlētī, -ae, -a	erāmus		
2.	" " "	erās		" " "	erātis		
3.	" " "	erat		" " "	erant		

**Future-perfect indicative.***shall have been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
1.	dēlētus, -a, -um	erō		dēlētī, -ae, -a	erimus		
2.	" " "	eris		" " "	eritis		
3.	" " "	erit		" " "	erunt		

**Perfect subjunctive.***may have been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
1.	dēlētus, -a, -um	sim		dēlētī, -ae, -a	sīmus		
2.	" " "	sīs		" " "	sītis		
3.	" " "	sit		" " "	sint		

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***might have been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
1.	dēlētus, -a, -um	essem		dēlētī, -ae, -a	essēmus		
2.	" " "	essēs		" " "	essētis		
3.	" " "	esset		" " "	essent		

**Perfect infinitive.***dēlētum, -am, -um esse, to have been destroyed***Future infinitive.***dēlētum irī, to be about to be destroyed***Perfect participle.***dēlētus, -a, -um, having been destroyed*

**270. Synopsis, present system, passive.**—*Present stem* **dēlē.**

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	dēleor
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	dēlēbar
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	dēlēbor
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	dēlear
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlērer
6. <i>Imperative</i>	dēlēre
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	dēlēri
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	dēlendus

**Perfect system, passive.**—*Stem* **dēlēt**, *seen in the perfect participle, dēlētus.*

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	dēlētus sum
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	dēlētus eram
3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i>	dēlētus erō
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	dēlētus sim
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlētus essem
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	dēlētum esse
7. <i>Future infinitive</i>	dēlētum iri
8. <i>Perfect participle</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um

**271.**

#### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 56–64 (450).

**272.**

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cīvitātēs multae, quod cōpiae superātae erant atque sua oppida ā nostrīs occupāta et dēlēta erant, in fidem Caesaris sē suaque omnia permīsērunt. 2. Caesar, ubi eae cōpiae quās Germānī trāns Rhēnum trādūxerant in summō monte ā Caesare vīsaе sunt, mīlitibus legiōnis prīmae ut in eās impetum facerent imperāvit. 3. Nisi legiōnēs novae cōnscribentur<sup>1</sup> ac castra nostra ex eō locō movēbuntur,<sup>2</sup> imperātōrēs Rōmānī neque in Galliā agrōs lātōs possidēre neque nōmen populī Rōmānī amplificāre poterunt. 4. Caesar suīs peditibus nē inīquō locō proelium

<sup>1</sup> cōnscribentur or cōnscriptae erunt; see (223, a, b).

<sup>2</sup> What other form may be used?

committant mandat. 5. Galba in servitūtem Belgās quōrum oppida frūmentō commeātibusque complentur rediget.

II.—1. While Caesar was enrolling a new legion in that state which had been overcome, the Germans were preparing to make an attack upon him with a large army. 2. After the Aedui had entrusted themselves and (que) all their (possessions) to (in + acc.) the power and protection of the Roman people, Caesar ordered them to settle in farthest Gaul. 3. By collecting<sup>1</sup> a large army and fortifying<sup>1</sup> their towns with new ramparts the enemy were able to cut off (prohibeō) our men from<sup>2</sup> their supplies and withstand the attacks of the Roman legions. 4. Caesar directs his commanders to separate their forces and drive the enemy out of the boundaries of Gaul. 5. When (ubi) the first baggage of our army was seen by those who were concealed in the forests, the generals of the enemy ordered all their forces to rush forth and seize our baggage.

## LESSON LII.

### THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ.

#### 273. The present system of pōnō in the passive.

Decline vis, milia, and insigne (458, 459).

#### Present indicative. Imperfect indicative. Future indicative.

<i>am being placed.</i>	<i>was being placed.</i>	<i>shall be placed.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. pōnor	pōnēbar	pōnar
2. pōneris (-re)	pōnēbāris (-re)	pōnēris (-re)
3. pōnitur	pōnēbātur	pōnētur
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. pōnimur	pōnēbāmur	pōnēmur
2. pōnimini	pōnēbāmini	pōnēmini
3. pōnuntur	pōnēbantur	pōnentur

<sup>1</sup> 'Gerundive construction'; see (253).

<sup>2</sup> Abl. without prep. to denote separation; see (221).

Conjugate **mittō**, **cōgō**, and **expellō** in the above tenses. The *present stem* is **pōne**; for change in *stem-vowel*, see (180).

#### 274. Table of endings.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		FUTURE INDICATIVE.	
-or	-imur	-ar	-ēmur
-eris (-re)	-iminī	-ēris (-re)	-ēminī
-itur	-untur	-ētur	-entur

A verb ending in **ētur**, **entur**, etc., is *present subjunctive* in the *first* conjugation, *present indicative* in the *second* conjugation, *future indicative* in the *third* conjugation.

#### 275.

#### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 65-70 (450).

<b>iter facere</b> ,	<i>to march</i>
<b>sēcum</b> = ( <b>cum sē</b> ),	<i>with himself or themselves</i>
<b>poscō</b> (see vocab. for princ. parts),	<i>to demand</i>
<b>repellō</b> “ “ “ “ “	<i>to drive back</i>
<b>aut</b> , <i>conj.</i>	<i>or</i>

**276. Intermediate clauses—mood.**—**Quī clause**: a simple *relative clause*, introducing only a descriptive fact, has its verb in the *indicative*. **Quod clause**: *causal* clauses introduced by **quod**, **quia**, and **quoniam** have the verb in the *indicative*, when the reason given is vouched for by the writer or speaker; *subjunctive*, when the reason is given on the authority of another. These clauses take the verb in the *subjunctive*, in *Indirect Discourse*<sup>1</sup>—that is, when they express the thought of some other person than the speaker or writer—or *by attraction*, when they form a necessary part of a *subjunctive clause* or an *infinitive* upon which they depend.

Example of a *relative clause* the verb of which is in the *subjunctive by attraction* :

<sup>1</sup> See (301), (302), (305), (306).

**Nostri in Galliam contendunt** *Our men hasten into Gaul to*  
*ut oppidum quod commeā-* *attack a town which is being*  
*tibus armisque compleātur* *filled with arms and sup-*  
*oppugnent,* *plies*

Here the *verb* in the *relative clause*, *quod . . . compleātur*, which is within an *ut clause* forming an essential part of it, is *drawn into the subjunctive*.

## 277.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Si obsidēs Caesarī dabuntur (datī erunt) ā Gallis, omnēs Germānī ex finibus Galliae expellentur. 2. Germānī, cum in prōvinciam nostram et Ītaliā iter facerent, ea impedimenta quae sēcum nōn portāre poterant cis Rhēnum flūmen reliquērunt. 3. Caesar Sēquanīs finitimisque imperābit nē Rēmōs ā quibus auxilium multum accēperit<sup>1</sup> exagitent. 4. Belgae, ā quibus proelium redintegrātum est cum nostrī sua castra mūnīrent, facile celeriterque ab equitātū repulsī sunt. 5. Spē imperiī dēlendī populī Rōmānī, māgnus exercitus ab eīs cīvitatibus quae adventū legiōnum Rōmānārum perterritae sunt cōgitur.

II.—1. Caesar will make peace with those from whom he has received corn and supplies. 2. Because of the courage<sup>2</sup> of our infantry the enemy were alarmed and fled into the nearest fortifications. 3. The Aedui whose forces joined themselves with the rest of the enemy will be quickly defeated (prōturbō) and reduced to<sup>3</sup> subjection by Caesar's brave generals. 4. Scouts will be sent forward by Caesar to find out those (things) which are being carried<sup>4</sup> on in the enemies' camp.

<sup>1</sup> Subjunctive by attraction (276); perfect by 'rule of sequence' (135).

<sup>2</sup> Because of the courage: *virtūte*, *abl. of cause*.

<sup>3</sup> in + *acc.*

<sup>4</sup> Why subjunctive? What tense?



## LESSON LIII.

## THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ, CONTINUED.

278. The present system of *pōnō* completed in the passive.—*Stem pōne.*

## Present subjunctive.

*may be placed.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. pōnar	pōnāmur
2. pōnāris (-re)	pōnāmini
3. pōnātur	pōnantur

## Imperfect subjunctive.

*might be placed.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
pōnerer	pōnerēmur
pōnerēris (-re)	pōnerēmini
pōnerētur	pōnerentur

## Imperative.

*be thou placed, etc.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2. { pōnere pōnitor	pōnimini
3. pōnitor	pōnuntor

## Present infinitive.

pōnī, *to be placed*

## Gerundive.

pōnendus, *(worthy) to be placed*

279. To form the *present infinitive passive* of a verb of the *third conjugation*, change *ere* of the present infinitive active to *i*. *cōgō*: present infinitive *active* *cōgere*, present infinitive *passive* *cōgī*. *mittō*: present infinitive *active* *mittere*, present infinitive *passive* *mittī*. *gerō*: present infinitive *active* *gerere*, present infinitive *passive* *gerī*. When a verb ends in *ātur*, *antur*, etc., it is *present indicative* in the *first conjugation*, *present subjunctive* in the *other conjugations*.

## 280.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 71-75 (450).

<b>dexter, dextra, dextrum, adj.</b>	<i>right</i>
<b>ā dextrō cornū,</b>	<i>on the right wing</i>
<b>pæne, adv.</b>	<i>almost</i>
<b>aut . . . aut, conj.</b>	<i>either . . . or</i>
<b>tōtus, tōta, tōtum, adj.</b>	<i>entire</i> [to retreat]
<b>sē recipere,</b>	<i>to betake one's self or</i>

281. Synopsis of the present system, passive, of *pōnō*.—  
*Present stem pōne.*

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	<i>pōnor</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	<i>pōnēbar</i>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	<i>pōnar</i>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	<i>pōnar</i>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>pōnerer</i>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	<i>pōnere</i>
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	<i>pōnī</i>
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	<i>pōnendus</i>

Give synopsis, *present system, passive*, of *dūcō, mittō, dēdō*, and *incendō*.

## 282. Comparative table of endings.

*First and second conjugations.*

## FUTURE INDICATIVE.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. -bō	-bimus	-bor	-bimur
2. -bis	-bitis	-beris (-re)	-biminī
3. -bit	-bunt	-bitur	-buntur

*Third and fourth conjugations.*

## FUTURE INDICATIVE.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. -am	-ēmus	-ar	-ēmur
2. -ēs	-ētis	-ēris (-re)	-ēminī
3. -et	-ent	-ētur	-entur

## 283.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cum Caesar hōc bellum cōnfēcisset, inter eas civitatēs quās pepulerat (*pellō*) in hibernis omnis cohortēs primae atque secundae legiōnis posuit. 2. Cum imperatōrēs hostium aut vulnerātī aut concisī essent, omnēs milītēs perterritī sunt et ad Germānōs, finitimōs, sē recēpērunt. 3. Caesar cum omnibus cōpiis in Belgārum finis iter facit ut hostēs expellantur aut in servitūtem redigantur; adventū hōrum hostēs in oppidum māgnū quod mūrō altō mūniverant sē recipiunt. 4. Mūnitiōnēs multae ā Gallis in suis finibus exstruentur nē sua castella aedificaque adventū (*upon the arrival*) exercitūs nostrī incendantur.

II.—1. After all the cavalry had been summoned out of camp, Caesar's forces surrounded the enemies' winter-quarters on all sides in order that they might not be able to depart in the night. 2. Brave soldiers are placed (*pōnō*) in the foremost line,<sup>1</sup> because the enemy have a great multitude of men and will make a fierce<sup>2</sup> attack upon our men. 3. While Caesar was marching thither, scouts were sent forward by the Gauls to find out the plans of our commanders and to cut off our men from supplies.

## LESSON LIV.

## PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ, CONTINUED. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

284. Principal parts of *pōnō*.

Active,	pōnō	pōnere	posuī	positum
Passive,	pōnor	pōnī	positus	sum

<sup>1</sup> in primā acie.<sup>2</sup> Adverb.

**Synopsis of the perfect system, passive, of *pōnō*.—Stem *posit*, seen in the perfect passive participle, *positus*.**

1. Perfect indicative	<i>positus sum</i>
2. Pluperfect indicative	<i>positus eram</i>
3. Future-perfect indicative	<i>positus erō</i>
4. Perfect subjunctive	<i>positus sim</i>
5. Pluperfect subjunctive	<i>positus essem</i>
6. Perfect infinitive	<i>positum esse</i>
7. Future infinitive	<i>positum irī</i>
8. Perfect participle	<i>positus, -a, -um</i>

Conjugate the entire verb *pōnō* in both voices, as given in (478, 479).

285.

#### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 76–86 (450).

<i>inde</i> , adv.	<i>thence</i> or <i>then</i>
<i>nam</i> , conj.	<i>for</i>
<i>proximē</i> , adv.	<i>lately</i>
<i>expeditus</i> , -a, -um, adj.	<i>light-armed</i>
<i>cōnsuetūdō</i> , -dinis, fem.	<i>custom</i> or <i>habit</i>

286. Adjectives with the genitive in *iūs* and the dative in *ī*.—The following adjectives (o-stems) have the *genitive* singular in *iūs* and the *dative* in *ī*:

<i>ūnus</i> , one	<i>alius</i> , other or another
<i>ūllus</i> , any	<i>uter</i> , which (of two)
<i>nūllus</i> , no, none	<i>neuter</i> , neither
<i>sōlus</i> , alone, only	<i>alter</i> , the other (of two)
<i>tōtus</i> , whole, entire	

These words are declined regularly in the plural, like *altus*. The vocative is lacking in all save *sōlus* and *ūnus*. The *i* of the genitive singular ending *iūs* is usually long.

*Tōtus* is thus declined in the singular:

	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōta</i>	<i>tōtum</i>
Gen.	<i>tōtius</i>	<i>tōtius</i>	<i>tōtius</i>
Dat.	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>
Acc.	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>tōtam</i>	<i>tōtum</i>
Abl.	<i>tōtō</i>	<i>tōtā</i>	<i>tōtō</i>

**287. Ablative absolute.**—A noun or pronoun in the *ablative* may be used with a *participle* in agreement to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action; such a phrase is called an *ablative absolute* and serves in the place of a *subordinate clause*.

*Examples of the ablative absolute :*

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. <b>Pāce factā,</b>               | <i>Peace having been made</i>                     |
| 2. <b>Obsidibus datīs,</b>          | <i>Hostages having been given</i>                 |
| 3. <b>Obsidibus acceptīs Caesar</b> | <i>Hostages having been received,<sup>1</sup></i> |
| <b>suum exercitum ex hos-</b>       | <i>Caesar led his army out of</i>                 |
| <b>tium finibus ēdūxit,</b>         | <i>the enemies' territories</i>                   |

**288.** The noun and participle in the *ablative absolute* may each have one or more modifiers; as,

- |                                      |                                    |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <b>Tōtō exercitū in aciē instrū-</b> | <i>The whole army having been</i>  |
| <b>tō, Caesar sīgnum proeliī</b>     | <i>drawn up in line of battle,</i> |
| <b>dedit,</b>                        | <i>Caesar gave the signal for</i>  |
|                                      | <i>battle</i>                      |

**Tōtō**, the adjective, limits **exercitū** in the *ablative singular masculine*; the adverbial phrase **in aciē** modifies **instrūctō**; the *ablative absolute* **tōtō . . . instrūctō** represents a subordinate clause *defining the time of the action of the verb dedit*.

In the above *ablative absolute* **exercitū**, the *basis* or *principal* word, takes the participle **instrūctō** into agreement with it; in rendering the *ablative absolute* by a *subordinate clause* the *basis* (noun or pronoun in the *ablative*) becomes the *subject*, and the *participle* a *finite verb*; thus, **exercitū instrūctō**, *when or after the army had been or was drawn up*.

## 289.

## EXERCISE.

1. Caesar necessāriis rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs milites dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. 2. Nostri propter propīnquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil

<sup>1</sup> That is, *after, when, because* hostages had been received.

iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per sē<sup>1</sup> quae<sup>2</sup> vidēbantur administrābant. 3. Temporis brevitas et successus hostium magnam hārum rērum partem impediēbat; sed nostrī, quod superiōribus (*former*) proeliis exercitātī erant, nōn minus (*less*) commodē sibi<sup>3</sup> praescribere quam (*than*) ab aliis docērī poterant.

## LESSON LV.

### THIRD CONJUGATION PASSIVE, THE 'IŌ' VERB— ACCIPIŌ.

**290. Principal parts of *accipiō* in the passive: *accipior, accipī, acceptus sum*.**

**Passive voice of *accipiō*, *I receive*.**—The *present stem accipe* is found by dropping *re* from the *present infinitive active, accipere*. The *perfect stem accēp* is not used in the passive. In the passive of *accipiō* eight forms are based upon the present stem *accipe*, eight upon the supine stem *accept* (*seen in the perfect passive participle, 'acceptus'*). For the occurrence and omission of *i* in the 'iō' verbs, see (213) and foot-note.

The second person singular of the present indicative is pronounced, *not ac-ci-pi-e-ris*, but *ac-ci'-pe-ris*.

**291. Present system, passive, of *accipiō*.—*Stem accipe*.**

Present indicative.		Imperfect indicative.
<i>am being received.</i>		<i>was being received.</i>
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.
1. accipior	accipimur	accipiēbar
2. acciperis (-re)	accipimini	accipiēbāris (-re)
3. accipitur	accipiuntur	accipiēbātur, etc.

<sup>1</sup> *Of themselves.*

<sup>2</sup> Nominative plural neuter, subject of *vidēbantur*, *seemed best*; the antecedent of *quae* = *ea*, object of *administrābant*.

<sup>3</sup> Dative with the compound verb *praescribere*; see (337).

**Future indicative.***shall be received.*

## SINGULAR.

1. accipiar
2. accipiēris (-re)
3. accipiētur, etc.

**Present subjunctive.***may be received.*

## SINGULAR.

- accipiar
- accipiāris (-re)
- accipiātur, etc.

**Imperfect subjunctive.***might be received.*

## SINGULAR.

1. acciperer
2. acciperēris (-re)
3. acciperētur, etc.

**Imperative.***be thou received, etc.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |      |           |             |
|------|-----------|-------------|
| 2. { | accipere  | accipimī    |
| 2. { | accipitor |             |
| 3.   | accipitor | accipiuntor |

**Present infinitive.***accipī, to be received***Gerundive.***accipiendus, -a, -um, (worthy) to be received*

**292. Synopsis of the perfect system.**—*Stem accept, seen in the perfect passive participle, acceptus.*

- |                  |                      |
|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. acceptus sum  | 5. acceptus essem    |
| 2. acceptus eram | 6. acceptum esse     |
| 3. acceptus erō  | 7. acceptum irī      |
| 4. acceptus sim  | 8. acceptus, -a, -um |

**293.****VOCABULARY.****Verbs 87-96 (450).***ubi, adv.**aciēs, aciēī, fem.**sub, prep. with abl.**sub monte,**equester, equestris, equestre, adj.**proeliō equestrī,**summus mōns,**where**line of battle, army**under**at the foot of the mountain**of cavalry**in a cavalry skirmish**the top of the mountain*

## 294.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hōc bellō factō hostēs castra prēmōvērunt ac sub monte in Rēmōrum finibus cis Rhēnum cōnsēdērunt. 2. Omnibus aedificiis vicisque in Galliā incēnsīs Caesar trāns flūmen contendit ut hostium cōpiās frūmentō comēātibusque prohiberet. 3. Fortēs peditēs legiōnis primae in Galliam ā Caesare mīssī sunt ut exercitum cōgerent et castra in eīs civitātibus quae Caesarī sē suaque omnia dēdidissent pōnerent. 4. Cohortibus reliquīs ē castrīs ēductīs Galba suis praefectīs, ut aciem triplicem instruerent atque ā dextrō cornū in hostēs impetum facerent, imperāvit. 5. Triplici aciē factā imperātōrēs nostrī ē castrīs suos peditēs ēdūxērunt atque ad eum locum, ubi hostium explōrātōrēs viderant, mātūrāvērunt. 6. Quod hostēs in castrīs quae sub monte salūtis causā posuerant sē continēbant neque peditēs ad proelium ēdūcēbant, Caesar Galbae ut in aciē equitātum omnem instrueret mandāvit et ipse suō mōre ad portās hostium castrōrum peditēs fortīs dūxit.

II.—1. After their fields had been laid waste,<sup>1</sup> the enemy sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask for peace. 2. When the camp had been fortified<sup>2</sup> on all sides, Caesar commanded the Remi to give his (men) corn and supplies. 3. If the enemy surrender<sup>3</sup> hostages, Caesar will command his generals not to destroy the town into which they carried<sup>4</sup> all their arms.

---

<sup>1</sup> Two ways : by *ablative absolute* and by a *cum clause*.

<sup>2</sup> By *ablative absolute* and the *ubi clause*.

<sup>3</sup> See (223).

<sup>4</sup> Mood ? (276), '*intermediate clauses*.' Tense ? (135).



## LESSON LVI.

FOURTH CONJUGATION PASSIVE. COMPARISON OF  
ADJECTIVES.295. Principal parts of *mūniō*, *I fortify*.

<i>Active,</i>	<b>mūniō</b>	<b>mūnīre</b>	<b>mūnīvī</b>	<b>mūnītum</b>
<i>Passive,</i>	<b>mūnior</b>	<b>mūnīrī</b>	<b>mūnītus</b>	<b>sum</b>

In the *passive* two stems are used: **mūnī** and **mūnit**, upon each of which eight forms are based.

Present system of *mūniō* in the passive.—*Present stem mūnī.* For the tense forms complete, see (488).

**Present indicative.**  
*am being fortified.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <b>mūnior</b>	<b>mūnīmur</b>
2. <b>mūnīris (-re)</b>	<b>mūnīminī</b>
3. <b>mūnītur</b>	<b>mūniuntur</b>

**Present subjunctive.**  
*may be fortified.*

SINGULAR.
<b>mūniar</b>
<b>mūniāris (-re)</b>
<b>mūniātur, etc.</b>

**Imperfect indicative.**  
*was being fortified.*

SINGULAR.
1. <b>mūniēbar</b>
2. <b>mūniēbāris (-re), etc.</b>

**Imperfect subjunctive.**  
*might be fortified.*

SINGULAR.
<b>mūnīrer</b>
<b>mūnīrēris (-re), etc.</b>

**Future indicative.**  
*shall be fortified.*

SINGULAR.
1. <b>mūniar</b>
2. <b>mūniēris (-re)</b>
3. <b>mūniētur, etc.</b>

**Imperative.**  
**mūnīre**, *be thou fortified*  
**mūnītor**, *thou shalt be fortified*,  
etc.

**Present infinitive.**  
**mūnīrī**, *to be fortified*

**Gerundive.**

mūniendus, -a, -um, (*worthy*) to be fortified

**296. Synopsis of the perfect system, passive.—Stem mūnit.**

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	mūnītus sum
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	mūnītus eram
3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i>	mūnītus erō
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	mūnītus sim
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	mūnītus essem
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	mūnītum esse
7. <i>Future infinitive</i>	mūnītum iri
8. <i>Perfect participle</i>	mūnītus, -a, -um

Conjugate *each tense* of cōnsentiō in both voices; repeat mūniō entire as given in (482, 483).

**297.****VOCABULARY.****Verbs 97–106 (450).**

tumultus, -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	uproar
insidiae, -ārum, <i>fem.</i>	ambush
lūx, lūcis, <i>fem.</i>	light
primā lūce,	at early dawn
lēgātus, -ī, <i>mas.</i>	lieutenant
primō, <i>adv.</i>	at first

**298. Comparison of adjectives.**—There are three degrees of comparison: the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative*. The *comparative* is regularly formed by adding *ior* (*masculine* and *feminine*) and *ius* (*neuter*) to the *stem* of the positive, which loses its final vowel; the *superlative* is formed by adding *issimus*, -a, -um, to the *stem* of the positive. Adjectives of the *first* and *second* declensions, like nouns, form the *stem* in *o* or *a*. For the stem of *altus*, *altum* (*alto*), see (18); for the stem of *alta* (*alta*), see (2). Third-declension adjectives, like nouns, are *vowel* or *consonant stems*; *fortis* (*stem forti*), see *collis* (131). *potēns* (*stem potent*), see *miles* (113) and *pūgnāns* (467).

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>altus, -a, -um</b>	<b>altior, -ior, -ius</b>	<b>altissimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>fortis, -is, -e</b>	<b>fortior, -ior, -ius</b>	<b>fortissimus, -a, -um</b>
<b>potēns, -ēns, -ēns</b>	<b>potentior, -ior, -ius</b>	<b>potentissimus, -a, -um</b>

The meanings of the above are:

<b>altus, tall</b>	<b>altior, taller</b>	<b>altissimus, tallest or very tall</b>
<b>fortis, brave</b>	<b>fortior, braver</b>	<b>fortissimus, bravest or very brave</b>
<b>potēns, powerful</b>	<b>potentior, more powerful</b>	<b>potentissimus, most or very powerful</b>

## 299.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Eā rē cōstitutā hostēs secundā vigiliā tumultū māgnō ē castris contendērunt et in extrēmās Galliae partēs, ubi exercitūs nostrī adventum nōn timuērunt, fūgērunt. 2. Hāc rē ab explōrātōribus cōgnitā Caesar primā lūce equitātum omnem ut in novissimum agmen hostium impetum faceret præmisit. 3. Quod vīcī omnēs ā nostris incēnsī erant, Sēquanī in Aeduōrum finis sē recēpērunt, ubi in amīcitiam acceptī sunt agrōsque multōs possēdērunt. 4. Castra sub monte ab hostibus posita sunt ac prō mūnitiōnibus aciēs instrūcta est, nē nostrī in eōs impetum facere possent, cum finitimōrum lēgātōs acciperent. 5. Caesar, ubi hostium fugam audīvit (*heard of*), in castra peditēs equitātumque redūxit et, quod insidiās timēbat, iussit suōs nōn eō diē hostēs subsequī.

II.—1. The enemy at first fought (*contendō*) in a cavalry skirmish; then (*inde*), after our cavalry had been driven back, they suddenly led out their infantry which had been concealed in the forests next to the river. 2. After Caesar had determined (*cōstituō*) to spare the rest of the enemy, towns were given to them in Gaul and their neighbours were commanded not to make an attack upon them. 3. A triple line of battle having been drawn up, Caesar directs his lieutenants to begin battle on the

right wing and to fight bravely for the sake of their commander.

## LESSON LVII.

### ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA, OR INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**300. Irregular verb *eō*, *I go*. Principal parts: *eō*, *īre*, *īvī* (*īī*) *itum*.**

*Learn the indicative mood of *eō* (six tenses), (486).*

**301. Direct and indirect discourse.**—In *direct discourse* (*Ōrātiō rēcta*) the exact words of the speaker or writer are given. In *indirect discourse* (*Ōrātiō oblīqua*) certain forms of words may be altered to suit the point of view of the new speaker, viz.: moods, tenses, persons. The more regular of such changes will be stated. *Indirect discourse* depends upon some verb of *seeing, knowing, thinking, perceiving*, etc., the verb of the *main (declarative) clause* being put in the *infinitive* with its *subject* in the *accusative*, the verb of the *subordinate clause* becoming *subjunctive*.

**302. Statement in indirect discourse.**—In the following sentences, this much of the principle of ‘indirect discourse’ is employed, viz.: *verbs of saying, thinking*, etc., are followed by the *accusative + infinitive*, to describe a *fact*. [See (392), ‘mood in indirect discourse.’]

The *infinitive* in *indirect discourse*, though representing a *finite verb* of *direct discourse*, does not admit of *number* and *person*.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <p>1. Caesar dīcit lēgātum discēdere,</p>      | <p><i>Caesar says that the ambassador is departing [the ambassador to depart]</i></p> |
| <p>2. Labiēnus existimat hostīs discēdere,</p> | <p><i>Labienus thinks that the enemy are departing [the enemy to depart]</i></p>      |

The infinitive **discēdere**, with no form to distinguish *number*, has a *singular subject* in (1) and a *plural subject* in (2): before the accusative and infinitive supply (in translation) '*that*,' for which the Latin *has no word* in the sense of the English idiom, and change the *accusative subject* to the *nominative*, making the *infinitive a finite (declarative) verb*.

3. Caesar **vīdit lēgātōs pācem petere**, Caesar saw that the ambassadors were seeking peace

*Were seeking* = **petere**, present infinitive. The *time* of the action of the verb **petere** is *present* relative to the *time* of the action of the verb **vīdit**; that is, the action (of seeking) *was going on* at the *time* when Caesar *saw* the ambassadors, hence the *present infinitive petere* represents *time relatively present* with respect to the *time* of the verb of seeing (**vīdit**) upon which it depends.

## 303.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>opus, operis, neut.</b>	<i>work</i>
<b>interim, adv.</b>	<i>meanwhile</i>
<b>item, adv.</b>	<i>likewise</i>
<b>cursus, -ūs, mas.</b>	<i>speed</i>
<b>inter sē,</b>	<i>to one another</i>
<b>inter sē dare,</b>	<i>to exchange</i>
<b>opportūnus, -a, -um, adj.</b>	<i>convenient</i>
<b>Labiēnus, -ī, mas.</b>	<i>Labiēnus</i>
<b>citerior, -ior, -ius, adj.</b>	<i>hither, nearer</i>
<b>superior, -ior, -ius, adj.</b>	<i>former, higher</i>
<b>ex superiōre locō,</b>	<i>from a higher place</i>

## 304.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Primā legiōne quam proximē cōscripserat in castris relictā Caesar prō castris in aciē quīnque legiōnēs reliquās instrūxit. 2. Caesar Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare audit. 3. Caesar, ubi hostēs in legiōnem primam impetum facere vīdit, ex castris exercitum omnem ēdūxit. 4. Galba, cum Belgās in fidem potestātemque populī Rōmānī sē suaque

omnia permittere vīdisset, iussit Gallōs (*accusative subject*) frūmentō commeātibusque Belgās iuvāre et in Ītaliā exercitum tōtum redūxit. 5. Caesar sub monte altissimō proeliō locum dēlēgit, nē hostēs, cum aciem suam instrūxisset, ab latere in legiōnēs Rōmānās impetum facere possent.

II.—1. The general sees that the enemy are collecting all their bands into one place and are fortifying a camp. 2. When Caesar saw that the Germans were joining (*present*) themselves with these and were cutting off Galba's soldiers from supplies, he himself at once led his army thither. 3. While Caesar was collecting corn and supplies for the entire army, he saw that the Germans were leading (*present*) cavalry across the river. 4. When peace had been made, Caesar placed the legions in winter-quarters among the Belgians who were the bravest of all the Gauls.

## LESSON LVIII.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE, CONTINUED.

**805. Learn the remainder of the verb *eō* (486).**

**The perfect infinitive in indirect discourse.**—The *perfect infinitive* shows time *absolutely past*, that is, time *completed* in the past.

The *present infinitive* denotes time *contemporaneous*, the *perfect infinitive* time *antecedent*.

1. Caesar cōgnōscit lēgātum    Caesar finds out that the ambassador has gone (action finished before he finds it out)

2. **Caesar cōgnōvit hostīs dis-** *Caesar found out that the*  
**cessisse,** *enemy had departed (action*  
*completed before he found it*  
*out)*

**306. Subordinate clause in indirect discourse.**—After verbs of *saying, thinking, hearing*, etc., the verb of the principal clause is put in the infinitive, *that of the subordinate clause in the subjunctive*.

1. **Caesar intellegit Germānōs** *Caesar learns that the Germans*  
**exagitāre Belgās quī cis** *are harassing the Belgians*  
**Rhēnum incolant,** *who live on this side of the*  
*Rhine*
2. **Explōrātōrēs nūtiāvērunt** *Scouts announced that the*  
**Sēquanōs quōs nostrī** *Sequani whom our men had*  
**pepulissent cum omnibus** *defeated were departing with*  
**impedimentīs discēdere,** *all their baggage*

In (1) **incolant** is *present* subjunctive, denoting time *contemporaneous* relative to the *time (tense)* of **intellegit**; see 'rule of sequence' (135). In (2) **pepulissent** (from **pellō**), the *pluperfect*, denotes time *antecedent (completed)* with reference to the *time (tense)* of **nūtiāvērunt**.

## 307.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 107–116 (450).

<b>sinister, -tra, -trum, adj.</b>	<i>left</i>
<b>ab sinistrā parte,</b>	<i>on the left side</i>
<b>ipse, -a, -um, emphatic pron.</b>	<i>he, self</i>
<b>trānseō, -īre, -īvī -iī, -itum,</b>	<i>to cross</i>
<b>senātus, -ūs, mas.</b>	<i>senate</i>
<b>septimus, -a, -um, num. adj.</b>	<i>seventh</i>

**308. Adjectives ending in er.**—Adjectives in **er** form the *superlative* by adding **rimus** to the nominative singular masculine of the *positive*. The comparative is *regular*.

miser, -era, -erum, miserior, -ior, -ius miserrimus, -a, -um  
*wretched*  
 ācer, ācris, ācre, ācrior, -ior, -ius ācerrimus, -a, -um  
*sharp*

## 809.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hostēs, ubi nostrōs proeliō equestri ā dextrō cornū contendere vident, celeritāte māgnā in oppidum sē recipiunt atque oppidō undique mūnitō ad<sup>1</sup> impetum nostrōrum sustinendum parant. 2. His rēbus ab explōrātōribus cōgnitis aciēs triplex prō castrīs instrūcta est et omnēs cōpiae nostrae ēductae sunt; sed, quod hostēs flūmen trānsire et in suōs finīs revertī (*were returning*) vīdit, Caesar in eōs impetum nōn fēcit ac cōpiās in castra redūxit. 3. Legiōne novā in citeriōre Galliā cōnscriptā locō idōneō castrīs dēlēctō Caesar ipse cum secundā legiōne per agrōs Aedūōrum contendit et prō oppidō hostium cōpiās triplici aciē instrūxit.

II.—1. The chiefs of the Aedui will go into the territories of the Sequani to exchange hostages and cut off our men from supplies which<sup>2</sup> are being sent into our camp by the Remi. 2. After Caesar had seen (that) the enemy were leading a part of their forces across the bridge and were leaving a part on this side of the river, he determined to attack that part which had not yet crossed the river. 3. On account of the large number and the courage of the enemy the bravest soldiers are drawn up in the foremost (*primus*) line of battle by Caesar, in order that the enemy may not surround and take (*capiō*) our camp.

<sup>1</sup> Ad + gerundive, 'to withstand.'

<sup>2</sup> Intermediate clause, subjunctive by attraction; see (267).



## LESSON LIX.

## RELATIVE OF PURPOSE. INDIRECT QUESTION.

310. Learn the entire passive of *faciō*, *I do or make* (493).

Principal parts :

<i>Active,</i>	<b>faciō</b>	<b>facere</b>	<b>fēcī</b>	<b>factum</b>
<i>Passive,</i>	<b>fiō</b>	<b>fierī</b>	<b>factus sum</b>	

311. Relative clause of purpose.—When *quī* = *ut* is (so that he, etc.) or *ut eī* (so that they, etc.), the verb in the relative clause is put in the *subjunctive* to denote *affirmative purpose*. The antecedent of the relative is expressed or implied in the main clause.

1. *Mittunt lēgātum quī pācem petat,*<sup>1</sup> *They send an ambassador to ask for peace*
2. *Lēgātī vērērunt quī obsidēs dēderent,* *Ambassadors came to surrender hostages*

Apply 'rule of sequence' (135).

312.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 117–124 (450).

<b>cōspectus, -ūs, mas.</b>	<i>sight</i>
<b>littera, -ae, fem.</b>	<i>letter</i>
<b>tribūnus, -ī, mas.</b>	<i>tribune</i>
<b>Pedius, -ī, mas.</b>	<i>Pedius</i>
<b>dīversus, -a, -um, adj.</b>	<i>different, separate</i>
<b>commūnis, -is, -e, adj.</b>	<i>common</i>
<b>et . . . et, conj.</b>	<i>both . . . and</i>
<b>interior, -ior, -ius, adj.</b>	<i>interior</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Who may—so that he may—ask for peace.

**313. Indirect question.**—See declension of **quis** (465).  
A *direct question* takes the *indicative*; as,

**Quid (quae) hostēs gerunt?**      *What are the enemy doing?*

An *indirect question*, giving the interrogative (inquiry) in a dependent form, takes the *subjunctive*; as,

<b>Caesar reperit quid (quae)</b>	<i>Caesar finds out what the enemy</i>
<b>hostēs gerant</b> ( <i>sequence</i> ),	<i>are doing</i>
<b>Caesar repperit quid (quae)</b>	<i>Caesar found out what the</i>
<b>hostēs gererent</b> ( <i>sequence</i> ),	<i>enemy were doing</i>
<b>Caesar reperiet quid (quae)</b>	<i>Caesar will find out what the</i>
<b>hostēs gesserint</b> ( <i>sequence</i> ),	<i>enemy did (have done)</i>
<b>Caesar repperit quid (quae)</b>	<i>Caesar found out what the</i>
<b>hostēs gessissent</b> ( <i>sequence</i> ),	<i>enemy did (had done)</i>

**314. Adjectives in *ilis*.**—Six adjectives in *ilis* form the *superlative* by adding *limus* to the stem stripped of its final vowel; they are: **facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *hard*; **similis** and **dissimilis**, *like* and *unlike*; **gracilis**, *slender*; **humilis**, *low*. **Facilis** is thus compared:

**facilis, -is, -e      faciliior, -ior, -ius      facillimus, -a, -um**

### 315.

### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar his litteris nūtiisq̄ue commōtus est et in citeriōre Galliā legiōnēs duās novās cōscripsit atque Pedium lēgātum, quī eās dēdūceret in interiōrem Galliam. mīsit. 2. Cum Caesar eō vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Belgīs sunt ad eum lēgātōs primōs civitātis mīsērunt, quī sē suaque omnia in fidem populī Rōmānī trādere<sup>1</sup> dicerent. 3. Lēgātī in nostra castra vērērunt, quī sē cum Belgīs reliquīs nōn cōsēnsisse parātōsque esse obsidēs dare et Caesaris imperāta facere dicerent. 4. Caesar, cum per

<sup>1</sup> In the sense of future time, *would hand over*.

Rēmōrum finēs iter faceret, omnēs reliquōs Gallōs in armīs esse Germānōsque cum his coniūrāvisse audīvit.

II.—1. An attack will be made upon the Germans in the sight of Caesar and the entire army, unless they surrender<sup>1</sup> themselves and all their (possessions) to our commanders. 2. The baggage having been left in camp, Caesar at early dawn sent forward scouts to find out those (things) which were being done<sup>2</sup> in the enemies' camp. 3. When the scouts returned and announced that the enemy had moved their camp and were hastening out of Gaul, Caesar commanded the tribunes of the soldiers not to lead their (men) out of camp.

## LESSON LX.

### AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE.

**316. Use and agreement of the perfect passive participle (p. p. p.).**—A common Latin construction is the *perfect passive participle*, which is used in preference to *relative clauses* or *conjunctions* + *indicative* or *subjunctive*. The perfect passive participle often modifies the *subject* or *object*, agreeing with the same in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Dux commōtus discessit,                           | <i>Having been alarmed (= because he was alarmed), the general withdrew</i>                                   |
| 2. Nostrī hostēs circumventōs undique interfēcērunt, | <i>Our men killed the enemy surrounded (= who were surrounded or after they were surrounded) on all sides</i> |

---

<sup>1</sup> Write in two different tenses, explaining the time-relation; see (223).

<sup>2</sup> Intermediate clause; see (276).

3. **Caesar in aciē suās cōpiās** *Caesar drew up in line of battle*  
**ē castris ēductās instrū-** *his forces (who were, after*  
**xit,** *they were) led out of camp*
4. **Hostēs (nom.) omnibus hīs** *Influenced (= because they were*  
**rēbus adductī (nom.) ad** *influenced) by all these things,*  
**Caesarem lēgātōs mīsē-** *the enemy sent ambassadors*  
**runt,** *to Caesar*

## 817.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 125-135 (450).

<b>gēns, gentis, fem.</b>	<i>tribe</i>
<b>aestuārium, -ī, neut.</b>	<i>marsh</i>
<b>puerī, -ōrum, mas.</b>	<i>children</i>
<b>nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj.</b>	<i>some</i>
<b>frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj.</b>	<i>of corn</i>
<b>rēs frūmentāria,</b>	<i>supply of corn</i>

## 818. Tenses of the infinitive mood in indirect discourse.

For further treatment of such infinitives, see (301, 302, 305).

1. **Explōrātōrēs nūntiant hos-** *Scouts announce that the enemy*  
**tēs ad nostra castra iter** *are marching towards our*  
**facere,** *camp*
2. **Caesar intellēxit Germānōs** *Caesar learned that the Germans*  
**Rhēnum trānsiisse,** *had crossed the Rhine*
3. **Caesar crēdit legiōnēs suās** *Caesar believes that his legions*  
**Gallōs victūrās esse,** *will conquer the Gauls*
4. **Galba audīvit hostīs prīmā** *Galba heard that the enemy*  
**lūce castra mōtūrōs esse,** *would break camp at early*  
*dawn*

In (1) *iter facere* denotes action *going on at the time* of the action in *nūntiant*; in (2) *trānsiisse* denotes action *completed before the time* of the action in *intellēxit*; in (3) and (4) *victūrās* and *mōtūrōs esse* denote action *which is to occur in the future* at a time *subsequent* to the time of the action in *crēdit* and *audīvit*.

## 319.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānī trāns Rhēnum trāductī in interiōre Galliā cōnsēdērunt et agrōs lātissimōs possidēbant. 2. Hostēs Caesarī sē suaque omnia dēdere iūssī,<sup>1</sup> quod sē nostrum exercitum sustinēre nōn posse vidērunt, ex oppidō statim tēla armaque omnia trādidērunt. 3. Prīncipēs ad Caesarem ab civitāte mīssī<sup>2</sup> suam civitātem cum reliquīs Gallīs nōn cōnsēnsisse atque parātam<sup>3</sup> esse et (*both*) obsidēs dare et in oppidīs eum accipere dīxērunt. 4. Hōc proeliō factō Caesar intellegit multās civitātēs liberōs principum obsidēs mīssūrās esse et exercitui nostrō frūmentum comēātūque datūrās esse. 5. Hīs rēbus commōtus Caesar cum parte septimae legiōnis eīsque cōpiis quae proximē cōnscrip̄tae erant in summum montem Labiēnum lēgātum, quī hostium adventum exspectāret, praemisit. 6. Caesar, cum vidisset hostēs aciem instruere nostrāsque mūnitiōnēs sine morā oppūgnātūrōs esse, praefectōs legiōnēs distīnere, ut in hostēs undique impetum ūnō tempore facerent, iussit.

II.—1. Influenced by the power of Caesar, those states into whose boundaries the Roman army was preparing to march determined to seek peace and do the commands of the senate. 2. Alarmed by Caesar's arrival, the Belgians send ambassadors to say<sup>4</sup> (that) they have collected corn and (*que*) supplies for our army and will surrender hostages. 3. When Caesar found out (that) the enemy had collected large forces and were marching into Italy, he immediately led all his legions out of camp.

---

<sup>1</sup> p. p. modifies *hostēs*, the *subject* of the sentence.

<sup>2</sup> Modifies the *subject* *prīncipēs*.

<sup>3</sup> *Predicate adjective* limiting *civitātem*.

<sup>4</sup> *Not infinitive* in Latin; note the *sequence*.

## LESSON LXI.

## PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES.

**320. Affirmative and negative purpose.**—As previously stated, clauses denoting *affirmative purpose* take **ut** + *subjunctive*; clauses of *negative purpose*, **nē** + *subjunctive*.

1. Caesar legiōnēs cōnscrībit, Caesar enrolls the legions to  
ut Galliam vincat (*affirma- conquer Gaul*  
tive purpose),
2. Gallī magnās cōpiās coēgē- The Gauls gathered large forces,  
runt, nē ā Caesare pelle- that they might not (lest they  
rentur (*negative purpose*), should) be defeated by Caesar

The *relative clause* may denote *affirmative purpose* (311).

**321. Affirmative and negative result.**—Affirmative result is expressed by **ut** + *subjunctive*, negative result by **ut . . . nōn** + *subjunctive*.

1. Nostri tam fortiter pū- Our men fight so bravely that  
gnant, ut Gallōs expellant (as a result) they drive out  
(*affirmative result*), the Gauls
2. Nostri in hostis impetum Our men made so fierce an at-  
tam ācrit̄er fēcērunt, ut tack upon the enemy, that  
sustinēre diūtius nōn pos- they could not withstand any  
sent (*negative result*—note longer  
the sequence),

## 322.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 136–146 (450).

spīritus, -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	breath, (plur.) arrogance
etiam, <i>adv.</i>	even
māximē, <i>adv.</i>	especially or very much
memoria, -ae, <i>fem.</i>	memory
lātitudō, -dinis, <i>fem.</i>	width

**323. Distinguish ablative absolute from participle agreeing with the subject or object.**—1. The enemy, *defeated* in many battles, surrendered hostages. In this sentence taken literally, *defeated*, the *past participle passive*, modifying the *subject, enemy*, becomes *pulsī* (*p. p. p.*), *nominative plural*, agreeing with the subject *hostēs*, and the sentence is written: **Hostēs multis proeliis pulsī obsidēs dēdidērunt.** By converting the participle into a *relative clause*, ‘*who had been defeated*,’ it is seen that *defeated* limits and describes the *subject, enemy*. Change the sentence to this form: 2. The enemy having been defeated, Caesar demanded hostages. The phrase ‘*the enemy having been defeated*’ contains an idea equivalent to that expressed by a subordinate clause, such as, ‘*after or because the enemy had been defeated*,’ but the *noun* in such a phrase cannot be the same as the *subject or object* of the main sentence, is placed in the *ablative case* with the participle *in agreement with it*, and such a phrase, called the *Ablative Absolute*, modifies the verb.

## 324.

## EXERCISE.

1. Aedui sibi tantōs spīritūs sūmēbant ut Caesar contrā eōs suum exercitum dūcere cōstitueret. 2. Imperātōrēs nostrī tam multās cīvitatēs pepulērunt ut in Galliā māximē imperium Rōmānum amplificārent. 3. Germānī ā potentiōribus Rōmānīs multis proeliis repulsī sē ex Galliā cōpiās omnīs mīsisse nūntiāvērunt. 4. Omnibus suis agrīs vāstātīs oppidisque incēnsīs ut commeātibus exercitum nostrum prohibērent, hostēs in extrēmās Galliae partēs sē recēpērunt. 5. Turrēs tantae altitūdinis prō mūrīs oppidī ā nostrīs positae sunt ut oppidānī māximē commōtī sē nostrīs ducibus obsidēs datūrōs esse suaque omnia Caesarī trāditūrōs esse nūntiārent. 6. Hōc bellō in Galliā cōfectō omnēs nostrae cōpiae trāns Rhēnum

trāductae sunt atque impetus in rēgem potentissimum ibi ab omnibus legiōnibus factus est, quod etiam nostrā memoriā Rēmōs, populī Rōmānī amīcōs, māximē vexāverat et oppida multa incenderat.

## LESSON LXII.

### DEPONENT VERB, FIRST CONJUGATION.

**325. The deponent verb *populor*, I plunder.**—The deponent verb has *passive forms with active meanings*.

*Principal parts:* **populor populārī populātus sum**

Each tense is conjugated *exactly like* the corresponding tenses of **portō** in the *passive*. For conjugation of forms, see (494).

**326. Synopsis of the present system.**—*Present stem, populā.*

- |                |                                 |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. populor,    | <i>I plunder</i>                |
| 2. populābar,  | <i>was plundering</i>           |
| 3. populābor,  | <i>shall plunder</i>            |
| 4. populer,    | <i>may plunder</i>              |
| 5. populārer,  | <i>might plunder</i>            |
| 6. populāre,   | <i>plunder thou</i>             |
| 7. populārī.   | <i>to plunder</i>               |
| 8. populandus, | <i>(worthy) to be plundered</i> |

To these are added the *active forms*:

- |                |                      |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 9. populāns,   | <i>plundering</i>    |
| 10. populandī, | <i>of plundering</i> |

**327. Synopsis of the perfect system.**—*Supine stem, populāt.*

- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. populātus sum,      | <i>I plundered</i>          |
| 2. populātus eram,     | <i>had plundered</i>        |
| 3. populātus erō,      | <i>shall have plundered</i> |
| 4. populātus sim,      | <i>may have plundered</i>   |
| 5. populātus essem,    | <i>might have plundered</i> |
| 6. populātum esse,     | <i>to have plundered</i>    |
| 7. populātus, -a, -um, | <i>having plundered</i>     |



To these are added *four active forms*:

8. populātum, *to plunder* (first supine)
9. populātū, *in the plundering* (second supine)
10. populātūrus, -a, -um, *being about to plunder*
11. populātūrum, -am, -um esse, *to be about to plunder*

328. The *future infinitive* populātum iri, corresponding to amātum iri, is not found in the deponent verb; in its place a form like the *future infinitive active* is used (see 11).

The deponent verb has *six active forms*, two based upon the *present stem* (see 9, 10, *present system*); *four* upon the *supine* or *perfect-participle stem* (see 8, 9, 10, 11, *perfect system*).

## 329.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 147-157 (450).

cum primum, <i>adv.</i>	<i>as soon as</i>
pābulum, pābuli, <i>neut.</i>	<i>fodder</i>
negōtium, negōtīi, <i>neut.</i>	<i>business</i>
negōtium dare,	<i>to employ</i>
certus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>certain</i>
certiorem facere,	<i>to inform</i>

## 330. Use of negōtium dare, to employ.

Negōtium dare, *to employ*, takes the *indirect object* in the *dative*, denoting the person or persons employed. Like imperō and mandō it is followed by a *subjunctive clause* to denote what one is employed to do, the *subjunctive* verb being translated by the *present infinitive*; the rule of sequence prevails in the choice of tense.

1. Explōrātōribus negōtium    *He employs scouts to find out*  
     dat, ut hostium cōnsilia    *the plans of the enemy*  
     cōgnōscant,
2. Gallis negōtium dedit, ut    *He employed the Gauls to cut*  
     pontem interscinderent,    *down the bridge*

## 331.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Castris munitis et rē frumentariā comparatā Caesar Sēquanis negōtium dedit, ut in Belgārum finēs irent atque ea

quae hostēs facerent cōgnōscerent. 2. Caesar, cum cōpiās in triplici aciē prō castris instrūxisset, omnēs suōs ut ācriter in hostēs impetum faciant cohortātur et ipse signō datō ā dextrō cornū proelium committit. 3. Hāc rē statim ab explorātōribus cōgnitā omnibus cohortibus primā lūce ēductis ac prō castris instrūctis Caesar omnem equitātum, quī in novissimum agmen hostium impetum faceret, praemisit, atque T. Labiēnum cum quīnque cohortibus subsequi iussit. 4. Proelium ā dextrō cornū tam ācriter gestum est, ut equitātus<sup>1</sup> hostium sub monte instrūctus primō nostrōrum impetū<sup>2</sup> fugā salūtem peteret. 5. Cīvitatēs Rēmōrum et Aeduōrum multīs proeliis repulsae<sup>3</sup> ad Caesarem suōs primōs, quī sibi pācem salūtemque peterent, misērunt.

II.—1. When this war was finished, Caesar ordered the remaining states to give a supply of corn to those forces for which he had chosen winter-quarters in Gaul. 2. Because the royal power (*plural of rēgnum*) in Gaul was seized by the more powerful, who had many opportunities for inciting (*ad + gerundive*) men, Caesar led the army thither and ordered hostages to be sent to him. 3. Those whom Caesar employed to plunder the enemies' camp returned in about five days and announced (that) they had not been able to take the redoubts. 4. When scouts announced (that) the enemy were fortifying<sup>4</sup> a camp and would not surrender<sup>5</sup> hostages, Caesar directed his commanders to surround the camp on all sides.

---

<sup>1</sup> Nominative.

<sup>2</sup> At the first attack.

<sup>3</sup> p. p. limiting cīvitatēs.

<sup>4</sup> For mood and tense, see (318), 1.

<sup>5</sup> See (318), 4.

## 332. REVIEW VOCABULARY.

## LESSONS XLI-LXII.

1. **circiter** (adv.), *about*
2. **dē mediā nocte**, *about midnight*
3. **cum** (conj.), *while or after*
4. **post** (prep. with the acc.), *after or behind*
5. **paene** (adv.), *almost*
6. **insidiae, insidiarum**, *ambush*
7. **que, atque** (conj.), *and*
8. **aciēs, aciēi** (fem.), *army or line of battle*
9. **adventus, adventus** (mas.), *arrival*
10. **pervenio, pervenire, perveni, perventum**, *arrive (at)*
11. **spiritus, spiritus** (mas.), *breath; (in the plur.) arrogance*
12. **primā luce**, *at early dawn*
13. **primō** (adv.), *at first*
14. **sub monte**, *at the foot of the mountain*
15. **auxilia, auxiliorum** (neut.), *auxiliaries*
16. **proelium committere**, *begin battle*
17. **sē recipere**, *betake one's self*
18. **inter** (prep. with the acc.), *between*
19. **et . . . et** (conj.), *both . . . and*
20. **sagittarius, sagittarii** (mas.), *bowman*
21. **pueri, puerorum** (mas.), *children*
22. **venio, venire, veni, ventum**, *come*
23. **communis, communis, commune** (adj.), *common*
24. **fidēs, fidei** (fem.), *confidence*
25. **opportūnus, opportuna, opportunum** (adj.), *convenient*
26. **concilium, concilii** (neut.), *council of war*
27. **trānseo, trānsire, trānsivī or transiī, trānsitum**, *cross*
28. **cōnsuetūdō, cōnsuetūdinis** (fem.), *custom or habit*
29. **diēs, diēi** (mas.), *day*
30. **pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum**, *drive or defeat*
31. **poscō, poscere, poposci**, [no supine], *demand*

32. **diversus, diversa, diversum** (adj.), *different*
33. **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**, *direct or advise*
34. **repellō, repellere, repulī, repulsum**, *drive back*
35. **aut . . . aut** (conj.), *either . . . or*
36. **tōtus, tōta, tōtum** (adj.), *entire*
37. **māximē** (adv.), *especially or very much*
38. **etiam** (conj.), *even*
39. **inter sē obsidēs dare**, *exchange hostages*
40. **quīnque** (indeclin. num. adj.), *five*
41. **longē** (adv.), *far*
42. **vadum, vadi** (neut.), *ford*
43. **superior, superior, superius** (adj.), *former or higher*
44. **mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum**, *fortify*
45. **ē superiōre locō**, *from a higher place*
46. **eō, ire, ivī or iī, itum**, *go*
47. **dēfēnsiō, dēfēnsiōnis** (fem.), *defence*
48. **contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum**, *hasten*
49. **audiō, audīre, audīvī, auditum**, *hear*
50. **is, ea, id** (personal pron. third person), *he or that*
51. **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (intensive pron.), *he or self*
52. **sē** (reflexive pron. third person), *himself or themselves*
53. **impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impeditum**, *hinder*
54. **citerior, citerior, citerius** (adj.), *hither*
55. **spēs, speī** (fem.), *hope*
56. **quantus, -a, -um** (adj.), *how great or how many*
57. **prōtinus** (adv.), *immediately*
58. **(in) proeliō equestri**, *in a cavalry skirmish*
59. **interior, interior, interius** (adj.), *interior*
60. **quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum**, *inquire*
61. **coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūctum**, *join*
62. **Labiēnus, Labiēnī** (mas.), *Labienus*
63. **proximē** (adv.), *lately*
64. **trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum**, *lead across*
65. **sinister, sinistra, sinistrum** (adj.), *left*
66. **littera, litterae** (fem.), *letter*
67. **lēgātus, lēgātī** (mas.), *lieutenant*
68. **lūx, lūcis** (fem.), *light*
69. **expeditus, expedita, expeditum** (adj.), *light-armed*

70. **item** (adv.), *likewise*
71. **vulgō** (abl. as adv.), *commonly or generally*
72. **iter, itineris** (neut.), *march*
73. **iter facere**, *to march*
74. **aestuārium, aestuārii** (neut.), *marsh*
75. **interim** (adv.), *meanwhile*
76. **memoria, memoriae** (fem.), *memory*
77. **medius, media, medium** (adj.), *middle of*
78. **propinquitās, propinquitātis** (fem.), *nearness*
79. **neque . . . neque** (conj.), *neither . . . nor*
80. **inde** (adv.), *after that, thence or then*
81. **equester, equestris, equestre** (adj.), *of cavalry*
82. **frumentārius, frumentāria, frumentārium** (adj.), *of corn or grain*
83. **ūnus, ūna, ūnum** (num. adj.), *one*
84. **ā sinistrā parte**, *on the left side*
85. **ā dextrō cornū**, *on the right wing*
86. **in summō colle**, *on the top of the hill*
87. **Pedius, Pedii** (mas.), *Pedius*
88. **populor, populārī, populātus sum**, *plunder*
89. **potēns, potēns, potēns** (adj.), *powerful*
90. **celeriter** (adv.), *quickly*
91. **dexter, dextra, dextrum** (adj.), *right*
92. **senātus, senātūs** (mas.), *senate*
93. **septimus, septima, septimum** (num. adj.), *seventh*
94. **exiguitās, exiguitātis** (fem.), *shortness*
95. **cōspectus, cōspectūs** (mas.), *sight*
96. **funditor, funditōris** (mas.), *slinger*
97. **nōnnūllus, -a, -um** (adj.), *some, (plur. as noun)*
98. **cursus, cursūs** (mas.), *speed*
99. **rēs frumentāria, rei frumentāriae** (fem.), *supply of corn or grain*
100. **palūs, palūdis** (fem.), *swamp*
101. **suus, sua, suum** (possessive adj. pron. third person), *his or their, with reflexive force*
102. **tum** (adv.), *then*
103. **rēs, rei** (fem.), *thing*
104. **hīc, haec, hōc** (adj.), *this*



1. Caesar lēgātum certiōrem    *Caesar informs the ambassador*  
 facit sē pācem factūrum    *that he will make peace*  
 esse
2. Hostēs nostrōs praeffectōs    *The enemy informed our gen-*  
 certiōrēs fēcērunt sē suōs    *erals that they would defend*  
 finis dēfēnsūrōs esse    *their territories*

## 334.

## VOCABULARY.

Review words 1-62 in 'review vocabulary' (332).

dē imprōvisō	<i>unexpectedly</i>
regiō -ōnis, fem.	<i>region</i>
diūtius, adv.	<i>longer</i>
passus -ūs, mas.	<i>pace</i>
longē, adv.	<i>far</i>
ad, apud, prep. with the acc.	<i>near</i>
paulisper, adv.	<i>for a little while</i>
quantus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>how great, how many</i>

**335. Conditionals. Less vivid future.**—In the *more vivid* future condition (223) the supposition of a future case is *positive* and *distinct*, the *apodosis* stating what *will be* the result; the mood in both clauses is *indicative*. In a *less vivid* future condition the supposition (in the *protasis*) is in suspense and is *less distinct*, the *apodosis* stating what *would be* the result: in both *protasis* and *apodosis* the *present* (rarely the *perfect*) *subjunctive* is used. The verb in the *protasis* is usually translated '*should*' or '*were to*,' that in the *apodosis* '*would*.' Example of the *less vivid* future condition:

Caesar civitātem cōservet, si	<i>Caesar would spare the state, if</i>
hostēs sē dēdant,	<i>the enemy should or were to</i>
	<i>surrender</i>

## 336.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Si Germānī vicōs agrōsque Aeduōrum populen-  
 tur, Caesar in eōrum finēs omnibus cōpiīs iter faciat.

2. Cum Caesar eō dē imprōvisō pervēnisset, explorātōrēs eum certiōrem fēcērunt hostēs (*accusative subject*) ē castris discessisse et in (*upon*) proximum montem omnēs cōpiās impedimentaue cōgere. 3. Sēquanī erant sōlī quibus Gallī negōtium dedērunt ut ex his regiōnibus cōpiās ēdūcerent atque contrā populum Rōmānum cōsentīrent. 4. Caesar dīxit sē hostēs cōservātūrum esse neque eōrum oppida dēlētūrum esse, quod primōs cīvītātis ad sē lēgātōs, quī peterent pācem, mīsissent (*misissent, why subjunctive?*). 5. Caesar ubi vīdit quantō in periculō milītēs septimae legiōnis essent,<sup>1</sup> ipse ad eōs cum parte peditum fortissimōrum contendit.

II.—1. Scouts inform our generals (that) the Aedui will conspire with the rest of (*not genitive*) the Gauls so as to<sup>2</sup> plunder those towns which have been left<sup>3</sup> by our men. 2. Caesar will employ the chiefs of many states to collect fresh cavalry and choose places suitable for winter-quarters. 3. When these facts (*rēs*) had been found out,<sup>4</sup> Caesar commanded his generals not to lead their men<sup>5</sup> out of camp on that day. 4. At early dawn Caesar drew up in line of battle all the legions, after they were led forth<sup>6</sup> from camp.

## LESSON LXIV.

### COMPOUND VERBS WITH THE DATIVE.

**337. Learn the deponent verb *vereor*, second conjugation (495).**

**Dative with compound verbs.**—Many verbs compounded

<sup>1</sup> *Were*, see (313), 'indirect question.'

<sup>2</sup> 'So as to,' etc. = *ut* + subjunctive denoting affirmative purpose.

<sup>3</sup> Subjunctive by attraction, see (276).

<sup>4</sup> Render clause by the ablative absolute.

<sup>5</sup> 'Their men' = *suos*: see (258).

<sup>6</sup> 'After they were led forth'—render by one word in Latin (p. p. p.).



with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, and *super* take the *dative* of the *indirect object*; if transitive, these verbs may take a *direct object* in the *accusative*.

**Titūrius castellō** (*dative*) **prae-** *Titurius was in command of*  
**erat,** *the redoubt*

**Praeficiō**, *to place (one) in command of*, takes the *person* placed in command *in the accusative*.

**Caesar novīs mūnitiōnibus** *Caesar will place Galba in com-*  
**Galbam praeficiet,** *mand of the new fortifications*

**338. Certior factus** (*passive*).—When the form of *facere* is *passive*, *certior* agrees with the *subject* of the verb, and is placed in the *nominative*; as,

1. **Caesar per explorātōrēs** *Caesar was informed by means*  
**certior fiēbat (factus est),** *of scouts*
2. **Lēgātī certiōrēs fiunt** *The ambassadors are informed*  
**Caesarem pācem nōn fac-** *that Caesar will not make*  
**tūrum esse,** *peace*

## 339.

## VOCABULARY.

Review words 63–122 in ‘review vocabulary’ (332).

<b>passus</b> , -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>outstretched</i>
<b>manus</b> , -ūs, <i>fem.</i>	<i>hand</i>
<b>plūrimum posse</b> , {	<i>to be very powerful, or</i>
<b>plūrimum valēre</b> , {	<i>to have very great influence</i>
<b>mille</b> , indeclin. num. <i>adj.</i>	<i>a thousand</i>
<b>octō</b> , indeclin. num. <i>adj.</i>	<i>eight</i>

**340. Perfect participle of the deponent.**—As Latin has no perfect *active* participle, the perfect participle of a *deponent verb*, which has an *active* meaning, serves in its place; as,

1. Caesar veritus insidiās in castris suōs continuit, *Having feared—fearing—an ambush, Caesar kept his men in camp*
2. Hostēs paulisper ad Caesaris castra morātī sē in suōs finis recēpērunt, *Having delayed a little while near Caesar's camp, the enemy retreated into their own boundaries*

If the verb is *not* a deponent, the clause containing the perfect active participle may be recast and expressed by the ablative absolute or by a subordinate clause. See (372).

## 341.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. His rēbus per<sup>1</sup> explorātōrēs cōgnitīs equitātus, cui Caesar Labiēnum praefēcerat, ā dextrō cornū instrūctus est atque signō datō impetus in hostium aciēs ab omnibus nostris ācriter factus est. 2. Item cum Caesar ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, hostēs ex mūrō passis manibus suō mōre ab Rōmānīs pācem petivērunt. 3. Aeduī ab latere nostrōs peditēs fortissimōs circumvenīre cōnātī multīs vulneribus acceptīs pulsī sunt ac sē in civitatēs proximās recēpērunt. 4. Rēmī quī auxiliō ad nostra castra veniēbant hāc pūgnā nūntiātā coepērunt revertī in suōs finēs ē quibus ā Germānīs expulsī erant. 5. Caesar Sēquanīs nē per nostram prōvinciam in Galliam iter faciant imperat atque sē eōs, sī cōnentur,<sup>2</sup> prohibitūrum esse nūntiat.

II.—1. Scouts are sent forward to find out the plans of the enemy and to inform Caesar with respect to these things. 2. Galba directed the tribunes of the soldiers not to begin battle on the right wing, because he saw (that) the enemy had drawn up their bravest infantry in that place and had<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> per = by means of.<sup>2</sup> If they try (to do so).<sup>3</sup> Pres. infin.

very great power there. 3. An attack will not be made, unless Caesar places Galba in command of the infantry of the first legion. 4. Having attempted to destroy our new fortifications, the brave forces of the enemy were quickly driven back and some, surrounded by our cavalry, were brought (*addūcō*) to Caesar.

## LESSON LXV.

### ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE OR TIME.

**342. Learn *ūtor*, I use, deponent of the third conjugation (496).**

**Accusative of extent in space or time.**—Extent in space and duration of time are expressed by the *accusative without a preposition* ; as,

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Caesar ab oppidō duo mīlia<br>passuum cōnsēdit, | Caesar encamped two thousand<br>of paces (two miles) from the<br>town |
| 2. Hostēs cis Rhēnum multōs<br>diēs morābantur,    | The enemy delayed many days<br>on this side of the Rhine              |

**343. Verbs of fearing.**—Verbs of fearing are followed by a *subjunctive* clause introduced by *ut* = *that not* and *nē* = *that* or *lest*. Note *sequence of tense* in the following:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Hostēs verentur nē Caesar<br>ad eōs suum exercitum<br>addūcat, | The enemy fear that Caesar<br>will lead his army against<br>them                |
| 2. Caesar verēbātur ut Aedui<br>sustinēre Germānōs pos-<br>sent   | Caesar feared that the Aedui<br>would not be able to with-<br>stand the Germans |

## 344.

## VOCABULARY.

## Irregular verbs 1-8 (452).

parvulus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>slight</i>
excursiō, -ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>sally</i>
crēber, -bra, -brum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>frequent</i>
vadum, -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>ford</i>
tegimentum, -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>covering</i>
necessārius, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>necessary</i>
decimus, -a, -um, <i>num. adj.</i>	<i>tenth</i>
vesper, -perī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>evening</i>
sub vesperum	<i>towards evening</i>
magistrātus, -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	<i>officer</i>

345. Construction with *persuādeō*, *I persuade*.—*Persuādeō* takes its object in the *dative* (like *imperō* and *mandō*) and is followed by an *ut* or *nē* clause, translated by an *infinitive*. Note *sequence* in the following:

1. Belgae Gallīs reliquīs ut conīurent contrā populum Rōmānum persuādent, *The Belgians persuade the remaining Gauls to conspire against the Roman people*
2. Caesar Rēmīs persuāsit nē Senōnibus auxilium darent, *Caesar persuaded the Remi not to give aid to the Senones*

## 346.

## EXERCISE.

1. Cum Caesar ab potentissimō Rēmōrum oppidō octō milia passuum abesset, lēgātī ad eum vērunt, quī pacem peterent obsidēsque trāderent. 2. Caesar, cum auxiliis Q. Titūrium praefēcisset, suō mōre ē castrīs expeditōs militēs ēdūxit. 3. Cum prīma legiō pervēnisset ac castra mūnīre coepisset atque legiōnēs reliquae circiter duo milia passuum abessent, hostēs triplicī aciē instrūctā magnō cum tumultū ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs accessērunt. 4. Aedui

adventū nostrōrum commōtī māgnō exercitū coāctō mīsē-  
runt ad Caesarem lēgātōs, quī sē neque obsidēs datūrōs  
neque ab eō (*of him*) pācem petītūrōs esse nūntiārent.  
5. Hostēs vadīs ibi repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum  
trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum  
cui Q. Titūrius lēgātus praeerat expūgnārent. 6. Nostri  
oppidum expūgnāre cōnātī, quod audīvērunt facilem adi-  
tum habēre, ad mūrōs oppidī accēdere propter aestuāria  
palūdēsque nōn poterant. 7. Caesar amīcitiae causā sē in  
fidem eōs receptūrum et cōservātūrum esse dixit; sed  
quod erat civitās māgnā<sup>1</sup> inter Belgās auctōritāte atque  
multitūdine hominum plūrimum valēbat, multōs obsidēs  
poposcit: hīs trādītīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidīs collātīs  
(*from cōferō*) Caesar ab eō locō in finis Suessiōnum quī  
sē suaeque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt pervēnit.

## LESSON LXVI.

### VERBS OF COMMANDING. CAUSAL CUM.

#### 347. Learn *potior* (497).

Use of *cohortor*, *I urge, encourage*.—*Cohortor* takes the  
*accusative* of direct object and an *ut or nē clause*; as,

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Caesar suōs cohortātur ut<br>fortiter impetum hostium<br>sustineant,         | <i>Caesar encourages his men to<br/>withstand bravely the enemies'<br/>attack</i>                             |
| 2. Caesar suōs cohortātus nē<br>animō perturbārentur sī-<br>gnum proeliī dedit, | <i>Having urged his men not to<br/>become discouraged at heart,<br/>Caesar gave the signal for<br/>battle</i> |

---

<sup>1</sup> māgnā auctōritāte = *of great influence*; see (376), 'ablative of quality'  
and example.

**348. Dative with special verbs.**—Most verbs signifying to *yield* and *resist*, *bid* and *forbid*, *please* and *displease*, *desire*, *favor*, *trust*, *persuade*, *obey*, *command*, *serve*, *envy*, *harm*, *threaten*, and *pardon*, apparently transitive in English, are *intransitive in Latin* and take an *indirect object in the dative*; so with many phrases having similar meanings.

As previously stated in exercises, **imperō**, **mandō**, and **persuadeō** take the *dative* and an **ut** or a **nē** clause; **iubeō**, the *accusative and infinitive*; **cohortor**, the *accusative* and an **ut** or a **nē** clause.

## 349.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 9–16 (452).

<b>mercātor</b> , -ōris, <i>mas.</i>	<i>merchant</i>
<b>condiciō</b> , -ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>terms</i>
<b>captivus</b> , -ī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>captive</i>
<b>centuriō</b> , -ōnis, <i>mas.</i>	<i>centurion</i>
<b>complūrēs</b> , -rēs, -r(i)a, <i>adj.</i>	<i>very many</i>
<b>iniūria</b> , -ae, <i>fem.</i>	<i>injury</i>
<b>dēfēnsor</b> , -ōris, <i>mas.</i>	<i>defender</i>
<b>ita . . . utī</b> , <i>adverbs</i>	<i>thus, accordingly . . . as</i>
<b>suprā</b> , <i>adv.</i>	<i>above</i>

**350. Causal and concessive cum.**—**Cum** meaning *since* or *although* takes the *subjunctive*: choice of *tense* is regulated by the *rule of sequence*.

*Causal cum:*

<b>Caesar cum hostēs trānsire flūmen cōnārentur</b> ( <i>time contemporaneous</i> ), <b>imperāvit suis ut pontem interscinderent</b> ,	<i>Since the enemy were attempting to cross the river, Caesar commanded his men to cut down the bridge</i>
--	--

*Concessive cum:*

<b>Cum legiōnēs Rōmānae fortissimae sint</b> , <b>Gallī nōn dubitābunt cum eis proelium committere</b> ,	<i>Although the Roman legions are very brave, the Gauls will not hesitate to begin battle with them</i>
--	---

## 351.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostri hostēs in flūmine impeditōs (*modifies hostēs*) aggressi māgnū eōrum numerum interfēcērunt. 2. Caesar id oppidum quod sine dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat oppugnāre cōnātus propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem expugnāre nōn potuit. 3. Caesar, quod verētur nē cīvitatēs Galliae contrā sē cōsentiant, suōs imperātōrēs certiōrēs facit sē primā lūce castra mōtūrum et eō iter faciūrum esse. 4. Conciliō commūnī convocātō Germāni exercitūs nostrī adventum veritī pontem interscindere cōstituērunt, nē nostrī in suōs finis trādūcerentur. 5. Galli, cum verērentur nē Caesar in Galliam omnīs legiōnēs dūceret, finitimīs persuādere cōnātī sunt, nē exercitui Rōmānō frūmentum aut commeātūs darent.

II.—1. Our men killed the foremost who had crossed after they had been surrounded<sup>1</sup> by the cavalry. 2. When the matter had been investigated<sup>2</sup> by means<sup>3</sup> of scouts at early dawn, Caesar sent forward all the cavalry to delay<sup>4</sup> the rear of the enemy. 3. Fearing (having feared) that they could not withstand the attack of our men, the enemy, after burning<sup>5</sup> all their towns and villages, retreated into the territories next to the Germans. 4. Since his infantry could not approach the enemies' camp on account of swamps, Caesar sent forward scouts to find out the plans of the enemy and to inform him with respect to those matters.

<sup>1</sup> Render the entire clause by one Latin word.<sup>2</sup> *Ablative absolute.*<sup>3</sup> per + acc.<sup>4</sup> *Deponent.*<sup>5</sup> Recast in the passive, *having been burned.*

## LESSON LXVII.

## DOUBLE DATIVE. AFFIRMATIVE PURPOSE.

**352. Learn the active voice of *ferō*, I bear (490).**

**Double dative.**—A dative of *purpose, end, or service* often accompanies the dative of the *person or thing interested or concerned*; as,

1. **Haec ūsui nostris sunt,**      *These things are useful (for a use) to our men*

Here *ūsui* is the *dative of purpose, end, or service*, *nostris* the *dative of the persons interested*.

2. **Caesar subsidiō nostris decimam legiōnem misit,**      *Caesar sent the tenth legion as a help (for a help) to our men*

**353. Deponent verbs governing the ablative.**—The following deponent verbs take the *ablative*: *ūtor*, to use; *abūtor*, misuse; *fruor*, enjoy; *fungor*, perform; *potior*, capture; *vescor*, eat.

- Labiēnus impedimentis hostium potitus in castra suos redūxit,**      *Having captured the enemies' baggage, Labienus led his men back into camp*

**354.**

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 17–26 (452).

<b>deinde, adv.</b>	<i>then</i>
<b>rūsus, adv.</b>	<i>again</i>
<b>nōn modo</b>	<i>not only</i>
<b>sed etiam</b>	<i>but also</i>
<b>insigne, -is, neut.</b>	<i>badge</i>
<b>minus, adv.</b>	<i>less</i>
<b>minus facile</b>	<i>less easily</i>
<b>postea, adv.</b>	<i>afterwards</i>
<b>ūsus, -ūs, mas.</b>	<i>use</i>



355. How to express affirmative purpose.—1. *Ut + subjunctive.* 2. *Qui + subjunctive.* 3. *Ad + gerundive,* agreeing with a noun in the *accusative.* 4. *First supine,* with verbs of motion.

Example of *ad + gerundive* :

*Hostēs ad suōs finēs dēfendendōs conveniunt,*      *The enemy assemble to defend their territories*

First supine:

*Caesar vēnit postulātum ob-*      *Caesar came to demand hos-*  
*sidēs,*      *tages*

356.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Duābus legiōnibus praesidiō castris (*dat.*) relictis Caesar reliquās, quae in hostium cōpiās impetum facerent, praemisit. 2. Temporis fuit tanta brevitās hostiumque animus ad dīmicandum tam parātus, ut nōn modo ad insīgnia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque (*from their shields*) tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus deesset. 3. Caesar milītēs (*acc. obj.*) cohortātus ut suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent, quod hostēs nōn longē aberant, proeliī committendī sīgnum dedit. 4. In alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus (*from proficiscor*) Caesar intellēxit fortissimōs milītēs secundae legiōnis viribus (*from vis*) redintegrātis in primā aciē fortiter pūgnāre. 5. Duābus cohortibus in castris relictis praesidiō impedimentis Caesar cum equitātū omni primā lūce profectus in finēs Aeduōrum quōrum agrōs Germānī populābantur dē imprōvisō pervēnit.

II.—1. Since' the enemy feared (*imperf. subjunc.*) that their infantry might be defeated by our men, they ordered their commanders to close all the gates and restrain their soldiers from battle. 2. Dumnorix employed scouts to go

<sup>1</sup> Order: 'the enemy, since,' etc.

(*imperf. subjunc.*) to the nearest states and inform the chiefs that Caesar was collecting large bands and would march into their territories on the next day. 3. While our infantry were making an attack upon the enemies' forces on the opposite hill, Caesar ran down to the river with slingers and (*que*) bowmen and drove back those who were trying<sup>1</sup> to cross.

## LESSON LXVIII.

### DATIVE OF POSSESSION.

#### 357. Learn *ferō* in the passive (491).

**Dative of possession.**—The *dative* is used with forms of *sum* to denote possession. Instead of saying '*the boy has a horse*' the Romans frequently expressed the idea thus: '*a horse is to the boy*,' *equus est puerō*. The *thing* possessed is put in the *nominative* (*accusative* in *indirect discourse*), and the *possessor* in the *dative*.

*Proelium cum hostibus erit* Our men will have a battle  
*nostris,* with the enemy

Which word denotes the *thing* possessed, which the *possessor*? Observe that the forms of *sum* are translated by the *corresponding tenses of the verb* '*have*.'

**358. Temporal clauses with the indicative.**—*Ubi* and *postquam*, *when*; *ut*, *when* or *as*; *ut semel*, *as soon as*; *simulac*, *simulatque*, *as soon as*, usually take the *perfect* or *historical present in the indicative* (203).

**359. *Cum* clauses.**—*Cum* temporal, *when*, takes the *indicative* (like *ubi*, etc.) merely to *define the time of the action*.

*Cum* historical, *when* (in the sense of '*while*'), takes the

---

<sup>1</sup> Render '*who were trying*' by the *present participle*.

*imperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances of the action.*

**Cum** historical, *when* (in the sense of 'after'), takes the *pluperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances of the action.*

**Cum** causal, *since*, takes the *subjunctive, any tense.*

**Cum** concessive, *although*, takes the *subjunctive, any tense.*

## 360.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Quod oppidō sunt altissimī mūrī, Caesar ad oppidum multōs diēs morābitur et commeātibus oppidānōs prohibēre cōnābitur. 2. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nūllī (*possession*). 3. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar servīs<sup>1</sup> ducibus (*apposition*) ūsus (*participle*) sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō oppidānīs mīsīt. 4. Primō adventū exercitūs nostrī hostēs crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant<sup>2</sup> parvulisque proeliis cum nostrīs contendēbant; postea vallō magnō crēbrisque castellīs mūnītī in oppidō sē continēbant. 5. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trāns flūmen trādūcere cōnātī, ut castellum cui praeesset<sup>3</sup> Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent, omnēs hostēs ā nostrō equitātū circumventī (*participle*) interficiēbantur.

II.—1. Having feared an ambush, Caesar decided to keep all of his infantry<sup>4</sup> and cavalry in camp. 2. The enemy were informed by scouts that Caesar's army was advancing towards their camp and was then about five thousand paces distant. 3. Having set out from camp in the second watch, Caesar hastened with the auxiliaries, which were of great use to our men, and cut down the bridge

<sup>1</sup> Ablative object of ūsus ; see (353).

<sup>2</sup> Kept making ; [see (101), meanings of the imperfect.]

<sup>3</sup> See (276).

<sup>4</sup> Not genitive.

that the enemy might not be able to cross the river.  
4. Since the Belgians are attempting to drive Galba's men out of winter-quarters, Caesar will command Titurius to march into their borders at once with two new legions.

## LESSON LXIX.

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**361. Periphrastic conjugation.**—Learn the periphrastic conjugation of *amō*, both voices (498, 499).

The *active periphrastic* is formed by annexing parts of *sum* to the *future participle*, and is used to express what *is likely—is going—to happen*; as,

1. **Caesar hīs in regiōnibus bellum gestūrus est,** *Caesar is going to wage war in these regions*
2. **Hostēs impetum factūrī erant in nostrōs,** *The enemy were about to make an attack upon our men*

The *passive periphrastic* is composed of the *gerundive* and parts of *sum*, and implies *obligation* or *necessity*; as,

1. **Karthāgō dēlenda est,** *Carthage must be (has to be, ought to be) destroyed*
2. **Omnia ūnō tempore facienda erant,** *All things had to be done at one time*

**362. Dative of personal agent.**—The *dative* is used with the *gerundive* (*periphrastic passive*) to denote the *personal agent*; as, *hōc faciendum est mihi*, (literally) *this must be done by me*; it is better to recast the English sentence in the *active voice*, changing the *personal agent* to the *nominative subject*; thus, 'I must do this.' The idea of *necessity*, *duty*, or *obligation*, conveyed usually in English in the *active voice*, is expressed by the Latin *periphrastic passive* with the *agent* in the *dative*.

**363. Examples of the periphrastic verb.** (See Caesar's text, Book II, Chapter XX.)

1. **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda,** *Caesar had to attend to everything at one time*
2. (Again in line 3:) **Caesarī ab opere revocandī (erant) militēs,** *Caesar had to recall the soldiers from their work*
3. (Chapter XVII, last sentence—see text.) *Since the advance (march) of our column was checked (would be checked) by these circumstances, the Nervii concluded that they (sibi) ought not to disregard the advice [literally, that the advice ought not to be disregarded (omittendum esse, indirect discourse) by them]*

**364. Ablative absolute.**—The *ablative absolute* may be expressed by (1) a *noun* or *pronoun* and the *perfect passive participle* (previously stated); (2) by a *noun* and an *adjective*; as, **locō idōneō,** *since the place was suitable*; (3) by a *noun* and the *present participle*; as, **nostris pūgnāntibus,** *while or although our men were fighting*; (4) by *two nouns*; as, **duce Caesare,** *under Caesar's leadership* (literally, *Caesar being the leader*).

**365. Impersonal verbs.**—These are so called, as they have no subject separately expressed, the word *it* being used as the subject in the translation.

Examples of the *impersonal verb* in the *passive, third singular*:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>Ācriter eō locō pūgnātum est,</b>                     | <i>A fierce battle occurred in that place (literally, it was fought fiercely, etc.)</i>                 |
| 2. <b>Hostēs, ad quōs ventum erat, cōstitērunt,</b>         | <i>The enemy, whom we (they) overtook, halted (literally, the enemy to whom it had been come, etc.)</i> |
| 3. <b>Eō ex proximīs castellīs celeriter concursum est,</b> | <i>(Our men) rushed thither quickly from the nearest redoubts (it was rushed thither, etc.)</i>         |

## 366.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Sēquanī, quod Caesarem cum exercitū ad sē iter facere audiēbant, omne frūmentum praeter (*except*) id quod sēcum portātūrī erant incendērunt et ex suis finibus discesērunt. 2. Caesar vult (*wishes*) manūs hostium distinērī nē cum tantā multitūdine sibi unō tempore cōnfligendum sit (*impersonal*). 3. Ubi neutri (*nom. plur.*) flūminis transeundi initium faciunt, secundiōre<sup>1</sup> equitum proeliō<sup>2</sup> nostris, Caesar suos in castra redūxit. 4. Oppidum oppugnāre cōnātus quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucis dēfendentibus<sup>3</sup> expūgnāre nōn potuit. 5. Caesar equitātū praemissō omnibus cōpiis subsequēbātur et, quod ad hostēs appropinquābat, suā cōnsuētūdine ipse sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitūs impedimenta conlocāvit atque duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrip̄tae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant.

II.—1. Greatly alarmed<sup>4</sup> by the approach of our army, the Suessiones sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask for<sup>5</sup> peace. 2. Caesar placed Galba in command of (those) forces which had been sent<sup>6</sup> to him by the Aedui and he himself, after encouraging<sup>7</sup> his men, drew up a triple line of battle. 3. After the enemies' camp had been burned and their army routed, Caesar concluded that he ought<sup>8</sup> to demand many hostages.

<sup>1</sup> See ablative absolute, example (2).

<sup>2</sup> See ablative absolute (3).

<sup>3</sup> Modifies the subject.

<sup>4</sup> See (§55), 'how to express purpose.'

<sup>5</sup> Not relative clause, but p. p. p.

<sup>6</sup> = 'having encouraged.'

<sup>7</sup> See 'dative of agent,' example (3)—literally 'that many hostages ought to be demanded by him.'

## LESSON LXX.

## THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AS AN INTRODUCTORY WORD.

367. Learn the verb *volō*, *I wish* (487).

Learn the comparison of 'irregular adjectives and adverbs' (472, 473).

**Relative as a connective.**—Frequently in Latin independent sentences are connected by the *relative*, which is usually translated by a conjunction (*and, now, etc.*) + a *demonstrative pronoun*; as,

1. *Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt* (Caesar, Book II, chapt. v, line 3), *Now all these things were done by the latter carefully to the day*
2. *Quī cum sē suaeque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent* (chapt. xiii, line 4), *Now after they (those) had taken refuge with all their possessions in the town of Bratuspantium*
3. *Cūius adventū spō illātā (from inferō) militibus . . . paulum hostium impetus tardātus est* (chapt. xxv, last sentence), *And hope being inspired in the soldiers on account of his arrival (the arrival of that one), the charge of the enemy was checked a little*

368. **Relative of cause or concession.**—When *quī* = *cum* is, *cum* *eī* (*since* or *although* *he, they*), expressing *cause* or *concession*, the verb in the relative clause is in the *subjunctive*; as,

- Aduatuci dixerunt: nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divīnā bellum gerere, quī tantās māchinātiōnēs prōmovēre possent,* *The Aduatuci said they did not think the Romans waged war without divine assistance, since (causal quī) they could move forward such machines of war*

In the *direct discourse* this relative clause takes the *subjunctive*.

**369. Ablative with the comparative.**—The comparative degree is followed by the *ablative*, signifying *than*; as,  
**Rōmānī erant fortiōrēs Gallīs,** *The Romans were braver than the Gauls*

The comparative may be followed by **quam**, ‘*than*,’ the following noun taking the case required by the context. After **minus**, **amplius**, and the like, **quam** is often omitted without affecting the construction.

**370. Verbs of hindering.**—Verbs of *hindering*, *preventing*, and the like, when *negatived*, are followed by **quīn** or **quōminus** and the *subjunctive*; by **nē** (sometimes **quōminus**) when *not negatived*. **Prohibēre** usually has *accusative + infinitive*. **quīn**, etc. + *subjunctive* may be translated by ‘*from*’ and the *gerund* (ending in ‘*ing*’); as,

**Nōn poterant dēterrēre Aeduōs** *They were not able to prevent*  
**quīn cum Belgīs cōsentīrent** *the Aedui from conspiring with the Belgians*

### 371.

### EXERCISE.

1. When Caesar learned that all the states had been subdued, he decided to place his men in winter-quarters: [write *two verb-forms*, one with **cum** and one with **ubi**—see (203, 358, 359)—and explain *difference in meaning*.] 2. Unless Caesar sends help to the Remi, they will not be able to hold out against the Gauls: [write ‘*sends*’ in *two tenses*, see (223), and explain relation of the *time of its action* to the *time of the action of the principal verb* ‘*will not be able*.’] 3. If the enemy should attempt to cross, our men would attack (**aggredior**) and drive them back: [see (335).] 4. The enemy fear that Caesar will not accept hostages. Caesar feared that the enemy would capture (**potior**) Galba’s



camp: [*'verbs of fearing,'* see (343); for case of the *object* of *potior*, see (353).] 5. Since the Roman soldiers excel (*praestō*) all in courage, they will easily conquer many tribes: [*cum*, '*since*,' see (350); '*all*,' for use and meaning of, see (458); for its *case*, see (337).]

## LESSON LXXI.

### ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

**372. Learn the verb *nōlō*, *I am unwilling* (488).**

**Substitutions for the perfect active participle.**—In place of the *perfect active participle* (lacking in Latin) the *perfect participle of a deponent verb* may be used; in case the Latin verb is *not a deponent*, the participial clause may be *recast* in the *passive* and expressed by the *Ablative Absolute*; thus, *having killed a large number of the enemy the cavalry retreated into camp*. Since *interficiō* is *not a deponent*, recast in the *passive*: '*a large number . . . having been killed*,' etc.; *māgnō hostium numerō interfectō nostri in castra sē recēpērunt*.

The *ablative absolute* may be translated like a *subordinate clause* introduced by *cum*, *quod*, *ubi*, etc.; as, *cum māgnus hostium numerus interfectus esset, nostri in castra sē recēpērunt*, *when (after) a large number . . . had been killed*, etc.

**373. Relative pronoun agreeing with a predicate word.**—Sometimes the relative agrees with a *word in the predicate* instead of its *antecedent*; as,

*Rōma quod est caput* <sup>1</sup> *Italiae*, *Rome which is the capital of Italy*

**374. Adverbial accusative.**—A *neuter pronoun or adjective* is often used in the *accusative* with an *adverbial force*;

<sup>1</sup> *Caput*, genitive *capitis*, literally '*head*,' is a *neuter noun* of the *third declension*.

as, *quid possum, what can I? what power or strength do I possess?* *hōc tē moneō. I give you this advice.*

**375. Perfect participle passive with *habeō* or *teneō*.—**The p. p. p. (with *habeō* or *teneō*) modifying a noun in a predicate sense denotes *the continued effect of the action of its verb* and is translated with an *active meaning*; as, *Caesar habuit māgnū exercitū coāctū, Caesar had collected a large army.* Here *habuit coāctū* almost equals *coēgerat*.

**376. Ablative of quality.**—*Quality* is expressed by the *ablative* accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent; this is often called the '*Descriptive Ablative*.' *Vir, homō,* or some such word is sometimes to be supplied with this ablative: *est māgnā auctōritāte, he is (a man) of great influence.*

**377.****EXERCISE.**

1. The chiefs knew how great a calamity they had brought upon their state: [*'had brought'*; see (313) for mood of '*indirect question*'; see (337) for the case of '*state*']. 2. Caesar informs the Gauls that he will not make war upon those states that give hostages: [*'informs,' certiorē facere,* see (333); '*will make,*' see (318), *example 3; 'give,'* see (276), '*intermediate clauses in indirect discourse*']. 3. The enemy came to Caesar to excuse (*excūsō*) themselves: [write the purpose clause in *four ways* as given in (355)]. 4. Although the Germans were departing from (*ex*) Gaul, Caesar decided that he ought to check (*impediō*) their departure: [*'although,'* concessive *cum,* see (350); '*that he ought,*' see (362, 363), '*dative of personal agent,*' and *example (3) of periphrastic verb*]. 5. The Belgians will persuade the Germans to cross the Rhine: [*persuādeō,* see (345).]

## LESSON LXXII.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE. ABLATIVE WITH OPUS  
AND ŪSUS.

378. Learn *mālō, I prefer* (489).

**Partitive genitive.**—Words denoting a *part* are followed by a *genitive of the whole* from which the part is taken; as, *nihil vinī, no wine (nothing of wine)*. *Exceptions*: Cardinal numerals (one, two, three, etc.) regularly take *ē (ex)* or *dē* + *ablative* instead of the *partitive genitive*; so usually *quidam (certain)*; as, *ūnus ex iis, one of those*; *quidam ex militibus, certain (some) of the soldiers*.

379. **Ablative with opus and usus.**—*Opus* and *usus*, meaning *need*, take the *ablative* of the *thing needed* or *wanted* and the *dative* of the *person* who needs; as, *mihi est opus virtūte, I have need of courage*. *Opus* is sometimes in the *predicate* with the *thing needed* as *nominative subject*: *sī quid opus est, if there is any need*.

380. **Persuādeō in the passive construction.**—Intransitive verbs governing the *dative* (see 348) are used *impersonally* in the *passive* and *retain the dative*. The *dative* of the *active* does not become the *subject of the passive*; as,

*Active*:

**His (dative) persuādere nōn poterant,** *They could not persuade these (people)*

*Passive*:

**His (dative) persuādērī (passive) nōn poterat,**<sup>1</sup> *These (people) could not be persuaded*

381. **Perfect participle passive translated as a finite (coordinate) verb.**—The p. p. p. limiting and describing a

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *it was not able to be (could not be) persuaded—made sweet—to these*.

noun is often used in Latin, where English would make use of a *co-ordinate verb*; as,

**Caesar suās cōpiās ē castrīs** *Caesar led his forces out of*  
**ēductās instruxit,** *camp and drew them up (in*  
*battle array)*

**Nostri hostēs circumventōs** *Our men surrounded and killed*  
**interfēcērunt,**<sup>1</sup> *the enemy*

**382. Substitution for the future infinitive.**—The *future infinitive* in supineless verbs and usually in the *passive voice* of any verb is expressed by the periphrasis **futūrum esse** (or **fore**) *ut* + *subjunctive*. This periphrasis is sometimes used in the *active voice* of a regular verb. When the sentence *Caesar said that he would demand hostages* is written in Latin, ‘*would demand*’ is placed in the *infinitive* according to the rule of *indirect discourse*, since it depends upon ‘*said*’; but **poscō**, which has no supine, lacks the *future infinitive*. The sentence, therefore, must be turned thus: *Caesar said it would be that he would demand hostages*.

In the following sentences notice carefully *sequence of tenses* in the periphrases:

1. **Caesar dixit futūrum esse** *Caesar said it would be that he*  
**ut obsidēs posceret,** *would demand hostages*
2. **Caesar existimat futūrum** *Caesar thinks the enemy will be*  
**esse ut hostēs vincantur,** *conquered*
3. **Dixerunt futūrum esse ut** *They declared that the rest of*  
**reliquae legiōnēs contrā** *the legions would not dare to*  
**cōsistere nōn audērent,** *stand against them*

### 383.

### EXERCISE.

1. Having delayed near the town a few days and (*omit*) having destroyed many fortifications, Caesar decided to lead his army against the Bellovaci: [‘*having delayed*,’ see (340); ‘*having destroyed*,’ see (372).]
2. The Nervii who

<sup>1</sup> See (816), ‘*use and agreement of participle*,’ example 2.

had been sent as an aid to Caesar could not be deterred by the Gauls from marching into Italy: [*'who had been sent,'* render by one Latin word (p. p. p.), see (316); *'as an aid'* = *for an aid*, see (352); *'from marching,'* see (370).] 3. Because Caesar kept hearing that the enemies' forces had been collected and were coming towards him, he decided that he ought to begin battle on the next day: [*Order: 'Caesar because he kept,'* etc.; *'had been collected,'* render by the p. p. p., see (381), and omit *'and'*; *'he ought to begin,'* recast in the passive, see (362) and (363), example 3.]

### LESSON LXXIII.

#### RELATIVE CLAUSE OF RESULT.

##### 384. Review words 1-42 (399).

The ablative *quō* (= *ut eō*) with the comparative. —The ablative *quō* (*ut eō*, so that thereby, by it) is used to introduce *purpose clauses containing a comparative*; as,

<b>Teneris arbōribus incisis atque inflexis, quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum impedirent,</b> (see chapt. xvii, line 16,)	<i>Young trees being notched and bent down so that they could thereby (by it) more easily check the cavalry of their neighbours</i>
---	---

<b>Caesar manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis uti possent,</b> (chapt. xxv, <i>ad finem</i> ,)	<i>Caesar ordered them to open out their ranks so as to handle their swords with better effect</i>
--	--

##### 385. How to express 'ought' or 'must.'

*I ought to do this* may be rendered:

1. By *dēbeō* + *infinitive*: *hōc facere dēbeō*.

2. By *oportet* (*impersonal verb*): (a) With *accusative* + *infinitive*: *mē hōc facere oportet*; [*'it behooves me to do this.'*] (b) With *subjunctive*: *hōc faciam oportet*; [note sequence; compare (c) below.]

3. By *gerundive* (*periphrastic passive*): **hōc faciendum est mihi**; [what *literally*? see (362), '*dative of personal agent*.']

*Past action* of these verbs may be expressed by placing **dēbeō** or **oportet** in the *tense required*, the *infinitive remaining present*; as,

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| (a) <b>Hōc facere dēbuī,</b>                               | } <i>I ought to have done this</i> |
| (b) <b>Mē hōc facere oportuit</b><br>( <b>oportēbat</b> ), |                                    |
| (c) <b>Hōc facerem<sup>1</sup> oportuit,</b>               |                                    |

**386. Place to which (end of motion); place from which.**—The place to which is expressed by **ad** or **in** + *accusative*; but the names of *towns* or *small islands* together with **domum** (*home*) and **rūs** (*country*) are put in the *accusative without a preposition*; as, **domum revertit**, *he returned home*; **rūs (neut.) ibit**, *he will go to the country*. The place *from which* is denoted by **ab**, **dē**, or **ex** + *ablative*; but with the names of *towns* or *small islands*, and also **domō** and **rūre**, the *ablative is used without a preposition*; as, **Romā abiit**, *he went from Rome*; **domō profecti sunt**, *they set out from home*.

**387. Relative clauses of result.**—*Relative clauses of result* are introduced by the relative **quī** or the adverbs **unde**, **ubi**, **quō**, etc., with the antecedent expressed or implied in the main clause; as,

<b>Effecerant ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnimenta praebē- rent, quō nōn modo nōn in- trārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset,</b> (chapt. xvii, <i>ad finem</i> ),	<i>They had caused these hedges to furnish fortifications like a wall into which (whither, as a result) one could not only not enter, but not even see</i>
--	--

---

<sup>1</sup> Observe that **facerem** is *imperfect*, depending upon **oportuit**, a verb of *past time*.

## 388.

## EXERCISE.

1. Our men with the cavalry surrounded and killed the foremost (men) who had crossed the river: [*'surrounded,'* render by the p. p. p., see (381), and omit *'and'*; *'foremost,'* see (258).] 2. If the enemy should not surrender, Caesar would not prevent his (men) from burning their town: [The *'less vivid future condition,'* see (335); *'would prevent,'* write in two ways with *impediō* and *prohibeō*; see (370).] 3. If hostages are given to Caesar so that he may know that the enemy will do those (things) which they are promising, he will make peace with them: [*'are given,'* write in two tenses; see (223); what kind of a condition is this? *'will do,'* future infinitive; *'those things,'* see (258); *'are promising,'* subjunctive by attraction; see (276). Observe the *sequence of tenses.*]

## LESSON LXXIV.

## COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

## 389. Review words 43–84 (399).

See imperative of *nōlō* (488).

Commands and exhortations are put in the imperative, negative *nē* (never *nōn*); as,

1. Affirmative command: *Ad Belgās adī et in officiō continē*, *Go to the Belgians and keep them in allegiance.*  
 2. Negative command: *Nōlī hōc facere*, *Do not do this*, (literally, *'be unwilling to do this'*). *Nōlī + infinitive* is preferred to *nē + present imperative*, *nē* being generally used with the *perfect subjunctive* in a direct address or command; as, *nē hōc fēceris*, *thou shalt not do this*. When the phrase *nōlī facere*, *'do not do this,'* is changed to *indirect discourse*, as, *he told him not to do this*, the *nega-*

*tive adverb nē must be used in place of nōli (see following rule).*

**390. Commands and exhortations in indirect discourse.**—The imperative of the *direct* becomes *subjunctive of the indirect, negative nē*. The application of the *rule of sequence* may be aided by a study of the following tables:

**PAST.**

**Indicative mood.**

*Imperfect*  
*Perfect*  
*Pluperfect*

} followed by {

**Subjunctive mood.**

*Imperfect or pluperfect*  
" " "  
" " "

**NOT PAST.**

*Present*  
*Future*  
*Future-perfect*

} followed by {

*Present or perfect*  
" " "  
" " "

**391.** The *imperfect subjunctive* represents time that is *not past*, the *pluperfect subjunctive* time that is *past*, according as the time indicated is *past* or is *not past* with reference to the *time* of the tense in the opposite column. In the second table the *present* and *perfect subjunctive* (in view of *relative time*) bear the *same relation* to the tenses in the opposite column, as is indicated by the *imperfect* and *pluperfect* in the first table.

**392. Mood in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.** [See 301, 302, 305, 306.]—In changing from *direct* to *indirect discourse*, if the main clause contains a *statement (indicative)*, the verb of this clause is turned into an *infinitive*; if the main clause contains an *imperative* or its *equivalent*, the verb is turned into a *subjunctive*; all *subordinate verbs* are put in the *subjunctive*; as,

1. (a) Statement in O. R.:

Caesar dicit: 'In officiō Gallōs Caesar says: 'I will keep the  
continēbō,' Gauls in allegiance'



(b) Statement in O. O.:

**Caesar dicit sē in officiō Gallōs contentūrū esse,** *Caesar says that he will keep, etc.*

(c) Statement in O. O.:

**Caesar dixit sē in officiō Gallōs contentūrū esse,** *Caesar said that he would keep, etc.*

2. (a) Affirmative command in O. R.:

**Caesar respondet: 'Continēte Gallōs in officiō,'** *Caesar replies: 'Keep the Gauls in allegiance'*

(b) Affirmative command in O. O.:

**Caesar respondet in officiō Gallōs contineant,** *Caesar replies that they must<sup>1</sup> keep the Gauls in allegiance*

(c) Affirmative command in O. O.:

**Caesar respondit in officiō Gallōs continērent,** *Caesar replied that they should keep, etc.*

3. (a) Negative command in O. R.:

**'Nōlite inferre quam iniūriam hīs,'** *'Do not inflict any harm upon these people'*

(b) Negative command in O. O.:

**Caesar dicit nē hīs quam iniūriam inferant,** *Caesar says that they must not inflict, etc.*

(c) Negative command in O. O.:

**Caesar dixit nē hīs quam iniūriam inferrent,** *Caesar said that they must not, etc.*

**393.** Compare (1) *a* and *b*: the *first person*, 'I,' becomes *third person*, 'he'; the *indicative* becomes *infinitive*, time remaining *future*. Compare (2) *a*, *b*, and *c*: when *a* is changed to *b*, the *mood* of the *verb* changes, but the *tense* remains *present*; when *a* becomes *c*, though both *mood* and *tense* are changed, the imperfect **continērent** denotes the *same time* (in its new relation) as is indicated by the verb *keep* in *a*. (See *table* and *rule of sequence*.)

---

<sup>1</sup> should.

## 894.

## EXERCISE.

1. Caesar says: 'I cannot (present indicative of *possum*) cross the river because the enemy have destroyed the bridge': [write again in O. O. *twice*: *first* after 'Caesar says,' and *second* after 'Caesar said.'] 2. 'Give me a large number of hostages': [write again in O. O. *two ways*: *first*, Caesar informs the enemy that they must give *him*, etc.; *second*, Caesar *informed*, etc.] 3. 'Do not deprive the Aedui of their arms' (*ablative* of separation): [put in O. O.: Caesar *tells* and *told* his generals *not to*, etc.]

## LESSON LXXV.

## HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

**895. Hortatory subjunctive.**—The simple *subjunctive* of *exhortation* or *command*, called the 'Hortatory (from *hortor*) Subjunctive,' is used in the *present tense* and in the *first* or *third persons*. It is usually translated by '*let*' placed before the meaning of the verb; as, *contendāmus*, *let us hasten*; *retineant memoriā virtūtis*, *let them retain the memory of (keep in mind) their courage*.

When turned into O. O. (indirect discourse) the hortatory subjunctive *remains subjunctive*, being *present* in form after a verb of saying, etc., whose tense does *not* indicate *past time*, but *imperfect* when the tense of the verb of saying *does* indicate *past time*; as,

'*Hostēs congrediātur!*'

'*Let the enemy engage!*'

Caesar dicit hostēs congredi-  
antur,

Caesar says, let the enemy en-  
gage

Caesar dixit hostēs congrede-  
rentur,

Caesar said, let the enemy en-  
gage

**896. Conditionals in indirect discourse.**—In O. O. all difference in form between the *more vivid* and the *less*

*vivid future condition* is effaced, the verb of the *apodosis* in both being rendered by the *future infinitive*, and that of the *protasis* going into the *subjunctive*.

1. O. R. *If hostages are given to me, I will make peace.* This (the more vivid future) is written in *two ways*: see (223).

(a) *Sī obsidēs mihi dabuntur, pācem faciam*; [dabuntur = future, *unfinished* time.]

(b) *Sī obsidēs mihi datī erunt, pācem faciam*; [datī erunt = future-perfect, time *finished* in the *future before another future action*.]

When written after *dīcit*, (a) becomes [O. O.]:

(c) *Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi dentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

Written after *dīxit*, (a) becomes [O. O.]:

(d) *Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi darentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

Written after *dīcit*, (b) becomes [O. O.]:

(e) *Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi datī sint, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

Written after *dīxit*, (b) becomes [O. O.]:

(f) *Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi datī essent, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

2. O. R. *If hostages should be given to me, I would make peace* (less vivid future): see (335).

(a) *Sī obsidēs mihi dentur, pācem faciam* (*present subjunctive*).

Written after *dīcit*, it is:

(b) *Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi dentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

Written after *dīxit*, it is:

(c) *Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi darentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

Compare (b) and (c) in the *less vivid* with (c) and (d) in the *more vivid*.

397. Subordinate clauses depending upon *infinitive verbs* in *indirect discourse* get their *sequence* usually from the *main verb of saying, telling, etc.*, rather than from the *infinitive*; as,

Caesar dicit sē finitimīs imperātūrum nē Aeduīs iniū- riam inferant ( <i>present</i> ),	Caesar says that he will command—Caesar said that he would command—their neighbours not to do violence to the Aedui
Caesar dixit sē finitimīs imperātūrum nē Aeduīs iniū- riam inferrent ( <i>imperfect</i> ),	

398.

## EXERCISE.

1. If the scouts sent forward during (in) the first watch inform Caesar in what direction the enemy are fleeing, Caesar will pursue without delay with all his forces: [*'sent forward,'* p. p. p. agreeing with the *subject*; *'inform,'* render by *future indicative*; *'in what direction,'* *quam in partem*; *'are fleeing,'* subjunctive, see (313).]
2. Write the above sentence after Caesar dixit thus: Caesar said that, if the scouts . . . *informed him in what direction . . . were fleeing, he would pursue . . . , etc.*

399.

## REVIEW VOCABULARY.

## LESSONS LXIII—LXXV.

1. *suprā* (adv.), *above*
2. *successus, successūs* (mas.), *advance*
3. *postea* (adv.), *afterwards*
4. *rūsus* (adv.), *again*
5. *sōlus, sōla, sōlum* (adj.), *alone or only*
6. *in* (prep. with the *abl.*), *among*
7. *diūtius* (adv.), *longer*
8. *ut (utī)* (conj.), *as or so that*
9. *cum primum*, *as soon as*
10. *ūnō tempore*, *at one and the same time*
11. *insigne, insignis* (neut.), *badge*
12. *praesum, praeesse, praefuī*, *be in command of*

13. **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum**, *bear*
14. **coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum** (defective verb), *begin*
15. **post** (prep. with the *acc.*), *behind* or *after*
16. **audācter** (adv.), *boldly*
17. **addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum**, *bring (to)*
18. **negōtium, negōtiū** (neut.), *business*
19. **sed etiam** (conj.), *but also*
20. **captīvus, captivī** (mas.), *captive*
21. **potior, potirī, potītus sum** *capture*
22. **centuriō, centuriōnis** (mas.), *centurion*
23. **certus, certa, certum** (adj.), *certain*
24. **tegimentum, tegimentī** (neut.), *covering*
25. **dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris** (mas.), *defender*
26. **dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātum**, *despair*,  
*cease to hope*
27. **octō** (indeclin. num. adj.), *eight*
28. **negōtium dare**, *employ*
29. **cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum** (depon.), *encourage*
30. **hostis, hostis** (mas.), *enemy*
31. **longē** (adv.), *far*
32. **vereor, verērī, veritus sum** (depon.), *fear*
33. **pābulum, pābulī** (neut.), *fodder*
34. **nam** (conj.), *for*
35. **vīs, vīs** (fem.), *force* or *vigor*
36. **vadum, vadī** (neut.), *ford*
37. **superior, superior, superius** (adj.), *former*
38. **crēber, crēbra, crēbrum** (adj.), *frequent*
39. **manus, manūs** (fem.), *hand* or *band*
40. **plūrimum posse, plūrimum valēre**, *have very great*  
*power*
41. **prōgressus, -a, -um** (perf. particip. of **prōgredior**),  
*having advanced*
42. **adortus, -a, -um** (perf. particip. of **adorior**), *having*  
*attacked*
43. **collātus, -a, -um** (perf. particip. of **cōnferō**), *having*  
*been collected*
44. **subsecūtus** (perf. particip. of **subsequor**), *having fol-*  
*lowed after, having pursued*

45. **impeditus, -a, -um** (perf. particip. of **impediō**), *hindered*
46. **ego** (personal pron. first person), *I*
47. **auctōritās, auctōritātis** (fem.), *influence*
48. **certiōrem facere** (followed by the *acc.* and *infin.*), *inform*
49. **iniūria, iniūriae** (fem.), *injury*
50. **ita utī** (adv.), *just as*
51. **minus** (adv.), *less*
52. **minus facile** (adv.), *less easily*
53. **mercātor, mercātōris**, *merchant*
54. **ad** (prep. with the *acc.*), *near*
55. **necessārius, necessāria, necessārium** (adj.), *necessary*
56. **nōn modo** (conj.), *not only*
57. **magistrātus, magistrātūs** (mas.), *officer*
58. **adversus, adversa, adversum** (adj.), *opposite*
59. **passus, passa, passum** (adj.), *outstretched*
60. **passus, passūs** (mas.), *pace*
61. **persuādeō, persuādere, persuāsī, persuāsum, persuade**
62. **praefficere** (with *acc.* and *dat.*), *place in command over*
63. **populor, populārī, populātus sum** (depon.), *plunder*
64. **regiō, regiōnis** (fem.), *region*
65. **opīniō, opīniōnis** (fem.), *report*
66. **cēterī, cēterae, cētera** (adj.), *the rest*
67. **excursiō, excursiōnis** (fem.), *sally*
68. **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, see**
69. **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (intensive pron.), *he or self*
70. **brevitās, brevitātis** (fem.), *shortness*
71. **cum** (conj.), *since*
72. **parvulus, parvula, parvulum** (adj.), *slight*
73. **tam** (adv.), *so, such*
74. **Suessiōnēs, Suessiōnum** (mas.), *Suessiones*
75. **decimus, decima, decimum** (num. adj.), *tenth*
76. **condiciō, condiciōnis** (fem.), *terms*
77. **tum, inde, deinde** (adverbs), *then*
78. **mille** (indecl. adj.; noun in plur.), **mīlia, mīlium**, *thousand*
79. **sub vesperum**, *towards evening*
80. **dē imprōvisō**, *unexpectedly*

81. *ūsus, ūsus* (mas.), *use*

82. *ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum*, *to use*

83. *complūrēs, complūrēs, complūra* (-ia) (adj.), *very many*

84. *incrēdibilis, incrēdibilis, incrēdibile* (adj.), *incredible*

## SPECIMENS OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**400. O. O.** (Caesar, Book II, Chapt. 32.)—Ad haec Caesar respondit: ‘Sē magis cōsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nervīis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam inferrent.’

**401. O. R.**—‘Magis cōsuētūdine *meā* quam meritō *vestrō* civitātem *cōservābō*, sī, prius quam mūrum ariēs *attigerit*, *vōs dēdideritis*; sed dēditiōnis *nūlla est condiō* nisi armīs trāditīs. Id quod in Nervīis *fēcī faciam*, finitimisque *imperābō* nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam *inferant*.’

**402. O. O.** (Caesar, Book I, Chapt. 13.)—Is respondit: ‘Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset: sīn bellō persequi persevērāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodi populī Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsissent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret: sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneციōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.’

**403. O. R.**—‘*Sī pacem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī, ubi eōs cōstitueris*’ atque esse *volueris*: sīn bellō persequī *perseverābit, reminiscere* (*imperative*) et veteris incommodī populi Rōmānī et pristinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum eī quī flūmen *trānsierant* suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, *nōlī* ob eam rem aut  *tuae* māgnopere virtūtī *tribuere* [*nē tribueris*], aut *nōs dēspicere*: *nōs* ita ā patribus māiōribusque *nostrīs didicimus* ut magis virtūte *contendāmus* quam dolō aut insidiīs *nītāmur*. Quā rē *nōlī committere* ut is locus ubi *cōstitimus* ex calamitāte populi Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen *capiat* aut memoriam *prōdat*.’

**404. O. O.** (Caesar, Book I, Chapt. 35.)—Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad Ariovistum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātis mittit: (line 7) ‘haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: primum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Aeduīs redderet, Sēquanisque permitteret ut quōs illī habērent voluntāte ēius reddere illīs liceret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiām atque amicitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē (. . . . line 25) Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglētūrum.’

**405. O. R.**—‘*Haec sunt* quae ab eō *postulō*: primum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum trādūcat; [*let him not lead across*’—hortatory subjunc.] deinde, obsidēs quōs *habet* ab Aeduīs *reddat*, [*let him*

<sup>1</sup> In the treatment of this passage in direct discourse, we regard Caesar as addressed in person and place the main verbs in the second pers. sing.; thus, ‘Where thou, O Caesar, shalt place us,’ etc. In order to retain the second person of the verb, the form *reminiscere* is given, rather than *reminiscat*.



return,'] Sēquanisque *permittat* ut quōs illi *habeant* voluntate eius reddere illis *liceat*; nēve Aeduōs iniuriā *lacet*, nēve his sociisque eōrum bellum *inferat*. Si id ita *fecerit*, *michi* populōque Rōmānō *perpetua grātia* atque *amīcitia* cum eō *erit*; si nōn *impetrābō*, ego . . . . . Aeduōrum iniuriās nōn *neglegam*.'

406. O. O. (Caesar, Book II, Chapt. 14.)—Prō his Dīvi-tiācus . . . facit verba: 'Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitīā civitātis Aeduae fuisse: impulsōs ā suis principibus, quī dicerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redactōs omnīs indignitātēs contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsiliī principēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitatem civitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgis-sse. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō his Aeduōs ut suā clēmentīā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduōrum auctōritatem apud omnēs Belgās ampli-ficātūrum, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inci-derint, sustentāre cōsuērunt.'

407. O. B.—'Bellovacī omnī tempore in fidē atque amī-citiā civitātis Aeduae *fuērunt*: impulsī ā suis principibus, quī *dicēbant* Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redactōs omnīs indignitātēs contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs *dēfēcē-runt* et populō Rōmānō bellum *intulērunt*. (Eī) quī eius cōsiliī principēs *fuērant*, quod *intellegēbant* quantam calamitatem civitātī intulissent, in Britanniam *profūgē-runt*. *Petunt* nōn solum Bellovacī sed etiam prō his Aeduī ut tuā clēmentīā ac mānsuetūdine in eōs ūtāris. Quod si *feceris*, Aeduōrum auctōritatem apud omnēs Belgās *amplificābis*, quōrum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella *incidērunt*, sustentāre cōsuērunt.'

## LESSON LXXVI.

## CAESAR, BOOK II, CHAPTER I, ADAPTED AND SIMPLIFIED.

*The Belgae conspire against Caesar.*

408.—Cum esset Caesar in citeriøre Galliā<sup>1</sup> in hiberniis,<sup>1</sup> ita uti<sup>2</sup> suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, litteriis<sup>3</sup> Labiēni certior<sup>4</sup> fiēbat omnēs Belgās<sup>5</sup> contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē<sup>6</sup> dare. Belgae coniūrābant primum, quod verēbantur nē<sup>7</sup> omnī Galliā pācātā<sup>8</sup> ad<sup>9</sup> eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde,<sup>10</sup> quod sollicitābantur ab<sup>11</sup> nōnnūllis Gallis quī, ut nōluerant<sup>12</sup> Germānōs<sup>13</sup> diūtius in Galliā versārī, ita<sup>14</sup> exercitum<sup>15</sup> populī Rōmāni hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā nōlēbant.

409.—After Caesar had come<sup>1</sup> into hither Gaul, Labienus informed<sup>2</sup> him that all the Belgians had been incited<sup>3</sup> by the Gauls<sup>4</sup> and had conspired<sup>5</sup> against the Roman people. Some Gauls who feared that<sup>6</sup> all Gaul would be subdued<sup>7</sup> by our army<sup>8</sup> incited the Belgians with whom<sup>9</sup> they conspired against Caesar.

408.—<sup>1</sup> Adverbial phrases, modifying *esset*. <sup>2</sup> *ita uti*, 'just as.' <sup>3</sup> 'Abl. of means'; see (43). <sup>4</sup> *certior* + *pass.* (see 338); notice the force of the *imperf.*, 'he was being informed.' <sup>5</sup> Acc. subj. (indir. disc.) of *coniurare* and *dare*; see (301, 302, 318). <sup>6</sup> *inter se dare*, 'were exchanging.' <sup>7</sup> With verb of fear; see (343). <sup>8</sup> Abl. absol. <sup>9</sup> 'against them.' <sup>10</sup> Mod. *coniurabant*; 'in the second place they kept conspiring.' <sup>11</sup> Pers. agent; see (237). <sup>12</sup> *ut* + indic. = 'as'; note the force of the pluperf., 'as they had been unwilling.' <sup>13</sup> Acc. subj. of *versari*; 'that the Germans should remain.' <sup>14</sup> *ita nolebant*; see the force of the *imperf.*, 'were unwilling.' <sup>15</sup> Acc. subj. of the two following infinitives, 'that the army of . . . should winter,' etc.

409.—<sup>1</sup> *cum* + *pluperf.* subjunc.; see (263). <sup>2</sup> *certiorem* + *act.*; see (333): why *eum*, not *se*? see (214). <sup>3</sup> Notice that the voice is *pass.*; indir. disc.; see (301, 302, 305, 318). <sup>4</sup> Pers. agent; see (237). <sup>5</sup> The active voice, *indir. disc.* <sup>6</sup> Verbs of fear; see (343). <sup>7</sup> Sequence of tense; see (135). <sup>8</sup> Abl. of means without a preposition; see (43). <sup>9</sup> *cum*, 'with,' is post-positive with the personal pronouns and the relative; *quibuscum*.

## LESSON LXXVII.

## CHAPTER I, CONTINUED.

*Additional reasons for the conspiracy. Caesar's preparations.*

410.—Belgae sollicitābantur partim ab eīs qui mōbilitāte<sup>1</sup> et levitāte<sup>1</sup> animi novīs imperiis<sup>2</sup> studēbant: partim ab nōnnūllis etiam, quod<sup>3</sup> in Galliā vulgō rēgna<sup>4</sup> ā potentiōribus<sup>5</sup> atque eīs<sup>6</sup> qui ad condūcendōs<sup>7</sup> hominēs facultātēs habēbant occupābantur. Hīs nūntiis litterisque commōtus<sup>8</sup> Caesar duās legiōnēs novās in citeriōre Galliā cōscripsit et Pedium lēgātum qui<sup>9</sup> inītā<sup>10</sup> aestāte eās legiōnēs in interiōrem Galliam dēdūceret<sup>11</sup> mīsīt.

411.—Those<sup>1</sup> by<sup>2</sup> whom the Belgians were incited desired a revolution.<sup>3</sup> By hiring<sup>4</sup> men the more powerful<sup>5</sup> generally seized sovereignty<sup>6</sup> in Gaul. These messages alarmed Caesar, by<sup>7</sup> whom two new legions were quickly enrolled. Pedius his lieutenant *is sent*<sup>8</sup> to lead<sup>9</sup> those legions into Gaul.

## LESSON LXXVIII.

## CHAPTER II.

*Caesar leads his army into the country of the Belgae.*

412.—Caesar ipse, cum primum<sup>1</sup> cōpia pābuli esse inciperet,<sup>2</sup> ad exercitum vēnit. Dat<sup>3</sup> negōtium Senonibus<sup>4</sup>

410.—<sup>1</sup> Ablatives of *cause*; see (210): 'on account of fickleness,' etc. <sup>2</sup> Dat. indir. obj. of *studēbant*; see 'dat. with special verbs' (348). <sup>3</sup> Goes with *occupābantur*. <sup>4</sup> Neut. plur. subj. of *occupābantur*; 'sovereignty was being seized.' <sup>5</sup> 'Adjs. as substantives'; see (258). <sup>6</sup> 'Gerundive construction'; see (258). <sup>7</sup> See (316): begin the translation with this word, 'alarmed greatly by . . . Caesar enrolled.' <sup>8</sup> 'Rel. clause of purpose'; see (311). <sup>9</sup> From *ineo*, p. p. abl. absol. with *aestate*. <sup>10</sup> Sequence? see (135).

411.—<sup>1</sup> Adjectives used as substantives'; see (258). <sup>2</sup> a. <sup>3</sup> *novis imperiis*; see note 2, (410). <sup>4</sup> Gerundive construction; see (258). <sup>5</sup> See note 4, (410). <sup>6</sup> Note the change of tense. <sup>7</sup> 'Rel. clause of purpose'; see (311) and (355).

412.—<sup>1</sup> 'as soon as.' <sup>2</sup> 'began': *copia* the subj. <sup>3</sup> Historical present. <sup>4</sup> See *negotium do* (330).

reliquisque Gallis qui erant finitimis Belgis, uti ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant seque de his rebus certiorum faciant. Re frumentaria comparata castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

413.—Caesar himself will come to the army because there is a supply of fodder. He employed the Senones to find out those things which the Belgians were doing. Caesar informed his men that he would obtain a supply of corn and would break camp within five days.

## LESSON LXXIX.

### CHAPTER III.

*The Remi refuse to enter the league against Caesar.*

414.—Eo cum Caesar venisset, Remi qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt ad eum legatos primos civitatis miserunt, qui dicerent: 'se suae omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensuisse neque contra populum Romanum coniuravisse.' Legati, cum pervenissent, nuntiaverunt civitatem paratam esse et obsides dare et imperata

<sup>1</sup> Nom. predicate. <sup>2</sup> uti . . . cognoscant, faciant following dat negotium; see (380); note the sequence. <sup>3</sup> Obj. of cognoscant; see (258). <sup>4</sup> Intermediate rel. clause, subjunc. by attraction; see (276). <sup>5</sup> Reflexive; refers to the subj. of the main verb dat (negotium). <sup>6</sup> Abl. absol. <sup>7</sup> Abl. of time within which; see (65).

413.—<sup>1</sup> Intensive pron. ipse. <sup>2</sup> Omit. <sup>3</sup> Be careful as to sequence; 'employed' is past; see notes 4 and 6, (412). <sup>4</sup> Subjunc. by attraction; notice that this verb is in the active voice. <sup>5</sup> Omit 'men' and use the proper form of sum. <sup>6</sup> Fut. infin. act., with subj. se ('he'); see (318), example 3. <sup>7</sup> Abl. of time within which; see (65).

414.—<sup>1</sup> 'thither.' <sup>2</sup> See 'dat. with adjs.'; (126). <sup>3</sup> See (258): 'the foremost men.' <sup>4</sup> Not 'who said,' but 'who should (were to) say'; see (311). <sup>5</sup> Acc. obj. of permittere; the subj. of permittere is se understood. <sup>6</sup> Equivalent to a fut.; 'that they would place themselves . . . under the protection,' etc. <sup>7</sup> 'and not,' and that they had not united . . . nor (neque) had they conspired.' <sup>8</sup> 'After (cum) the ambassadors had arrived, they announced.' <sup>9</sup> Acc. pred. after esse. <sup>10</sup> 'Both.'

facere et oppidis eum accipere ac frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre.

415.—The foremost<sup>1</sup> men of their state will be sent to Caesar as ambassadors<sup>2</sup> by the Remi to say<sup>3</sup> that they<sup>4</sup> will receive him<sup>5</sup> in their towns. Because they had not conspired and were<sup>6</sup> ready to give up themselves and all their possessions,<sup>7</sup> the Remi aided Caesar with the corn<sup>8</sup> which they had brought from<sup>9</sup> the fields of the Sequani.

## LESSON LXXX.

### CHAPTER III, CONTINUED.

*The Remi inform Caesar concerning the number of the enemies' forces.*

416.—Rēmī dīxērunt reliquōs<sup>1</sup> omnēs in armīs esse,<sup>2</sup> Germānōsque<sup>3</sup> quī cis Rhēnum incolant<sup>4</sup> sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque<sup>5</sup> esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut<sup>6</sup> nē Suessiōnēs quidem,<sup>7</sup> frātrēs cōsanguineōsque suōs, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsentirent.<sup>8</sup> Cum Caesar ab<sup>9</sup> hīs quaereret quae cīvitatēs quantaeque in armīs essent<sup>10</sup> et quid<sup>11</sup> in bellō possent,<sup>12</sup> sic reperiebāt.

417.—When<sup>1</sup> the Germans united<sup>2</sup> with the Belgians, the Remi sent ambassadors to Caesar, who said<sup>3</sup> that they were

415.—<sup>1</sup> See (258) and note 3. (414). <sup>2</sup> Appositive. <sup>3</sup> Affirmative purpose. <sup>4</sup> se. <sup>5</sup> eum. <sup>6</sup> Imperf. indic. <sup>7</sup> Omit. <sup>8</sup> Abl. of means; see (48). <sup>9</sup> ex.

416.—<sup>1</sup> Used as a substantive, subj. of esse. <sup>2</sup> 'were.' <sup>3</sup> Acc. subj. of coniūnxisse; 'and that the Germans... had united.' <sup>4</sup> Subjunc. because a subord. verb in indir. disc.: incolant in the direct; see (306). <sup>5</sup> Connects coniūnxisse and the esse following. <sup>6</sup> ut... potuerint, affirmative result; in clauses of result, the perf. subjunc. is very often used after past tenses; 'that they (the Remi) could not hinder even the Suessiones.' <sup>7</sup> ne... quidem, 'not even'; emphasize the word between them. <sup>8</sup> quīn + subjunc. (clause of result) following dēterrēre; see (370). <sup>9</sup> 'of these.' <sup>10</sup> essent, possent; subjunctives of indir. quest.; see (313): essent = 'were.' <sup>11</sup> quid; adverbial accusative with possent; see (374): quid... possent = 'what they could do,' or 'how much power they had.'

417.—<sup>1</sup> Use ubi; see (208, 358). <sup>2</sup> se coniungo. <sup>3</sup> dixerunt.

not able<sup>4</sup> to prevent their own brothers and kinsmen from conspiring.<sup>5</sup> Caesar finds out<sup>6</sup> what and how great states are<sup>7</sup> under arms and what<sup>8</sup> they can do<sup>9</sup> in war.

## LESSON LXXXI.

### CHAPTER IV.

#### *The origin and power of the Belgae.*

418.—Caesar reperiēbat plērōsque<sup>1</sup> Belgās ab Germānīs ortōs esse<sup>2</sup> Rhēnumque<sup>3</sup> antīquitus trāductōs<sup>4</sup> propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōs<sup>5</sup>que<sup>6</sup> quī ea loca incolerent<sup>7</sup> expulisse. Caesar reperiēbat Belgās sōlōs<sup>8</sup> esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finīs ingredi<sup>9</sup> prohibuerint.<sup>10</sup>

419.—The Gauls were driven<sup>1</sup> out of those places which<sup>2</sup> they were inhabiting by the Belgians<sup>3</sup> whose fathers were descended from<sup>4</sup> the Germans. The Belgians were led across<sup>5</sup> the Rhine in olden times and<sup>6</sup> drove out the Gauls who could not prevent<sup>7</sup> them from seizing<sup>8</sup> a large part of Gaul.

<sup>1</sup> 'they were not able' = *se non posse*. <sup>2</sup> *quī* + *impf. subjunc.*; see (370). <sup>3</sup> Pres. indic. of *reperio*. <sup>4</sup> Indir. quest.: for mood, see (313); for tense, see (135). <sup>5</sup> *quid*; see note 12 (416): note the change in the *tense*.

418.—<sup>1</sup> 'that most of the Belgians.' <sup>2</sup> 'were descended.' <sup>3</sup> Connects *ortos esse* and *consedis*, with *Belgas* as the subj. <sup>4</sup> p. p. p. mod. *Belgas*; see (316). <sup>5</sup> Dir. obj. of *expulisse*. <sup>6</sup> Connects *consedis* and *expulisse*, having *Belgas* as the subj. <sup>7</sup> Subord. verb in O. O.; see (306). <sup>8</sup> 'were the only ones': after *solus sum*, even in O. R., the mood of the relative clause is generally *subjunc.* <sup>9</sup> 'from entering'; see (370). <sup>10</sup> *Subjunc.*; subord. clause in indir. disc.: strictly speaking it is a *rel. clause of characteristic*, which takes the *subjunc.*; see note 8. Observe that the *perf. subjunc.* is here used after the *past tense*; see (416), note 6.

419.—<sup>1</sup> Perf. indic. pass. <sup>2</sup> For *gend. of the rel.* see (39), foot-note 1. <sup>3</sup> Person. agent; see (237). <sup>4</sup> *a* or *ab*. <sup>5</sup> Change to p. p. p.; see (381), and text above. <sup>6</sup> Omit. <sup>7</sup> 'could not prevent,' *impedire non poterant*. <sup>8</sup> *quī* + *subjunc.*; see (370) and text.

## LESSON LXXXII.

## CHAPTER V.

*The Remi surrender hostages and give aid to Caesar.*

420.—Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus 'liberāliterque' orātione prōsecūtus 'omnem senātum' ad sē convenire prīncipum-que liberōs 'obsidēs' ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae 'omnia ab hīs diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse' Dīvitiācum Aeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet 'sē manūs hostium distentūrum' esse, nē<sup>10</sup> cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tempore cōflīgendum sit.<sup>11</sup>

421.—Caesar urged 'the Remi to bring' their children as hostages and to do 'all those' things which they had promised.<sup>4</sup> After 'Caesar had addressed the Remi kindly, all their senate was ordered' to gather together before him. Caesar will not join 'in battle, unless the bands of the enemy are kept apart.'

420.—<sup>1</sup> Depon. perf. participles mod. Caesar; see (340): *prosecutus* = 'having addressed.' <sup>2</sup> Connects *cohortatus* and *prosecutus*. <sup>3</sup> Acc. subj. of *convenire*, clause depending upon *iussit*; 'he ordered their whole senate to assemble before him.' <sup>4</sup> Acc. subj. of *adduci*. <sup>5</sup> Apposition with *liberos*. <sup>6</sup> Relative at the beginning of the sent.; 'now (and) all of these things'; see (367). <sup>7</sup> Intensive pron., 'Caesar himself.' <sup>8</sup> 'states,' verb of saying or declaring followed by *acc.* + *infin.* <sup>9</sup> Subject is *se*, 'that he will keep apart.' <sup>10</sup> Neg. purpose clause; see (320) <sup>11</sup> Pres. subjunc. *pass.* of the periphrastic conjugation; see (361); here an *impersonal verb*, see (365): 'so that it may not have to be fought'; more freely, 'that he may not have to fight.'

421.—<sup>1</sup> Perf. indic. of *cohortor*; see (347). <sup>2</sup> Be careful as to the sequence; at the time he urged them, the action implied in 'bringing the children' and 'doing the things' was incomplete, unfinished and as yet in the future. <sup>3</sup> See (258) <sup>4</sup> Subjunc. by attraction; note the sequence, the action in 'had promised' being completed; see (276). <sup>5</sup> Historical *cum*; see (203, 259, 263). <sup>6</sup> Perf. indic. *pass.* of *iubeo*. <sup>7</sup> *ad* + *acc.* <sup>8</sup> Use the phrase *proellum committere*, *proellum* being *accus.* <sup>9</sup> 'are kept apart,' verb in the *protasis* of a *more viv. fut. condition*; write this in two tenses; see (223).

## LESSON LXXXIII.

## CHAPTER V, CONTINUED.

*Caesar hastens forward to meet the Belgae.*

**422.**—Sī Aeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum suās cōpiās intrōdūxerint<sup>1</sup> et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint,<sup>2</sup> id fieri poterit. Caesar postquam<sup>3</sup> omnīs<sup>4</sup> Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās<sup>5</sup> ad sē venīre vidit, et ab<sup>6</sup> eīs explōrātōribus quōs miserat et ab<sup>7</sup> Rēmīs eās cōpiās iam nōn longē abesse<sup>8</sup> cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum finibus exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit.

**423.**—If the forces of the Aedui are led<sup>1</sup> into the boundaries of the Bellovaci, these<sup>2</sup> things will be done.<sup>3</sup> When<sup>4</sup> scouts informed<sup>5</sup> Caesar that the forces of the Belgians were being collected,<sup>6</sup> he prepared to cross the river. While the Belgians were gathering all their forces into one place, Caesar led his army across the river. After<sup>7</sup> all the forces of the Belgians had been gathered together, Caesar led his army into the farthest territories of the Remi.

---

**422.**—<sup>1</sup> *More vivid fut.*; see (223). <sup>2</sup> Introduces *vidit* and *cognovit*, joined by *et*; see (358): 'when C. saw that... and found out that...'. <sup>3</sup> *omnis*: acc. plur. = *omnes*. <sup>4</sup> p. p. p. mod. *copias*, translated by a *finite verb*, 'had been collected and were coming'; see (381). <sup>5</sup> Adverbial phrases mod. *cognovit*; 'when he found out from those scouts,' etc. <sup>6</sup> Indir. disc. depend upon *cognovit*: 'that those forces were now... distant.' <sup>7</sup> Does *quod* refer to and agree with *Axonam* or *flumen*, and why?

**423.**—<sup>1</sup> Place in two tenses; see (223). <sup>2</sup> Neut. plur. as noun, omit *things*. <sup>3</sup> The *pass.* of *facio* is *fio*: place in the fut. indic. <sup>4</sup> *ubi* + *indic.*; see (203). <sup>5</sup> *certiorem* + *act.*; see (333). <sup>6</sup> Indir. disc. (main-verb) after *certiorem fecerunt*, which is taken as a verb of *saying*; what *voice* and *time* are indicated? <sup>7</sup> Render by abl. absol.; see (287), example 3.



## LESSON LXXXIV.

## CHAPTER VI.

*The Belgae attack a town of the Remi. Mode of attack.*

424.—Ab hīs<sup>1</sup> castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia<sup>2</sup> passuum octō. Id ex itinere<sup>3</sup> māgnō impetū<sup>4</sup> Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.<sup>5</sup> Ubi, multitudine<sup>6</sup> hominum tōtis moenibus<sup>7</sup> circumiectā,<sup>8</sup> undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci<sup>9</sup> coepti sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus<sup>9</sup> nūdātus est, testūdine<sup>10</sup> factā portās succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod<sup>11</sup> tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent,<sup>12</sup> in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nulli.<sup>13</sup>

425.—While the Belgians were attacking the town which<sup>1</sup> had<sup>2</sup> tall fortifications, a testudo was made so that they might draw near<sup>3</sup> the wall. After stones and javelins had been thrown<sup>4</sup> from all sides upon the wall and the wall had been stripped<sup>5</sup> of defenders, the townsmen<sup>6</sup> did not have<sup>7</sup> the power of holding out any longer. Since<sup>8</sup> the townsmen saw (were seeing) that so great a multitude were throwing stones and javelins upon the wall and<sup>9</sup> that they<sup>10</sup> could not<sup>11</sup> hold out longer, they surrendered themselves and all their possessions<sup>12</sup> to the Belgians.<sup>13</sup>

424.—<sup>1</sup> from *this* camp; adverbial phrase limits *ab erat*. <sup>2</sup> Acc. of extent in space; see (342). <sup>3</sup> *ex itinere*, 'turning aside from the march'; making an attack immediately after a march without preparation. <sup>4</sup> Abl. of *manner*, mod. *oppugnare coeperunt*; see (210). <sup>5</sup> Impers. verb; see (365). <sup>6</sup> Abl. absol., 'a multitude of men being thrown around all the walls.' <sup>7</sup> Dat. indir. obj. of *circumiecta*. <sup>8</sup> Pres. pass. infin. of *facio*; with a *pass.* infin. *coepi* is put in the *pass.* <sup>9</sup> Abl. of sep. mod. *nudatus est*; 'of defenders'; see (221). <sup>10</sup> Abl. absol.: a *testudo* was a covering for the soldiers' heads made by overlapping the shields like shingles on a roof, and used in approaching and storming walls. <sup>11</sup> See (367): 'and *this* thing.' <sup>12</sup> Plur., agreeing with *multitudo* taken collectively. <sup>13</sup> See (357): 'power was to no one'—'no one had the power.'

425.—<sup>1</sup> Dat. of possession; see (357). <sup>2</sup> *erat*. <sup>3</sup> Observe the *sequence*. <sup>4</sup> Render both clauses by *abl. absol.*; see (287). <sup>5</sup> *erat*. <sup>6</sup> See 'causal *cum*,' (350). <sup>7</sup> 'and not' = *neque*. <sup>8</sup> *se*, acc. subj. <sup>9</sup> Omit. <sup>10</sup> Dat.

## LESSON LXXXV.

## CHAPTERS VI AND VII.

*The Remi ask aid from Caesar, who sends relief.*

426.—Cum finem oppugnandī nox lēcisset, Iccius Rēmus summā nōbilitate<sup>1</sup> et grātiā<sup>2</sup> inter suōs,<sup>3</sup> quī tum oppidō<sup>4</sup> praefuerat, ūnus<sup>5</sup> ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, ad eum nūntium quī<sup>6</sup> auxilium peteret mīsit. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īdem<sup>7</sup> ducibus<sup>8</sup> ūsus quī nūntiī ab Iccio vēnerant, sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō<sup>9</sup> oppidānīs<sup>10</sup> mittit; quōrum adventū<sup>11</sup> et<sup>12</sup> Rēmīs<sup>13</sup> cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus<sup>14</sup> eādē dē causā spēs potiundī<sup>15</sup> oppidī discessit.

427.—Because of the hope<sup>1</sup> of driving<sup>2</sup> the Belgians out of their territories, the Remi ordered Iccius to go<sup>3</sup> to Caesar as an ambassador and to ask for help. Because Iccius whom<sup>4</sup> the Remi had put in command of their town<sup>5</sup> was friendly to the Roman people,<sup>6</sup> Caesar said he would send<sup>7</sup> archers and slingers as a relief<sup>8</sup> to the town.<sup>9</sup> Now<sup>10</sup> upon the arrival of these<sup>11</sup> the townsmen fought with great courage<sup>12</sup> and<sup>13</sup> the enemy could not<sup>14</sup> storm their town.

---

426.—<sup>1</sup> Ablatives of *quality*; supply *vir* (a man) and translate the *abl.* like the *gen.*; see (376). <sup>2</sup> Adj. used as noun; see (258). <sup>3</sup> See 'dat. with compound verbs'; (337). <sup>4</sup> See (378), 'partitive genitive—exceptions.' <sup>5</sup> Rel. clause of purpose; see (311). <sup>6</sup> Adj. used as noun, obj. (*abl.*) of *usus*; 'using (making use of) the same men'; see (353). <sup>7</sup> Apposition: 'as guides.' <sup>8</sup> Doub. dat.; see (352). <sup>9</sup> Abl. of *cause* mod. *accessit* and *discessit*; 'on account of whose arrival.' <sup>10</sup> 'both.' <sup>11</sup> Dat. indir. obj. of *accessit*; 'eagerness to fight was inspired in the Remi.' <sup>12</sup> Dat. with a verb of *taking away* (*discessit*) instead of the abl. of separation; 'from the enemy.' <sup>13</sup> *potiundi* = *potiendi*: gerundive construction; see (253).

427.—<sup>1</sup> *spe*, an abl. of *cause*. <sup>2</sup> Use *de* and the *abl.* of the gerundive; see (253). <sup>3</sup> 'Iccius to go' = acc. + infn., if *iubeo* is used; *what*, if *impero*? <sup>4</sup> *praeficio* takes acc. and *dat.*; 'whom' to be turned into the acc., 'town' into the *dat.*; see (337). <sup>5</sup> See 'dat. with adjs.'; (126). <sup>6</sup> Indir. disc.; *what time* is indicated? <sup>7</sup> Doub. dat.; see (352). <sup>8</sup> 'now these': render both words by the relative pron.; see (367). <sup>9</sup> Abl. of *manner*; see (210). <sup>10</sup> 'and not' = *neque*.

## LESSON LXXXVI.

## CHAPTER VII, CONTINUED.

*The Belgae abandon the siege and turn against Caesar.*

428.—Itaque paulisper apud<sup>1</sup> oppidum morātī<sup>2</sup> agrōs-  
que Rēmōrum dēpopulātī,<sup>3</sup> omnibus<sup>4</sup> vicīs aedificiisque  
quōs<sup>5</sup> adire potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus  
cōpiīs contendērunt et ab<sup>6</sup> milibus passuum minus duōbus  
castra posuērunt. Quae<sup>7</sup> castra, ut<sup>8</sup> fūmō atque ignibus  
significābātur, amplius<sup>9</sup> milibus<sup>10</sup> passuum octō in lātītū-  
dinem patēbant. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem  
hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis<sup>11</sup> proeliō<sup>12</sup>  
supersedere statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliis<sup>13</sup>  
hostium virtutem periclitābātur.

429.—The Belgians will delay<sup>1</sup> many days<sup>2</sup> near the  
town whose<sup>3</sup> walls they cannot storm so as to lay waste<sup>4</sup>  
the fields of the Remi and burn<sup>5</sup> their buildings. Because  
he saw<sup>6</sup> that the multitude of the enemy was so great,<sup>7</sup>  
Caesar commanded the generals<sup>8</sup> of the infantry to refrain<sup>9</sup>  
from battle. Fearing<sup>10</sup> the power and courage of the

428.—<sup>1</sup> 'near.' <sup>2</sup> Depon. perf. participles mod. *hostes*, the subj. implied in *contenderunt*; see (340). <sup>3</sup> *omnibus . . . incensis*: abl. absol. of *time*, mod. *contenderunt*. <sup>4</sup> *quos*: has two antecedents, *vicis* and *aedificiis*. When the *gender* of two or more antecedents is different, the relative takes the *gender* sometimes of the *strongest* or *most important* word, sometimes that of the *nearest* word; *quos* in this sentence takes the *gender* of *vicis*, the more important noun. <sup>5</sup> *ab . . . duobus*: *ab* is used adverbially, 'off,' i.e., distant from the Roman camp. *milibus duobus*: abl. of *degree of difference*, 'by two thousand,' the abl. being used without reference to the comparative *minus*, which does not affect the construction; the force of *minus* is seen in the translation, 'by two thousand [and] less.' The entire phrase is best translated 'less than two miles off.' <sup>6</sup> 'now this'; see (367). <sup>7</sup> *ut*, 'as.' <sup>8</sup> Accus. of extent in space: see (342). <sup>9</sup> Abl. with the comparative *amplius*; see (369). See the other construction for these neuter comparatives, note 5 above (*minus*). <sup>10</sup> 'for valor.' <sup>11</sup> 'from battle.' <sup>12</sup> Abl. of means mod. *periclitabatur*.

429.—<sup>1</sup> Deponent verb. <sup>2</sup> See (342). <sup>3</sup> Why *gen. sing. neut.*? <sup>4</sup> See (320, 355). <sup>5</sup> Imperf. indic. <sup>6</sup> Pred. adj. after *esse*. <sup>7</sup> See (134, 135, 145). <sup>8</sup> Perf. particip. (depon.).

Belgians who<sup>1</sup> had large forces, Caesar ordered his generals not to begin battle on that day.

## LESSON LXXXVII.

### CHAPTER VIII.

*Caesar protects his camp with strong defences.*

**430.**—Is collis,<sup>1</sup> ubi<sup>2</sup> castra Caesaris posita erant, paululum ex plānitie ēditus<sup>3</sup> in lātitudinem tantum<sup>4</sup> loci<sup>5</sup> patebat quantum aciēs instructa<sup>6</sup> occupāre poterat. Caesar<sup>7</sup> ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs<sup>8</sup> intellēxit, locō<sup>9</sup> prō castris ad aciem instruendam<sup>10</sup> nātūrā opportunō atque idōneō, ab<sup>11</sup> utrōque latere eius collis<sup>12</sup> trānsversam fossam obdūxit. Ad extrēmās fossās<sup>13</sup> castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē,<sup>14</sup> cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs ab lateribus suōs<sup>15</sup> pūgnantēs circumvenīre possent.

**431.**—A place suitable for<sup>1</sup> setting up<sup>2</sup> redoubts and engines of war is chosen by<sup>3</sup> those scouts whom Caesar sent forward during the second watch.<sup>4</sup> Unless Caesar should dig<sup>5</sup> a ditch, the enemy would surround<sup>6</sup> our infantry on their flanks and kill them while (as) they were fighting.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Dat. of possession: see (357).

**430.**—<sup>1</sup> Is collis: 'that hill,' subj. of patebat. <sup>2</sup> 'where.' <sup>3</sup> Limits collis; 'sloping upward gradually from the plain.' <sup>4</sup> Accus. of extent in space; see (342). <sup>5</sup> Partitive gen. with tantum; 'as much ground as (quantum).' <sup>6</sup> Mod. acies; 'an army drawn up for battle.' <sup>7</sup> Order: 'when Caesar perceived . . . he dug,' etc. <sup>8</sup> Adj. in the pred. accus. after esse; 'that our men were not inferior (in courage).' <sup>9</sup> loco . . . idoneo; see (364), example 2. <sup>10</sup> See (253). <sup>11</sup> ab . . . latere: adverbial phrase (latus, lateris), mod. obdūxit. <sup>12</sup> Gen. depend. upon latere. <sup>13</sup> 'at the ends of the ditches.' <sup>14</sup> ne . . . possent: neg. purpose; see (320). <sup>15</sup> suos: adj. used as a substantive modified by pūgnantes (pres. particip.): pūgnans is declined in (467). Translate, 'his men while (as) they were fighting.' The pres. particip. is translated, 'as (while) they are or were fighting.'

**431.**—<sup>1</sup> ad. <sup>2</sup> Gerundive in agreement with the acc.; see (258). <sup>3</sup> Pers. agent; see (237). <sup>4</sup> Abl. of time, without prep. <sup>5</sup> See 'less viv. fut. condition' (335). <sup>6</sup> 'while they were fighting': render by the pres. particip.; why acc.?

Caesar drew up his line of battle upon a hill ' fortified by nature, in order that ' his infantry as they were fighting ' might not ' be surrounded by the enemy.

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

### CHAPTERS VIII AND IX.

*The Belgae encamp opposite Caesar's camp across a marsh.*

482.—Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās' proximē cōscripserat in castris relictis, ut ' sī quō' opus esset ' subsidiō' dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ē castris ēductās ' instrūxerant. Palūs erat nōn' māgna inter nostrum' atque hostium exercitum. Hostēs expectābant sī' hanc nostrī trānsirent; nostrī autem in armis erant parātī ut impeditōs' aggredere-  
rentur, sī ab illis trānseundī initium fieret.<sup>11</sup> Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur.<sup>12</sup> Ubi neutrī initium trānseundī faciunt proeliō<sup>13</sup> equitum nostris secundiōre<sup>14</sup> Caesar in castra suos redūxit.

483.—If Caesar leaves' the two legions, which' were

<sup>7</sup> Abl. of place where with in. <sup>8</sup> 'in order that ... not': neg. purpose; see (320). <sup>9</sup> 'as they were fighting'; render by the pres. particip.; why nom?

482.—<sup>1</sup> Why 'which he had enrolled,' and not 'which had been enrolled'?

<sup>2</sup> ut ... possent: shows the purpose of and derives its sequence from relictis.

<sup>3</sup> quo = adv., 'anywhere'; translate the clause, 'if they were needed anywhere.'

<sup>4</sup> subunc. by attraction; see (276). <sup>5</sup> Dat. of purpose, end or service; 'as (for) a relief.' <sup>6</sup> 'had led out ... and arranged in order'; see (331). <sup>7</sup> A negative with large = 'small.'

<sup>8</sup> Mod. exercitum. <sup>9</sup> Indir. quest. introduced by si, 'whether'; 'kept waiting to see (expectabant) whether our men would cross'; for mood in 'indir. quest.' see (313). <sup>10</sup> p. p. p. mod. eos (hostes), obj. of aggredere-  
rentur; 'to attack them placed at a disadvantage.' <sup>11</sup> si ... fieret: depends upon aggredere-  
rentur. hence subunc. (see note 4); bear in mind that fieret is the passive of facio. <sup>12</sup> Impersonal; see (365). <sup>13</sup> Abl. absol.; see (364), example 2.

483.—<sup>1</sup> Fut. or fut. pf. iudic. (223, 335). <sup>2</sup> Why nominative? Compare this with note 1 (482).

recently enrolled, as a defence<sup>3</sup> to the camp,<sup>4</sup> the enemy will not lead out their forces. If the enemy should try<sup>5</sup> to cross the swamp, our cavalry would surround<sup>6</sup> them on all sides and attack<sup>7</sup> (them). After drawing up<sup>8</sup> all their forces in front of their camp the enemy sent forward cavalry who were to<sup>9</sup> attack the two legions that were left<sup>10</sup> in our camp.

## LESSON LXXXIX.

### CHAPTER IX, CONTINUED.

*The enemy attempt to cross the river and surprise Titurius.*

434.—Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod<sup>1</sup> esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnāti sunt, eō cōnsiliō,<sup>2</sup> ut<sup>3</sup> sī possent<sup>4</sup> castellum cui<sup>5</sup> praeerat Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus<sup>6</sup> potuissent,<sup>7</sup> (ut) agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur<sup>8</sup> quī ad<sup>9</sup> bellum gerendum māgnō ūsuī<sup>10</sup> nobīs<sup>11</sup> erant comēatūque<sup>12</sup> nostrōs prohibērent.<sup>13</sup> Caesar ab Titūriō certior factus<sup>12</sup> omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae<sup>13</sup> Numidās,

<sup>1</sup> Doub. dat.; see (352). <sup>2</sup> Pres. subjunc. in a less viv. fut. condition; see (335). <sup>3</sup> 'would surround'; change to p. p. p., omit *and*, and make *attack* the verb of the apodosis; order, 'would attack (them) surrounded on all sides'; see text (432) and note 10. <sup>4</sup> Render by abl. absol.: 'all their forces having been.' etc.; see (287). <sup>5</sup> 'who were to attack': *rel. clause of purpose*; be careful about the *sequence*; see (311). <sup>6</sup> 'that were left'; render by the p. p. p.

434.—<sup>1</sup> Nom. subj. of *demonstratum est*; 'which has been shown to be in the rear of.' <sup>2</sup> 'with this design (in view).' <sup>3</sup> *ut* . . . *expugnarent, interscinderent*: affirmative purpose and explanatory of *eo consilio*; 'with this design, viz., to storm,' etc. <sup>4</sup> Subjunc. by attraction, time *unfinished* (see *potuissent*, note 7). <sup>5</sup> Dat. with comp. verb. <sup>6</sup> *minus* = *non*. <sup>7</sup> 'if (having made the attempt) they should not have been (should not be) able'; *potuissent* is *pluperf.* to show time finished: since *conati sunt traducere* denotes *past time*, the depend. subjunctives appear in either the *imperf.* or *pluperf.* <sup>8</sup> Introduced by *ut*, explaining *eo consilio* (see note 3). <sup>9</sup> 'for.' <sup>10</sup> Doub. dat.; 'were very useful to us.' <sup>11</sup> Abl. of *separation*. <sup>12</sup> 'Upon being informed (as to this) by Titurius, Caesar leads.' <sup>13</sup> Gen. depend. upon *Numidas*; 'of light equipment.'

funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit.

435.—After<sup>1</sup> the enemy had reached<sup>2</sup> that river on whose banks<sup>3</sup> our camp had been pitched, they attempted to find<sup>4</sup> fords so that they might lead across a part of their forces. By destroying<sup>5</sup> the bridge and storming the redoubts over which<sup>6</sup> Caesar had placed his lieutenant Titurius in command, the enemy will be able to cut off<sup>7</sup> our men from supplies. The enemy will try to cross the river so as to storm the redoubt and cut down the bridge, if they can.<sup>8</sup>

## LESSON XC.

### CHAPTER X.

*The Belgae are defeated in a fierce battle.*

436.—Acriter in eō locō pūgnātum est.<sup>1</sup> Hostēs<sup>2</sup> in flūmine impeditōs<sup>3</sup> nostrī aggressi<sup>4</sup> māgnū eōrum numerum occidērunt; reliquōs<sup>5</sup> per eōrum corpora audāciissimē trānsire cōnantēs<sup>6</sup> nostrī multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōs,<sup>7</sup> quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs<sup>8</sup> interfecerunt. Hostēs ubi<sup>9</sup> et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem<sup>10</sup> sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque<sup>11</sup>

435.—<sup>1</sup> cum. Order: 'the enemy, after they had reached,' etc. <sup>2</sup> pervenio ad + acc. <sup>3</sup> in + abl. <sup>4</sup> Complementary infin. following attempted; verbs which imply another action of the same subject to complete their meaning take the complementary infin. without a subj. acc. <sup>5</sup> Gerundive; see (253). <sup>6</sup> Dat.; why? <sup>7</sup> Pres. infin. act. of prohibeo. <sup>8</sup> Subjunc. by attraction.

436.—<sup>1</sup> Impersonal; see (365). <sup>2</sup> Acc. obj. of aggressi. <sup>3</sup> Mod. hostes; 'the enemy placed at a disadvantage in the river.' <sup>4</sup> Mod. the subj. nostri: 'having attacked . . . our men slew.' <sup>5</sup> Acc. obj. of reppulerunt, whose subj. is nostri. <sup>6</sup> Pres. particip. acc. plur. mod. reliquos (used as noun); 'the rest as they were trying.' <sup>7</sup> Acc. obj. of interfecerunt. <sup>8</sup> Mod. primos, but translated by a coordinate verb; see (381). <sup>9</sup> ubi; see (203, 358); ubi introduces intellexerunt, viderunt, and coepit. <sup>10</sup> Acc. subj. of fefellisse. <sup>11</sup> 'and that our men were not advancing' (progredi).

nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi pūgnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs<sup>12</sup> rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, concilium convocāvērunt.

437.—The enemy hindered in the river were driven back by our men and the foremost were surrounded<sup>1</sup> by the cavalry and killed by the darts of our men. Because<sup>2</sup> hope with respect to crossing the river kept failing<sup>3</sup> the enemy, they decided after calling<sup>4</sup> a council of war to surrender themselves and all their possessions to Caesar. Since<sup>5</sup> the enemy saw<sup>6</sup> that our men had killed<sup>7</sup> the foremost, who had tried<sup>8</sup> very boldly to cross, and were driving back<sup>9</sup> the rest, they sent ambassadors to Caesar with respect to peace.

## LESSON XCI.

### CHAPTER X, CONTINUED.

*The Belgae decide to return home.*

438.—Conciliō convocātō Belgae cōstituērunt optimum<sup>1</sup> esse quemque<sup>2</sup> domum<sup>3</sup> suam revertī et undique convenīre ad<sup>4</sup> eōs dēfendendōs quōrum in finīs primum Rōmānī<sup>5</sup> exercitum intrōdūxissent,<sup>6</sup> ut potius in suis quam in aliēnis

<sup>12</sup> 'themselves,' as distinguished from our men; it is the object of *dēficere*.

437.—<sup>1</sup> Change thus: 'the foremost surrounded . . . were killed.' <sup>2</sup> See (276).

<sup>3</sup> Imperfect. <sup>4</sup> Recast and render by abl. absol.: 'a council having been called, they decided.' <sup>5</sup> Causal *cum*; see (350). <sup>6</sup> *viderent*. <sup>7</sup> For 'tenses of the infin. in indir. disc.,' see (301, 302, 305, 318). <sup>8</sup> Subord. verb. in indir. disc.; see (306).

438.—<sup>1</sup> Superlative of *bonus*; see (472), acc. sing. neut. pred. adj. with *esse* limiting the verbal phrase, *quemque . . . reverti et convenire*, which phrase is the subject of *esse*: 'An infin. may have another verb or a verbal phrase for its subject being *neuter*.' Translate: 'that it was best for each one to return.'

<sup>2</sup> From *quisque*; subj. of *reverti* and *convenire*. <sup>3</sup> Acc. of end or limit of motion *without ad*. <sup>4</sup> 'to defend;' see (355) and example. <sup>5</sup> Subj. of *introduxissent*. <sup>6</sup> Subjunc. mood because it is a subordinate verb in indir. disc., depending indirectly upon *constituerunt*; notice the sequence. This pluperf. subjunc. was *fut. perf. indic.* in the original sentence, conveying the same *time relation* as that of a verb in the protasis of a more vivid fut. condition; see (223).



finibus decertarent; praeterea<sup>7</sup> cognoverant Divitiacum atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare.<sup>8</sup> His<sup>9</sup> persuaderi ut diutius morarentur<sup>10</sup> neque<sup>11</sup> suis<sup>12</sup> auxilium ferrent non poterat.

439.—The Belgians will assemble from all sides to defend<sup>1</sup> those<sup>2</sup> states into which<sup>3</sup> the Romans first lead<sup>4</sup> an army. [Ōrātiō Rēcta]. Scouts inform Caesar that the Belgians will assemble<sup>4</sup> from all sides to defend those states into which the Romans first lead<sup>4</sup> an army. [Ōrātiō Obliqua].

## LESSON XCII.

### CHAPTER XI.

*The Romans pursue and kill many Belgae.*

440.—Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressi,<sup>1</sup> cum<sup>2</sup> sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt<sup>3</sup> ut profectiō cōsimilis fugae<sup>4</sup> vidēretur. Hāc rē per<sup>5</sup> speculātōrēs statim cōgnitā, Caesar insidiās

<sup>7</sup> 'and besides.' <sup>8</sup> 'were drawing near to.' <sup>9</sup> *his*: explained in (380).  
<sup>10</sup> ut . . . morarentur: 'to delay.' <sup>11</sup> 'and not.' <sup>12</sup> Indir. object, 'to their friends.'

439.—<sup>1</sup> *ad + gerundive*; why does the *ending* of this gerundive differ from that of the gerundive in the text above? <sup>2</sup> Why feminine? <sup>3</sup> *Fut. perf. indic.* representing action *completed in the future* before another fut. action; see (223), for tense required to express such time relation in the protasis. If considered an indir. quest., the mood would be subjunc.; what tense (subjunc.) would here represent the fut. perf. indic.? Why not the *pluperf.*, as in the text (438)? <sup>4</sup> Principal verb in O. O. following 'inform'; see (306). <sup>5</sup> Subordinate verb in O. O.; this verb is *fut. perf.* (indic.) in the direct disc.; to what tense is it changed in the indir.? see (306).

440.—<sup>1</sup> Depon. particp.; mod. the *subj. hostes* contained in *fecerunt*; see (340). <sup>2</sup> Causal *cum*; with *peteret* and *properaret* (*subj. quisque*); these clauses mod. *fecerunt*; 'since each man sought for himself'; see (350). <sup>3</sup> *fecerunt ut profectio videretur*; '(the enemy) made their departure seem; literally, 'caused it so that,' etc. <sup>4</sup> See 'dat. with adjs.'; (126). <sup>5</sup> 'by means of.'

veritus,<sup>9</sup> quod<sup>7</sup> nōdum perspēxerat quā dē causā hostēs discēderent,<sup>8</sup> exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Rē ab explōrātōribus cōgnitā, primā lūce omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur mīsīt. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Cottam lēgātōs praefēcīt. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī<sup>9</sup> novissimōs adortī et multa milia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium<sup>10</sup> concidērunt, cum<sup>11</sup> ab extrēmō agmine,<sup>12</sup> ad quōs ventum erat,<sup>13</sup> cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum militum sustinērent.

441.—Because Caesar did not know<sup>7</sup> for what reason the enemy had departed,<sup>8</sup> he decided that he ought<sup>9</sup> to keep his army in camp. By seeking<sup>4</sup> the foremost place on (of) the road they will make their departure seem<sup>6</sup> very much like flight. Caesar informed Labienus that scouts would be sent forward<sup>5</sup> at early dawn.

## LESSON XCIII.

### CHAPTER XII.

*Caesar attacks Noviodunum, which surrenders.*

442.—Postridiē Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum quī proximī<sup>1</sup> Rēmīs erant exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere cōfectō<sup>2</sup> ad

<sup>6</sup> 'fearing.' <sup>7</sup> The quod clause mod. *continuit*. <sup>8</sup> Indir. question; 'for [what reason the enemy were departing.' <sup>9</sup> 'the latter; ' meaning Labienus and his troops. <sup>10</sup> Pres. particip. mod. *eorum*, 'of them as they were fleeing.' <sup>11</sup> Causal cum with *consisterent* and *sustinērent*. <sup>12</sup> 'those in (from) the extreme rear.' <sup>13</sup> Impersonal: 'whom they (our men) overtook,' literally, 'to whom it had been come'; see (365), example 2.

441.—<sup>1</sup> Imperf. indic. <sup>2</sup> Why a *different tense* from that in the text? <sup>3</sup> Recast in the *pass.*, 'that his army ought to be kept by him'; this is explained fully in (361, 362, 363): look up the Latin text for example 3 under, 'dat. of personal agent.' <sup>4</sup> Gerundive; see (253). <sup>5</sup> Why a *different tense* from that in the text? <sup>6</sup> This fut. infin. *pass.* (in O. O.) is expressed by the periphrasis 'it would be that scouts would be sent'; see (382).

442.—<sup>1</sup> Adj. in the pred. nom. followed by the *dat.*; see (126). <sup>2</sup> 'by making a forced march.'

oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id<sup>3</sup> ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod<sup>4</sup> vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucis<sup>5</sup> dēfendentibus expugnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnītis vineās agere<sup>6</sup> quae<sup>7</sup>que ad oppugnandum ūsui<sup>8</sup> erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā<sup>9</sup> Suessiōnum multitudō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vineīs ad oppidum āctis,<sup>10</sup> aggere<sup>11</sup> iactō turribusque cōstitūtis, māgnitudīne<sup>12</sup> operum quae Gallī neque viderant ante neque audierant et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōti<sup>13</sup> lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mittunt.

443.—Although<sup>1</sup> Caesar had heard that the town<sup>2</sup> had<sup>3</sup> a few defenders, the townsmen were able to prevent<sup>4</sup> him from taking<sup>5</sup> it by storm. When<sup>6</sup> the Suessiones came into the town on the next night and<sup>7</sup> saw the agger and the towers, they were greatly alarmed and decided that they ought to<sup>8</sup> ask for peace. Certain of<sup>9</sup> the Gauls said they feared<sup>10</sup> that they could not persuade<sup>11</sup> Caesar to make peace.

<sup>3</sup> Id (oppidum): obj. of oppugnare, 'having tried to attack that town immediately after the march.' <sup>4</sup> Acc. subj. of esse, 'which he heard was free.' <sup>5</sup> See 'abl. absol.:' (364), example 3; 'although (only) a few were defending it.' <sup>6</sup> agere and comparare joined by que, follow coepit: 'he began to bring up the vineae and to procure.' <sup>7</sup> Subj. of erant; its anteced. is ea, the obj. of comparare. <sup>8</sup> Dat. of purpose; 'useful' ('for a use'). <sup>9</sup> ex fuga: 'in their flight.' <sup>10</sup> 'after the vineae had been quickly brought up.' <sup>11</sup> Noun from agger; abl. absol. with iacto (from iacio). <sup>12</sup> magnitudine et celeritate: abis. of cause mod. permoti; 'being greatly alarmed by the greatness of the works and by the speed.' <sup>13</sup> P. p. mod. the subject implied in mittunt.

443.—<sup>1</sup> Concessive cum; see (350). <sup>2</sup> Dat. of possession; see (357). <sup>3</sup> erant. <sup>4</sup> deterre. <sup>5</sup> See (370): will you use ne or quin? 'taking (it) by storm' = one word, expugno. <sup>6</sup> postquam; see (358). <sup>7</sup> Position of que? <sup>8</sup> Recast in the pass., 'peace ought to be asked for by them'; see (361, 362, 363). <sup>9</sup> See (378), 'partitive gen., exceptions.' <sup>10</sup> se vereri. <sup>11</sup> 'that not—after verbs of fear'; see (343) (sequence following dixerunt): 'could persuade', use proper mood and tense of possum with the infin. persuadere; also see (345).

## LESSON XCIV.

## CHAPTER XIII.

*Hearing of Caesar's approach, the Bellovaci surrender.*

444.—Caesar obsidibus<sup>1</sup> acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius<sup>2</sup> Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditiōnem Suessionēs accēpit exercitumque in<sup>3</sup> Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī<sup>4</sup> cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia<sup>5</sup> passuum quīque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs<sup>6</sup> nātū ex oppidō ēgressi<sup>7</sup> manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre<sup>8</sup> coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre<sup>9</sup> neque<sup>10</sup> contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item cum<sup>11</sup> ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānis<sup>12</sup> petiērunt.

445.—Caesar received the foremost men of the state as hostages and did not put to death<sup>1</sup> the people. Then he started<sup>2</sup> for<sup>3</sup> the territories of the Bellovaci, who, having learned<sup>4</sup> that Caesar was coming, gathered<sup>5</sup> in the town (of)

444.—<sup>1</sup> Apposition with *primis* and *filiis*, the two main words forming the basis of the abl. absol., 'the foremost . . . and two sons . . . having been received'; translate, 'after receiving as hostages the foremost men of,' etc. <sup>2</sup> Intensive pron. emphasizing Galbae, 'of King Galba himself.' <sup>3</sup> 'against.' <sup>4</sup> *Rel.* at the begin. of the sent. as a *connective*; incorporate *qui* in the *cum* clause. 'now after these had carried . . . and while Caesar was distant.' <sup>5</sup> 'Acc. of extent in space,' see (842). <sup>6</sup> *maiores nati*, literally, 'greater by birth,' 'all the elders (older men).' <sup>7</sup> Although modifying *maiores* (*nom. subj.*), it is translated by a co-ordinate verb, 'came forth and began.' <sup>8</sup> *voce significare*: 'to declare.' <sup>9</sup> In a fut. sense: 'that they would put themselves under his protection,' etc. <sup>10</sup> 'and not.' <sup>11</sup> 'after he had come near . . . and while he was pitching,' see note 4. <sup>12</sup> *ab Romanis petierunt*, 'asked the Romans for peace,' 'begged peace of the Romans.'

445.—<sup>1</sup> 'put to death' = *interficio*: 'and not' = *one word* in Latin. <sup>2</sup> *proficiscor*. <sup>3</sup> *in* + acc. <sup>4</sup> Recast (why?) in the pass.; 'the arrival of C. having been learned of.' <sup>5</sup> *confero* + *se*.

Bratuspantium. The older men came<sup>6</sup> out of the town and placed their state under<sup>7</sup> Caesar's protection; likewise the women and children<sup>8</sup> extended<sup>9</sup> their hands from (off) the wall and begged peace of him.

## LESSON XCV.

### CHAPTER XIV.

#### *Divitiacus pleads in behalf of the Bellovaci.*

446.—Prō<sup>1</sup> hīs Dīvitīācus dīcit: 'Bellovacī omnī tempore<sup>2</sup> in fidē atque amicitīā cīvitatīs Aeduae fuērunt; impulsī<sup>3</sup> ā suis prīncipibus, quī dicēbant<sup>4</sup> Aeduōs omnīs indignitatēs contumeliāsque perferre,<sup>5</sup> et<sup>6</sup> ab Aeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō<sup>7</sup> bellum intulērunt. Eī quī eius cōsiliī prīncipēs fuērunt, quod cīvitatī māgnam calamitātem intulerant, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt<sup>8</sup> nōn solum Bellovacī sed etiam prō hīs Aeduī ut<sup>9</sup> tuā clēmētiā<sup>10</sup> ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtāris. Quod<sup>11</sup> sī fēcēris,<sup>12</sup> Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliīs<sup>13</sup> atque opibus, sī qua<sup>14</sup> bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōsuērunt.'

447.—The Bellovaci had been urged<sup>1</sup> on by their chiefs to make<sup>2</sup> war upon the Roman people. Those who were

<sup>6</sup> Turn into a particip. (see text) and omit 'and.' <sup>7</sup> In + acc. <sup>8</sup> pueri. <sup>9</sup> Perf. indic. act. of tendo.

446.—<sup>1</sup> 'in behalf of.' <sup>2</sup> 'always.' <sup>3</sup> P. p. p. *nom. plur.*: mod. the subject contained in *defecerunt* and *intulerunt*; 'being urged on, they (the Bellovaci) both revolted.' <sup>4</sup> 'kept saying.' <sup>5</sup> 'that the Aedui were enduring.' <sup>6</sup> 'both.' <sup>7</sup> See (387). <sup>8</sup> Note the emphatic position of the verb. <sup>9</sup> *ut . . . utaris*; following *petunt*; 'not only the Bellovaci beg . . . you to exercise.' <sup>10</sup> Abl. with the depon. *utor*; see (353). <sup>11</sup> *quod*: obj. of *feceris*; 'now . . . this,' see (367). <sup>12</sup> Fut. perf. in a more viv. fut. condition; 'if you do (will have done), see (223). <sup>13</sup> Abl. of means, mod. *sustentare*; 'by whose aid and assistance.' <sup>14</sup> *quis* (465) is used as the indef. pron. 'any—some,' *after* *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, *num*.

447.—<sup>1</sup> *impello*. <sup>2</sup> *ut* + subjunc. (sequence?): *inferre bellum* + *dat*.

the chiefs in (of) this design brought<sup>1</sup> great disaster upon their state. Divitiacus informed Caesar that those who were<sup>2</sup> the leaders in this design had brought great disaster upon the state. Because Caesar knew for what reason<sup>3</sup> they had done<sup>4</sup> these things, he exercised<sup>5</sup> his usual clemency toward<sup>6</sup> the Bellovaci.

---

<sup>1</sup> Again *inferre*, which takes the *acc.* and *dat.* <sup>2</sup> In a *past* sense = 'had been'; the subord. verb in O. O. goes in what mood? see (§86). <sup>3</sup> 'for what reason,' *qua de causa*. <sup>4</sup> 'indir. quest.'; verb in what mood? see (§18); sequence? <sup>5</sup> *utor* + *abl.* <sup>6</sup> *in* + *acc.*

C. IULI CAESARIS  
DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ.

LIBER SECUNDUS.

*Formation by the Belgae of a league against Caesar.*

I. CUM esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā in hibernīs, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiā esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. 5 Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā 10 molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōnnūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant. 15

*Caesar strengthens his force by the addition of two legions and marches against them.*

II. His nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte, in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Quintum Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet,

5 ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquisque  
 Gallis quī finitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eōs  
 gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant.  
 Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum  
 in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn  
 10 existimāvit quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā  
 comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad  
 finēs Belgārū pervenit.

*The Remi refuse to enter the league against the Romans  
 and surrender to Caesar.*

III. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnī opīniōne  
 vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt ad eum  
 lēgātōs Iccium et Andecumborium, prīmōs cīvītātis, mīsē-  
 runt, quī dicerent sē suaeque omnia in fidem atque in pote-  
 5 stātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum Belgīs  
 reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum con-  
 iūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere  
 et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre;  
 reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis  
 10 Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse  
 eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs  
 cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et isdem lēgibus  
 ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum  
 ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsen-  
 15 tīrent.

*Through the Remi Caesar obtains information as to the  
 number, etc., of the enemies' forces.*

IV. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae cīvītātēs quantaeque in  
 armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plērōs-  
 que Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus  
 trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōs-



que quī ea loca incoherent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī 5  
 patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omni Galliā vexatā, Teutonōs  
 Cimbrōsque intrā finīs suōs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex  
 rē fieri uti eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritā-  
 tem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē  
 numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī dicēbant, 10  
 proptereā quod propīnquitātibus affinitātibusque coniūctī,  
 quantam quisque multitudinem in commūi Belgārum  
 conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūri-  
 mum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et homi-  
 num numerō valēre; hōs posse cōficere armāta milia cen- 15  
 tum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtiusque  
 bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse finiti-  
 mōs; finīs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre.  
 Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīvitiācum,  
 tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis 20  
 hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinu-  
 erit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam: ad hunc propter iūstitiam  
 prūdentiāque suam summam tōtius bellī omnium volun-  
 tātē dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī milia  
 armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nervīōs, quī māximē feri 25  
 inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim  
 milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem milia, Morinōs xxv  
 milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Veliocassēs et  
 Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem milia;  
 Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō 30  
 nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad xl milia

*After receiving hostages from the Remi Caesar crosses the  
 Axona on his way to meet the Belgae.*

V. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque orātiōne prō-  
 secūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque  
 liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab his

diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiācum Aeduum  
 5 māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere rei publicae  
 communisque salutis intersit manūs hostium distinēri, nē  
 cum tantā multitudīne ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id  
 fieri posse, sī suās cōpiās Aedui in finēs Bellovacōrum  
 intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His  
 10 mandātis eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnis Belgārum  
 cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque  
 iam longē abesse ab eis quōs miserat explōrātōribus et ab  
 Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rē-  
 mōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi  
 15 castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpis  
 flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae essent tūta ab hostibus  
 reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus  
 ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō  
 flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte  
 20 flūminis Quintum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex  
 cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duode-  
 cim vāllō fossāque duodēvigintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

*The Belgae attack Bibrax. The way in which the Belgae  
 lay siege to a town.*

VI. Ab hīs castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax  
 aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū  
 Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum  
 est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est  
 5 haec. Ubi circumiectā multitudīne hominum tōtis moeni-  
 bus undique in mūrūm lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt mūrnsque  
 dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt  
 mūrūmque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum  
 tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō cōn-  
 10 sistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum finem oppūgnandī nox  
 fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus summā nobilitāte et grātiā inter

suos, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

15

*When Caesar sends aid to the Remi, the Belgae abandon the siege and turn against him.*

VII. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar isdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittariōs et funditorēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānis mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādē dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque quōs adire potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

*Caesar prepares strong defences upon a hill near the Axona and awaits the enemies' attack.*

VIII. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit: cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī auderent periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportunō atque idōneō,—quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitie ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs instructa occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastigātus paulatim ad plānitie redibat,—ab utrōque latere eius

collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs,  
 15 quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in castris relictis, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex  
 20 castris ēductās instrūxerant.

*The enemy attempt to cross the river in an effort to surprise Titurius.*

IX. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illis initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs aggredierentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim  
 5 proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendebātur. Ubi neutri trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostris Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs  
 10 repertis partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Quintus Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque  
 15 nostrōs prohibērent.

*A fierce battle ensues in which the Belgae are defeated and dispersed.*

X. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Acriter in eō

locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī māgnū eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum 5 corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt; primōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intel- lēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi 10 pūgnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suis quam in 15 aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs rei frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīvitiācum atque Aeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium 20 ferrent nōn poterat.

*The Romans pursue and slaughter large numbers of  
the Belgae.*

XI. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castris ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā, 5 insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemisit. Hīs Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculēium Cottam 10 lēgātōs praefēcit; Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa

mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multītūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs  
 15 ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō viderentur neque ūllā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum  
 20 multītūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsumque sōlis sequī dēstitērunt, sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

*After a forced march Caesar attacks Noviodunum and the town surrenders.*

XII. Postridiē ēius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finīs Suessiōnum quī proximī Rēmīs erant exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere cōnfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre  
 5 cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātītūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castris mūnitīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multītūdō in  
 10 oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritatē Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut  
 15 cōservārentur impetrant.

*When the Bellovaci learn of Caesar's approach, they too submit.*

XIII. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs primīs civitātis atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armīsque omnibus ex

oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō 5 oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter milia passuum quīque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressi manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt sēsē in eius fidem et potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum 10 accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petierunt.

*Divitiacus pleads in behalf of the Bellovaci.*

XIV. Prō hīs Divitiācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmīssīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amicitīā cīvitātis Aeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suis principibus, quī dicerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redactōs omnīs indi- 5 gnitātēs contumeliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs defēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōsiliī principēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgissee. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs ut suā clē- 10 mentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērint.

*Caesar spares the Bellovaci and demands hostages.*

*Character and habits of the Nervii.*

XV. Caesar honōris Divitiācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque

hominum multitudīne praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs popo-  
 5 scit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs,  
 ab eō locō in finīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque  
 omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finīs Nervii attin-  
 gēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quae-  
 reret, sic reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercā-  
 10 tōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam  
 pertinentium inferrī, quod eīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs  
 et remittī virtūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs mā-  
 gnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs  
 Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque vir-  
 15 tūtem prōiēcissent; cōfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs  
 neque ūllam condiōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

*The Nervii encamp on the Sabis and await the approach  
 of Caesar.*

XVI. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inve-  
 niēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suis nōn amplius  
 milia passuum x abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs Nervios  
 cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectāre unā  
 5 cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduis, finitimīs suis (nam hīs  
 utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortunam experi-  
 rentur); expectārī etiam ab hīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās  
 atque esse in itinere: mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad  
 pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniecisse, quō  
 10 propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

*Urged on by deserters from the Roman army the Nervii  
 plan to attack Caesar's advanced guard.*

XVII. Hīs rēbus cōgnitis explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque  
 praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex  
 dēditiciis Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem



secūti ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex captivīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōsuētūdine itineris 5 nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnerunt atque hīs dēmōstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnūm numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnūm spatium abessent, hanc sub 10 sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentisque direptīs futurū ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn auderent. Adiuvābat etiā eōrum cōsiliū quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt, 15 pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, si praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedirent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque inflexīs crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs enātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs effecerant, ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnimenta praeberent, 20 quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedirētur, nōn omitendum sibi cōsiliū Nervii existimāvērunt.

*Location of Caesar's camp. Position of the two armies.*

XVIII. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclivis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclivitate collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrā- 5 rius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eas silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae stationēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

*The Romans surprised by the unexpected attack skilfully carried out by the Nervii.*

XIX. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod ad hostis appropinquābat, cōsuetūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās  
 5 dūcēbat; post eās tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscriptae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditoribus sagittariisque flūmen trāsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt.  
 10 Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suos reciperent et rūsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs insequi audērent. interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.  
 15 Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis, qui in silvis abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in  
 20 nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs et prōturbātis, incredibili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostris hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs qui in opere occupāti erant  
 25 contendērunt.

*Conduct of Caesar's soldiers and lieutenants in an emergency.*

XX. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī

militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōces-  
 serant arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, 5  
 sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem tem-  
 poris brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs  
 difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus  
 militum, quod superiōribus proeliis exercitātī quid fierī  
 oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam 10  
 ab aliis docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque  
 legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis  
 castris vetuerat. Hī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem  
 hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per  
 sē quae vidēbantur administrābant. 15

*So sudden the attack, the soldiers are compelled to begin  
 fighting before they can arm themselves.*

XXI. Caesar necessariis rēbus imperātis ad cohortandōs  
 militēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiō-  
 nem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne  
 cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam  
 retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum 5  
 fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam  
 quō tēlum adigī posset, proeliī committendī sīgnum dedit.  
 Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus  
 pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ho-  
 stiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus ut nōn modo 10  
 ad insīgnia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās  
 scūtisque tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam  
 quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma  
 sīgna cōspēxit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendīs suis  
 pūgnandī tempus dimitteret. 15

*Confusion on the part of the soldiers. Difficulties encountered by the commander.*

XXII. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut loci nātūra dēiectus-  
que collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō  
atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in  
parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs (ut ante  
5 dēmōstrāvimus) interiectis prōspectus impedīrētur, neque  
certa subsidia collocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus  
esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī  
poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae  
quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

*In one quarter the Romans win ; in another they lose.*

XXIII. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā  
parte aciē cōstitēbant, pilīs ēmissis cursū ac lassitudīne  
exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea  
pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen com-  
5 pulērunt, et trānsire cōnantēs īsecūtī gladiis māgnam  
partem eōrum impeditam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsire  
flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī  
rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam  
coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs,  
10 ūndecima et octāva, prōfligātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum  
erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs  
proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte  
nūdātīs castrīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et  
nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs  
15 Nervii cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī sum-  
mam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum  
pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum  
castrōrum locum petere coepit.

*The day seems to be going against the Romans. The Nervii gain Caesar's camp.*

XXIV. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs unā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā et summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostēs in nostris castris versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedimentis veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōti equitēs Treverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ab civitāte ad Caesarem missi vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātis nostris rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castris impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs, civitāti renūntiāvērunt.

20

*Caesar seizes a shield and takes part in the fight in the foremost ranks.*

XXV. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in unum locum collātis duodecimae legiōnis cōfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs signiferōque interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centu-

riōnibus aut vulnerātis aut occisis, in his primipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multis gravibusque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse  
 10 tardiorēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimis dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostis neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere instāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod  
 15 summitti posset; scūtō ab novissimis ūnī militi dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātis reliquōs cohortātus milites signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiis ūti possent. Cūius adventū spē illātā militibus et redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū im-  
 20 perātōris etiam in extrēmīs suis rēbus operam nāvāre cupe-  
 ret, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

*Caesar reinforced by the arrival of two legions. The scene begins to change.*

XXVI. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signā in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī sub-  
 5 sidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim milites legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et  
 10 Titus Labiēnus castris hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostris castris gererentur cōspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostris mīsīt. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātōr versārētur cōgnōvissent,  
 15 nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

*A desperate encounter in which the Romans win.*

XXVII. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent. Tum cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerunt; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlerent, omnibus in locīs pūgnārent, quō sē legiōnāriīs militibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salutis tantam virtutem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtutis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās ripās, subire inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

*Terrible fate of the Nervii. Pardon for the few that survive.*

XXVIII. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redactō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria et palūdēs coniectōs dīxērāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium quī supererant cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā cīvitatīs calamitāte, ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum militibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē redactōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē cōservāvit, suisque finibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et

fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

*Caesar next lays siege to a stronghold in which the Aduatuci have gathered.*

XXIX. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē  
 5 nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclivis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant tum māgnī ponderis  
 10 saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliā facerent, eis impedimentīs quae sēcum agere et portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex milia homi-  
 15 num ūnā reliquērunt. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īferrent aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

*From the walls they taunt the Romans in their preparations for an attack.*

XXX. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliīs cum nostris contendēbant; postea vāllō passuum in circuitū xv milium crēbrisque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineīs āctīs aggere extrūctō turrim procul cōstitui vīdērunt, primum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque incre-



pitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō instruerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallis prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitas nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrim mōtūrōs sēsē cōnfiderent?

*Soon they lose heart and ask of Caesar his terms of surrender.*

XXXI. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vidērunt, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: nōn exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritātē prō- 5 movēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere et dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē finitimōs esse inimicōs 10 ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

15

*They are promised protection if they disarm. Treachery on the side of the Nervii.*

XXXII. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum civitātem cōnservātūrum, sī prius, quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē

5 id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperā-  
tūrum nē quam deditiōis populi Rōmāni iniūriam infer-  
rent. Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere  
dixērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitudīne dē mūrō in  
fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam  
10 mūrī aggerisque altitudīnem acervī armōrum adaequārent,  
et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est,  
cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē  
pāce sunt ūsī.

*The enemies' plans fail to carry and they meet a  
terrible fate.*

XXXIII. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī milītēsque  
ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidāni ab militi-  
bus iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō (ut intellēctum  
est) cōnsiliō, quod deditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc-  
5 tūrōs aut dēnique indiligentiū servātūrōs crēdiderant,  
partim cum eīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs,  
partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae  
subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxe-  
rant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūni-  
10 tiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repentinō ex  
oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar  
imperārat, ignibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs  
eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est,  
ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, iniquō locō,  
15 contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī  
dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōsisteret.  
Occīsīs ad hominum milibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum  
reiectī sunt. Postridiē ēius diēi refrāctīs portīs, cum iam  
dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs militibus nostrīs, sec-  
20 tiōnem ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs

quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

*The maritime nations submit to the Romans.*

XXXIV. Eōdem tempore ā Publiō Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Curiosolitas, Esubiōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnis eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī 5 esse redāctās.

*Ambassadors come to Caesar from across the Rhine. The army goes into winter quarters and a thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.*

XXXV. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omni Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in 5 Ītaliā Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonēs, quaeque cīvitātēs propīnquae hīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hibernācula dēductīs, in Ītaliā profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris in diēs quīn- 10 decim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlli.

# TABLE OF ABBREVIATIONS.

abl. absol.	= ablative absolute	lim.	= limit
affirm.	= affirmative	mod.	= modify
agreem.	= agreement	neg.	= negative
appos.	= apposition	p. p.	= perfect participle
condit.	= condition	p. p. p.	= perfect pass. participle
depen.	= depend	quest.	= question
depon.	= deponent	sep.	= separation
dir.	= direct	subj.	= subject
disc.	= discourse	subjunc.	= subjunctive
doub.	= double	subord.	= subordinate
i.e.	= that is	substan.	= substantive
impers.	= impersonal	syst.	= system
indir.	= indirect	viv.	= vivid
lit.	= literally		

## NOTES.

### BOOK II.

#### THE CAMPAIGNS OF CAESAR IN GAUL.

Gallia, 'Gaul', as used in Caesar, included the vast region which comprises all of France, the greater part of Switzerland, and the western portion of Germany, with Holland and Belgium.

The campaigns of Caesar in Gaul lasted through eight years (B.C. 58-51), and are described in eight books—each book giving an account of the operations of one year.

In Book I (B.C. 58), after a general description of Gaul, Caesar describes the war with the Helvetians, a tribe of Northern Switzerland numbering over 300,000, who attempted to reach Western Gaul by an armed emigration through central Gaul. Their attempt to pass was checked by Caesar, who, after several skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced the Helvetians to return into their territories with the loss of 200,000 lives. He also tells of an engagement with a powerful tribe of Germans under their chief, Ariovistus, who had settled in Eastern Gaul. These were repulsed and driven back across the Rhine.

Book II (B.C. 57) contains an account of the conspiracy and defeat of the Belgians, a people in Northern Gaul. The Belgians were a fierce and barbarous people living amid forests and swamps far remote from any country reached by the Roman arms. They appear to have formed a powerful confederacy and to have offered to Caesar a most desperate resistance. In a battle, perhaps the most desperate of all that Caesar ever fought, the enemy was defeated and the confederacy of Northern Gaul suppressed, with the almost complete annihilation of the Nervii, the bravest of the Belgian tribe. In this campaign Publius Crassus reduced the maritime states to submission.

CHAPTER I.—1. *cum esset* : 'while Caesar was,' see (128, 203); note the emphatic position of the *verb* *citeriore Gallia* : that is, northern Italy. *ita uti* : 'just as.' 2. *demonstravimus* : the rhetorical *we*. Caesar speaks of himself as the general in the *third* person, as the writer in the *first*. 3. *litteris* : abl. of means, see (43), mod. *certior fiebat* ; 'by letters from (of) Labienus.' *que* : joins *afferebantur* and *certior fiebat*, imperf. of *repeated action*, see (102); 'kept coming in and he was informed (from day to day).' *certior* : with *pass.*, see (338). *Belgas* : acc. subj. of *coniurare* and *dare*, depend upon *certior fiebat* ; 'that all the Belgians *were* conspiring;' for the *tense of the infin.*, see (301, 302, 305, 318). *quam* : acc. subj. of *esse*, agreeing with the *pred acc.* *partem*, rather than with *Belgas*, see (373); 'who, we had said, constitute (*esse*) a third part of Gaul.' 4. *esse* : indir. disc. depen. on *dixeramus*, see (301, 302, 318). *dixeramus* : pluperf. denoting what took place before the time of *demonstravimus*. 5. *inter se dare* : 'were exchanging.' *coniurandi* : gen. of the gerund dep. upon *causas*. In the sight of the Romans any war against Rome was a 'conspiracy.' But this uprising of the Belgians was in reality the effort of a spirited people to protect their rights. 6. *esse* : following *certior fiebat*, 'that the reasons for (of) conspiring were *as follows* (has)' *quod vererentur, sollicitarentur* : subjunc. because subord. clauses in indir. disc., see (306); the two *quod* clauses are preceded by *primum*, 'in the first place,' and *deinde*, 'in the second place'; for the *sequence of tense*, see (135); these subjunctives are dependent upon a *past verb, fiebat*. *ne* : 'that' or 'lest,' see (343), *verbs of fear*, etc. 7. *ad eos* : 'against them.' *sollicitarentur* : 'because they were being incited.' 8. *ab Gallis* : pers. agent, see (237). *partim qui* : 'some of whom.' *ut* : introduces *noluerant* (*indic. mood*); the indic. verbs in the remaining part of the chapt. indicate that this is not regarded as part of Labienus's report (which would make the verbs *subjunc. in indir. disc.*), but as explanatory remarks made by Caesar. *ut noluerant* : 'as they had been unwilling,' note the force of the *pluperf.* *Germanos* : acc. subj. of *versari*, following *noluerant*, 'that the Germans should remain.' 9. *ita ferebant moleste* : literally, 'were bearing with trouble;' freely, 'took it hard.' *populi* : gen. sing. dep. upon *exercitum*. 10. *hiemare, inveterascere* : with the subj. acc. *exercitum* in indir. disc. depending upon *moleste ferebant* ; 'that an army of the Roman people was wintering and getting a foothold in Gaul.' 11. *partim qui* : anteced. of *qui* is *Gallis* (line 8); 'some of whom

were always desiring.' *mobilitate, levitate* : abl. of cause, see (210) 'on account of inconstancy and fickleness'; the ablatives *mod. studebant. imperiis* : dat. with *studebant*, for which construction see (348); 'a new government,' literally, 'new ruling powers.' 12. *ab nonnullis* : pers. agent, *mod. sollicitabantur*, 'they were incited by some *also (etiam)*,' see (237). *quod* : with *occupabantur*, a causal clause, *mod. sollicitabantur*; 'they were incited also *because* royal power was being (constantly) usurped.' *a potentioribus* : adj. as substan., see (258); 'by the more powerful and by those who.' 13. *ad concutendos* : gerundive, see (253); 'for hiring.' *facultates* : 'opportunities,' 'means.' 14. *regna* : plur., literally, 'kingdoms'—see translation above as the subj. of *occupabantur*, beginning with *quod*. *minus* : adv. *mod. another adv. facile*, 'less easily.' *rem* : obj. of *consequi*. *imperio nostro* : 'under our rule,' abl. absol. implying condition; the idea is, 'the government being ours,' see (364)—2. 15. *consequi poterant* : 'who could secure that or such power (*rem*).'

CHAPTER II.—1. *nuntii, litteris* : abl. of cause, *mod. and in the translation following commotus*; '(being) greatly alarmed by these messages and letters.' *duas legiones* : XIIIth and XIVth. Caesar had now eight legions, numbered VII to XIV, inclusive, amounting to perhaps 60,000 men including auxiliaries. 2. *inita* : p. p. p. of *inco*, forming an abl. absol. of *time* with *aestate*. 'at the beginning of summer'; what literally? see (287). in *interiorem Galliam* : see (35); 'into the Central part of Gaul.' 3. *qui deduceret* : anteced. is *Q. Pedium*, rel. clause of purpose (*qui = ut is*), see (311); sequence derived from *misit*, see (135). *Pedius*, nephew of Caesar and one of his heirs. 4. *ipse* : intensive pron., placed first for special emphasis, 'Caesar himself.' *cum primum* : 'as soon as;' in the early part of May or June; when grass and young grain began to be plentiful for the numerous beasts of burden carrying military stores as well as for the horses of the cavalry and officers. *inciperet* : 'began'—subj. is *copia*. 5. *dat* : historical pres., used for the historical perfect to enliven the narrative. *Senonibus, Gallis*; why dat.? see (330). 6. *Belgis* : see 'dat. with adjs.,' (126). *uti (ut) cognoscant, faciant* : substantive clauses of *purpose* in apposition with, or defining, *negotium*; observe the *sequence, pres. + pres. gerantur* : subjunc. by *attraction*, see (276); 'to find out those things which are being 'transacted.' 7. *se* : 'and to inform him (Caesar);' if the *subord.* clause expresses the words or thought of the *main* clause,

the *reflexive* is used to refer to the subject of the latter. **constanter**: 'uniformly,' without disagreement in the reports. 8. **manus**: acc. subj. of **cogi** (pres. pass. infin.); 'that bands (forces) were being collected.' in **locum**: not *abi.*, but *acc.*, see (35); mod. a verb of *motion*—**conduci**; 'was being gathered.' 9. **tum vero**: observe the emphatic position, 'then indeed.' **dubitandum (esse sibi)**: periphrastic *pres. infin. pass.* used impersonally, depen. upon **existimavit**; see (361, 362, 363); literally, 'he thought it ought not to be hesitated by him'; freely, 'he thought he ought not to hesitate.' 10. **quin proficisceretur**: 'to set out' (lit., 'but that he should,' etc.); in the sense of '*hesitate*,' **dubito** regularly takes the *infin.*, this being an exception; **dubito**, 'to doubt,' takes **quin** + *subjunc.* 11. **diebus**: abl. of time within which, see (65); 'in about fifteen days.' **ad fines**: Caesar marched from Vesontio to the Belgian frontier (north-west), about 145 miles, in 15 days.

CHAPTER III.—1. **eo**: 'thither' = **ad fines Belgarum**. **de improviso**: 'unexpectedly.' **opinio**: abl. after the comparative **celerius**, see (369); 'than any one expected,' lit. 'than all opinion.' 2. **Remi**: they were next to the Aedui in power and were friendly to the Romans. These people were impressed by the decision of Caesar's movements, and, not having committed themselves to the Belgian confederacy, they were free to give Caesar information of the enemies' designs. **ex Belgis**: for the partitive gen. **Belgarum**, see (378); 'who are the nearest of the *Belgians* to Gaul.' 3. **legatos**: predicate apposition; observe that **legatus** sometimes means 'lieutenant,' and sometimes, as here, 'ambassador.' **primos**: adj. used as substant., see (258), in apposition with the proper names preceding it; 'the foremost men.' 4. **qui dicerent**: not 'who said,' but 'who *were to say*' (or simply 'to say'), rel. clause of purpose, see (311). The rest of the chapt. is given in *indir. disc.* Notice that the *principal clauses* have the verbs in the *infin.* with a *subj. acc.*, and all *subord. or depend. clauses* take the *subjunc.*; see (301, 302, 306, 318, 392). **se in fidem permittere**: 'that they placed themselves and all their possessions under the protection'; **se** is here the *acc. obj.* of **permittere**, while the *subj. acc.* (**se**) is omitted to prevent awkward repetition; *regularly the subj. acc. is expressed in indir. disc.* 5. **neque**: 'and that they had not united (conspired).' **cum Belgis**: see (43). 6. **neque**: 'nor had they conspired against.' 7. **paratos**: pred. adj. in the *acc.* to agree with the *subj.* of **esse** (**se** understood). **et . . . et**: 'both . . . and.' **oppidis**: sometimes *place where* is put in the abl. *without a prep.*, as with **loco**



and castris. 8. frumento, rebus: see (43). 9. *esse*: indir. disc., 'that all the rest of the Belgians *were* under arms.' *Germanos*: acc. subj. of *coniunxisse*. *cis Rhenum*: i.e. the west side of the Rhine; Caesar writes from the standpoint of the Roman Province. *incolant*: 'who dwell'—in the *dir. disc.* it is *incolunt*. 10. *his*: = *Belgis*. *tantum esse furorem*: 'and that the madness of all these *was* so great that (ut).' *eorum omnium*: i.e. *Belgarum et Germanorum*. 11. *ut . . . potuerint*: affirmative result clause, 'that they could prevent'; see (321); observe the *perf. tense*, and note that in clauses of result, the *perf. subjunc.* is very often used after secondary (past) tenses. *ne . . . quidem*: make emphatic the word between them, '(could prevent) *not even the SueSSIONES*.' The SueSSIONES occupied territory west of the Remi. 12. *qui utantur, habeant*: subjunc. for two reasons; subord. clause in indir. disc., see (306, 392); or by *attraction*, being within the *ut* clause, see (276). *iure, legibus*; abl. with depon. verb *utantur*, see (353). *ius*: = 'principles of justice,' *lex*: = the enacted 'law'; 'who enjoyed the same rights and laws.' 13. *cum ipsis*: i. e. the Remi; in indir. disc. *se* is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of *ipse* may be used instead, especially for *emphasis*. 14. *quin consentirent*: 'from uniting;' for construction with *quin*, see (370).

CHAPTER IV.—1. *cum . . . quaereret*: 'when Caesar inquired of these' or 'asked these men.' *quae*, etc.: 'what and how great states *were*.' 2. *essent*: subjunc. of indir. quest., see (313). *quid*: 'adverbial acc.,' see (374). *reperiebat*: imperf. to denote repeated action. *plerosque*: indir. disc. to the end of the chapt., except the words *Remi dicebant* (line 10); 'that most of the Belgians were descended from (ab).' These were especially the Nervii and Treveri, who claimed descent from the Germans—a proud and heroic ancestry. 3. *que*: joins *ortos esse* and *consedissee*; *Belgas* is the subj. of both verbs. 4. *traductos*: p. p. p. mod. *Belgas*; this construction is fully explained in (316). *propter . . . fertilitatem*: limits *consedissee*. *que*: connects *consedissee* and *expulisse*, which have the same subj. *Gallos*: obj. of *expulisse*; 'and had driven out the Gauls who inhabited.' 5. *incolent*: subord. clause in indir. disc., see (276, 306, 392). *solos*: acc. pred. adj. with *esse*, limiting *Belgas*; *solos* is an adj. used as a noun, see (258). *qui . . . prohibuerint*: subord. clause in indir. disc.; observe the use of the *perf. tense*; see chapt. 3, note 11. *ut . . . potuerint*. In the *dir. disc.*, *solus est*, etc., takes a rel. clause with the verb in the *subjunc.*, called the 'characteristic relative clause.' Translate *solosque*, etc.; 'that they (the Belgians) were the only men

who could prevent.' 6. *memoria*: abl. of time when, mod. *prohibuerint*, 'in (during) the memory—remembrance—of our fathers.' *omni*, etc.: translate by a 'when' clause. 7. *ingredi*: depen. upon *prohibuerint*, see (370); 'from entering.' *qua ex re*: 'and in consequence of this fact;' see (367). *fleri*: pass. infin. of *facio*, depen. upon *reperiebat*; 'he found out that it was coming to pass.' 8. *uti . . . sumerent*: this clause is the *subj.* of *fleri*; that *what* was coming to pass? viz., 'that they were assuming.' *memoria*: abl. of cause (compare note 6 above), mod. *sumerent*; 'in consequence of their remembrance.' 9. *in re militari*: 'in the art of war.' *de numero*: i.e. the numerical strength of the Belgian soldiery; (the rest of the chapt. depends upon *Remi dicebant*). 10. *omnia . . . explorata*: almost = *omnia se exploravisse*, 'that they had found out all *about* (do);' agreem. of this particip. and its use with *habere* is fully explained in (375). *propterea quod*: 'on account of the fact that' = 'because,' introducing *cognoverint*, again the *perf. tense*, as in note 5 above. The *perf.* is very often retained in indir. disc., and a statement is made more vivid by putting it in the tense that the speaker used. The speaker's word was '*cognovimus*,' 'we know' (lit. 'have found out'). 11. *coniuncti*: p. p. p. mod. the *subj.* of *cognoverint*, see (316); 'because, being closely connected by blood and marriage relationships.' *quantam . . . pollicitus sit*: *subjunc.* of indir. quest., see (313); depen. upon *cognoverint*; 'how great a multitude *each one* (*quisque*) had promised.' *quisque*: i.e. each representative of the war council. 13. *plurimum valere*: follows *Remi dicebant*; 'that the Bellovaci were the most powerful.' 15. *hos posse*, etc.: 'that the latter (these) could muster.' *armata milia centum* = *armatorum hominum milia centum*; as here used, *milia* is the noun with which the adj. *armata* agrees. *pollicitos esse*: 'that they had promised.' 16. *sexaginta (milia) electa*: 'sixty thousand picked men.' *postulare*: '*were* demanding.' *sibi*: refers to *Bellovacos*. 17. *suos*: refers to the *Remi*. *latissimos*: 'very wide.' 18. *possidere*: *subj.* is *eos* (*Suessiones*) understood. *fuisse*: 'had been;' in the direct disc. *fuisse* becomes *fuit*. 19. *totius Galliae*, etc.: 'the most influential man in entire Gaul;' *totius* is declined in (286). *qui . . . imperium obtinuerit*: 'who *had* had control of.' 20. *cum . . . tum*: 'not only . . . but also.' *Britanniae*: This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature. 21. *esse*: 'they said that Galba *was now* king;' the speaker's words (dir. disc.) were '*nunc est rex Galba*'—compare note *fuisse* (line 18) above. *ad hunc*: 'upon this one.' 22. *summam*: *noun*, acc. *subj.* of *deferri*; 'that the manage-

ment (conduct) of . . . was being conferred.' 23. **voluntate**: abl. of manner, see (210). **habere**: subj. is **Suessiones polliceri**: 'that they were promising.' 24. **milia**: see note, line 15. **Nervios**: acc. subj. of **polliceri**. **maxime feri**: *adv.* and *adj.* = the superl. degree of the *adj.*, 'very fierce.' 26. **habeantur**: 'are considered;' observe the use of the *pres. subjunc.* where the *imperf.* would have been more regular; see note, lines 5 and 10, above. 27. **Atrebates**: for this and the following proper names (of tribes), ending with **Aduatucos**, supply **polliceri**. 30. **Condrusos**, etc.: acc. subjects of **polliceri** or **conficere posse** understood, the infin. clause depending upon (*se*) **arbitrari**; 'the Remi said *they* (*se*) believed that the Condrusi, etc., could muster.' **qui** . . . **appellantur**: the indic. indicates that this is an explanatory note made by Caesar and not included in the address of the Remi; not so with **qui** . . . **habeantur**, *absint*, line 25, which is treated as a subord. clause in indir. disc.

CHAPTER V.—1. **cohortatus, prosecutus**: 'having encouraged the Remi and having addressed them kindly;' both particips. mod. *Caesar*. 2. **senatum**: a Roman term used to describe a Gallic institution. **liberos**: acc. subj. of **adduci**, depend. upon **iussit**; 'he ordered the children of . . . to be brought to him;' see **iubeo** (155). 3. **obsides**: pred. apposition, 'as hostages.' The boys would probably be sold into captivity, if these chiefs were to break their faith. 3. **Quae**: for use and meaning of the rel. pron. at the beginning of a sentence, see (367); 'now all these things;' see also (258). 4. **ad diem**: 'to the day;' as we say, 'to the minute'—promptly. **ipse**: intensive force; 'Caesar in person.' 5. **cohortatus**: p. p. depon. mod. **ipse**, but best rendered by a *co-ordinate verb*; 'encourages Divitiacus very earnestly and explains *how greatly it concerns*.' **reipublicae, salutis**: gen. depen. upon **intersit**; the impersonal verbs **interest** and **refert** ('it interests,' 'it concerns'); take the gen. of the *person*, rarely of the *thing*, affected; 'the republic and their common safety.' This Divitiacus was one of the leading men among the Aedui who were now in alliance with the Romans. 6. **intersit**: indir. quest., see (313). **manus**: acc. subj. of **distineri**; this infin. clause is the subj. of **intersit**, 'that the bands (forces) of the enemy be kept apart.' **ne** . . . **configendum sit**: neg. purpose, see (211, 320); **configendum sit**, *pres. subjunc. pass. periphrastic*, used impersonally; lit., 'that it may not have to be fought (by them),' better, 'lest they should have to fight'; see (361, 362, 363). 8. **id fieri posse**: depen. upon **docet**; 'he explains that this (id) can be

done.' *suas copias* : notice the emphatic position. 9. *introduxerint*, *coeperint* : more viv. fut. condit. turned into indir. disc.; both verbs were *fut. perf. indic.* in the dir. disc.; see (223, 396). *eorum* = *Bellovacorum*. The Bellovaci were already disaffected in that they had not secured the leadership of the league and the ravaging of their lands would probably lead them from their homes. 10. *postquam* : with *vidit* and *cognovit*; see (358). *coactas* : p. p. p. mod. *copias*, but best turned into a finite verb; see (381). 11. *neque* = *et . . . non* : 'and when he found out from . . . that they (*eas copias*) were *not* far distant now (by this time).' 15. *quae res* : see (367); 'now this position.' Caesar's camp was protected in the rear by the Axona, and in front by a small marshy stream. Traces of Caesar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a hill called *Mauchamp*, about eighty feet above the river, with gentle slopes, well suited for a camp. *latus* : noun, acc. obj. of *muniebat*. 16. *muniebat*, *reddebat* : for the force of the imperf., see (102); 'both kept one side of . . . fortified and rendered secure (*tuta*) from the enemy (those places) which were behind him.' *essent* : subjunc. in a characteristic rel. clause. *tuta* : acc. plur. neut. mod. *ea loca* (understood), the anteced. of *quae*. 18. *efficiebat* : subj. is *quae res*; the order is *et efficiebat ut commeatus possent portari*; literally, 'and caused (it) so that supplies could be brought'; better, 'and made it possible for supplies to be brought.' 19. *in altera parte* : 'on the other side.' 21. *pedum duodecim* : gen. of measure or quality with *vallo*. 22. *duodeviginti pedum* : 'eighteen feet in width'—the depth being about ten feet. *munire* : subj. is *eum*, (*Sabinum*).

CHAPTER VI.—1. *ab his castris* : adverbial phrase mod. *aberat*; 'from this camp.' *Bibrax* : in apposition with *oppidum*. 2. *millia* : acc. of extent in space, see (342). *id* : with *oppidum* understood, *obj.* of *oppugnare*. *ex itinere* : 'on the march'—that is, turning aside from their course without making any formal disposition of their troops. *impetu* : see (210). 3. *sustentatum est* : 'impersonal verb,' see (365); 'it was with difficulty that they held out.' 4. *eadem atque* : 'the same as,' with *oppugnatio*; 'the mode of attack (*oppugnatio*) of the Gauls (which is) the same as (that) of the Belgians is *as follows* (*haec*).' *ubi* : with *coepti sunt* and *nudatus est*; see (358). 5. *circumiecta multitudine* : abl. absol. mod. *coepti sunt iaci*. *moenibus* : dat. indir. obj. of *circumiecta*, 'a multitude of men being thrown round all the walls.' 6. *iaci* : pres. infin. pass. (complementary infin.) with *coepti sunt*, which is always *pass.* when accom-

panied by a *pass. infin.*; 'when (*ubi*) stones began to be thrown.' *que*: connects *coepti sunt* and *nudatus est. defensoribus*: abl. of separation, mod. *nudatus est*; 'was stripped of defenders.' 7. *testudine*: 'having formed a *testudo*,' by lapping their shields above their heads as was their custom in storming a town. 8. *quod*: rel. pron. at the beginning of the paragraph, see (367); 'now this was easily done in the present instance (*tum*).' *cum . . . conicerent*: historical *cum*, see (128, 203, 359); *conicerent* is plur. from the individuals composing the *subj. multitudo*. 10. *nulli*: 'dat. of possession,' see (357); 'no one had the power to stand (could stand) upon the wall'; what literally? 11. *summa nobilitate et gratia*: 'abl. of quality or description,' see (376); supply *vir*, '(a man) of the highest nobility and influence.' *inter suos*: 'among his (own people),' see (258). *oppido*: dat., see (337); 'who was then in command of the town.' 12. *unus*: adj. used as a noun, in apposition with *Iccius*; 'one of those who had come as ambassadors'; see (378), 'partitive gen., *exceptions*.' 13. *mittit*: a verb of *saying* to be supplied, 'sends a message to him (saying)'; hence the principal verbal phrase *posse non sustinere* is *infin.*, and the subord. verb *submittatur* is *subjunc.* Notice that the princ. verb of *saying* is *pres. tense*, as is seen in *mittit*: this requires that the depen. subjunc. verb shall be in either the *pres.* or *perf.* subjunc., the *pres.* to denote *unfinished*; the *perf.*, *finished* time. This is a more viv. fut. condit. in *indir. disc.*: is the verb in the protasis (of the dir. disc.) *fut. indic. submittetur* or *fut. perf. submissum erit*? see (223, 396). *se non posse* = *ego non possum*, in the *direct disc.*

CHAPTER VII.—1. 'thither,' i.e. to Bibrax. *isdem* = *eisdem* · abl. obj. of *usus* (from *utor*); see (353); 'employing as guides the same persons who had come as messengers.' 2. *Numidas, Cretas*: 'Numidian and Cretan bowmen.' 3. *Balears*: 'and Balearic slingers.' The Numidians and especially the people of Crete were famous archers, and, together with the celebrated slingers from the Balearic Islands, they were valuable auxiliaries of the Romans, serving as light-armed troops. *subsidio, oppidanis*: doub. dat., see (352). *quorum adventu*: 'and because of (upon) their arrival.' 4. *Remis*: dat. indir. obj. of *accessit* (*subj. studium*); 'there both came (was added) to the Remi along with the hope of (making a successful) defence, a desire for making sallies (against the enemy).' 5. *et hostibus discessit*: *hostibus* is dat. with *discessit* (as a verb of *taking away*) instead of the abl. of separation; 'and from the enemy there

was taken away . . . the hope of.' *potiundi* = *potiendi*: see (253)  
 6. *itaque*: 'and so.' *apud*: 'near.' *morati*, depopulati: mod. the subj. of *contenderunt*; observe that these are particips. of depon. verbs; 'having delayed—having ravaged.' 7. *omnibus vicis* . . . *incensis*: 'having burnt all the villages,' etc.: why translate *incensis*, a *pass.* particip. (not a *depon.*) with an act. meaning? see (372). *quos*: has two antecedents, *vicis* and *aedificiis*, which are of different genders; in such instances the relative takes the gender sometimes of the *strongest* or *most important* word, sometimes that of the *nearest*. Here the rel. has the gender of *vicis*. 8. *potuerant*: pluperf., 'had been able.' 9. *ab* . . . *duobus*: 'less than two miles away (off)'; *ab* is used adverbially, 'off,' i.e. distant from Caesar's camp; *milibus* is the abl. of degree of difference, 'by two thousands,' being used independently of *minus*, '(and) less,' which does not affect the construction. 10. *quae castra*: see (367), 'and this camp.' *ut significabatur*: 'as was indicated,' a clause used parenthetically. 11. *amplius milibus*: *amplius* is the accus. of extent in space, see (342); *milibus* is abl. after the comparative *amplius*, see (369). For the other construction allowable with these neuter accusatives see note 9 above.

CHAPTER VIII.—2. *eximiam* . . . *virtutis*: 'remarkable reputation for valor;' *virtutis* = objective genitive, that is, a gen. which denotes the object of an action or feeling: as, *matris amor pueri*, 'a mother's love for her boy'; boy (*pueri*) is here the object of the feeling of love implied in the noun *amor*. *proelio*: abl. of separation; 'to refrain from an engagement.' 3. *equestribus proeliis*: 'in cavalry skirmishes.' *quid possent, quid auderent*: subjunctives of indir. quest., see (313); *quid* = adverbial acc., see (374); 'what prowess the enemy had,' literally, 'what the enemy *could* (do) from the standpoint of courage.' 4. *periclitabatur*: *imperf.* 'kept trying to ascertain by experiment.' 5. *inferiores*: acc. pred. with *esse*, 'that our men were not inferior' (in courage); i.e. were not losing heart. *loco* . . . *idoneo*: abl. absol. composed of *noun* + *adj.*; see (364), example 2; this abl. absol. shows *cause* and mod. *obduxit* (line 12). 6. *natura*: 'by nature.' *quod is collis*: taken with *patebat, habebat, redibat*, these clauses explaining *loco idoneo* and also, indirectly, modifying *obduxit*. *ubi*: 'where.' 8. *editus*, etc.: mod. *collis*; 'elevated a very little from (above) the level ground.' *tantum*: acc. of extent in space, mod. *patebat*; *loci* in the next line (a *partitive gen.*) is to be translated with *tantum*; 'extended in width (over) as much ground (*loci*).' *adversus*:

mod. *collis*, 'right in front.' *quantum*: obj. of *occupare*, 'as an army arranged in battle order could cover.' 9. *instructa*: p. p. p. mod. *acies*. *ex utraque parte*: 'on each side.' 10. *lateris delectus*: *delectus* is a noun, acc. plur.; 'it had a steep slope' (lit. 'slopes of the side'). 10. *fastigatus*: mod. *collis*, 'falling with an easy slope in front sank gently to the plain.' 11. *ab utroque latere*: 'on each side.' 12. *transversam*: '(a ditch) at right angles.' *passuum*: gen. of measure, 'about 400 feet (long).' 13. *ad extremas*: 'at the ends of the ditches.' 14.  *tormenta*: 'engines of war.' *ne . . . possent*: neg. purpose, see (211, 320); 'so that the enemy could *not* surround.' *cum*: 'after' 15. *quod . . . poterant*: parenthetical clause and hence not *subjunc.*, 'because they were so (thus) strong in numbers'—*tantum* is the adverbial accus.; see note 3 above. *ab lateribus*: 'on their flanks.' *pugnantes*: pres. particip. mod. *suos* (referring to *Caesar*); 'his men while they were fighting.' 17. *ut . . . possent*: affirm. purpose; 'so that they could *be led out* (*duci*).' *quo*: adv., 'if they should be needed anywhere.' 18. *subsidio* = dat. of purpose or service. 20. *eductas*: p. p. p. mod. the *obj.* of the verb; see (381); '*had led out and drawn up*.'

CHAPTER IX.—1. *non magna*: = *parva*, 'there was a small marsh.' *nostrum*: mod. *exercitum*. 2. *si transirent*: indir. quest., see (313); 'the enemy kept waiting to see whether our men would cross.' 3. *autem*: 'on the other hand.' *si . . . fieret*: a part of the *ut* clause, hence *subjunc.* by attraction, see (276); 'if a beginning of . . . should be made.' *ut . . . aggredierentur*: affirmative purpose with *parati erant*; 'our men were ready under arms to *attack*.' *impeditos*: mod. (*hostes*), 'as they struggled in the river.' 5. *contendebatur*: impersonal, see (365); 'the two armies engaged.' 6. *neutri*: nom. plur. subj. of *faciunt*. *secundiore*: adj. with *proelio*, forming an abl. absol.; see (364); 'as the battle of cavalry was rather favorable to our men.' *nostris*: dat. with adj. (*secundiore*); see (126). 9. *quod*: rel. pron. nom. subj. of *demonstratum est*; 'which has been shown to be in the rear of.' 10. *conati sunt*: depon., 'they attempted to lead a part across.' 11. *eo consilio*: 'with this design.' *ut*: with *expugnarent, interscinderent, popularentur, and prohiberent*, explaining *eo consilio*; viz., 'to storm, if they could,' etc. *possent*: *subjunc.* by attraction; *sequence*? *cui*: dat. with comp. verb (*praecerat*); see (337) 13. *si potuissent*: *subjunc.* by attraction, being within the *ut popularentur* clause; 'if (having made the attempt) they should have been unable': in these two *si* clauses, *possent* = *fut. indic.*, *potuissent* = *fut. perf.*

indic. of a more viv. fut. condition, see (223); thus 'we will storm, if we are (*shall be*) able,' and 'we will ravage, if we are not (shall not have been) able (to storm)': for *mood* of condition in indir. disc., see (396). 14. *nobis usui*: doub. dat., see (352); 'who were very useful (for a great use) to us.' *commeatu*: abl. of separation, 'from supplies.'

CHAPTER X.—1. *certior factus*: see (338), '(on) being informed by Titurius.' The lieutenant was about a mile nearer the fords where the Belgians were crossing than Caesar was. 2. *levis armaturae*: gen. depen. upon *Numidas*, 'Numidians of light equipment': these light-armed troops were swift runners and could arrive at the ford more quickly than the rest, where they were to stop the passage of the Belgians. 4. *pugnatum est*: impers. verb, see (365), 'a fierce engagement occurred.' *hostes*: acc. obj. of *aggressi*. *impeditos*: p. p. mod. *hostes*; 'having attacked the enemy who were hindered in the river.' 5. *aggressi*: limits *nostri*. *reliquos*: adj. used as noun, acc. obj. of *reppulerunt*, and modified by *conantes*, the pres. particip. of *conor*; 'our men drove back . . . the rest of the enemy as they were trying very boldly to cross over (*per*)'. 6. *multitudine*: abl. of means mod. *reppulerunt*. 7. *primos*: adj. as noun, dir. obj. of *interfecerunt*. 8. *circumventos*: p. p. mod. *primos*; see (381). *hostes*: stands at the head of the sent. and belongs to the principal clause in Latin, but is incorporated in the *ubi* clause when translated: 'when the enemy perceived that hope had failed them.' *et de expugnando*: 'both with respect to storming.' 9. *neque progredi viderunt*: 'and when they say that our men were not advancing.' 11. *atque*: still using *ubi*, 'and when corn supplies began.' *ipsos*: i.e. the enemy. On account of a lack of provisions the enemy could not carry on a long campaign with such a large army as Caesar's. 12. *optimum*: acc. *neut.* pred. adj. with *esse*, whose subj. is the *domum* . . . *reverti* clause: 'decided that it was best for each one (*quemque*) to return to his own home.' 13. *domum*; see (386). *et convenirent*: after *constituerunt*, 'and (they decided) to assemble.' *constituo* is followed sometimes by the *acc.* + *infin.*, sometimes by *ut* + *subjunc.*; rarely, as *here*, by both in the *same sentence*. *quorum*: anteced. *eos*; order, *ad defendendos eos quorum in fines Romani introduxissent*, 'with a view toward defending those into whose borders the Romans should lead (should have led).' 14. *introduxissent*: subjunc. as being a part of the *ut convenirent* clause following a *past* verb, *constituerunt*; it stands for the fut. perf. indic. of the *direct*; see (223, 396). *ad . . . defendendos*: gerundive of purpose, see (253, 355). 15. *ut decertarent*,



**uterentur**: affirm. purpose depen. upon **convenirent**, '(to assemble, etc.) so that they might contend and use.' **potius quam**: 'rather than.' 16. **alienis** = **aliorum**, 'of others,' as opposed to **domesticis**, that is, *their own*. **copiis**: 'supplies.' **rei frumentariae**: 'of grain.' 17. **ad eam sententiam**: 'to this determination.' 18. **ratio**: order, **haec ratio quoque cum reliquis causis deduxit**; 'this consideration too, together with other reasons, brought them.' **quod**: 'namely, the fact that.' 19. **cognoverant**: 'they knew.' **appropinquare**: has two subjects, 'were drawing near to.' **finibus**: dat. after comp. verb (**ad** + **propinquo**), see (337). 20. **his persuaderi**: this idiom is fully explained in (380). **ut morarentur neque ferrent**: 'to delay *and not* to offer.' **suis**: indir. obj.; adj. used as noun, 'to their friends.'

CHAPTER XI.—1. **ea re**: 'after this matter had been agreed upon,' that is, for each one to return to his home. **strepitu, tumultu**: abl. of manner, mod. **egressi**; see (210). 2. **egressi**: mod. subj. contained in **fecerunt**; see (340). **nullo . . . imperio**: abl. of manner, as though explaining or adding to **magno . . . tumultu**; '(that is) without orderly array and without an officer in command.' 3. **cum peteret, properaret**: 'causal **cum**,' see (350); this clause in turn explains **nullo . . . imperio**; 'since each soldier was seeking for himself . . . and was hastening.' **domum**: see (386). 4. **ut . . . videretur**: affirmative *result* clause, object of **fecerunt**; 'they made their departure seem,' lit. 'they caused it so that their departure seemed.' **fugae**: dat. with (adj.) **consimilis**, see (126). 5. **videretur**: in the *pres. syst. pass.* used as a depon. 'to seem.' **hac . . . cognita**: abl. absol. mod. **continuit**, of which 'Caesar' is the subj.; **re** = the departure of the enemy. **per speculatores**: 'by means of spies'; difference betw. **ab** and **per**? **ab** + *abl.* = direct (voluntary) agency; **per** + *acc.* = indirect agency, the agent being considered the instrument or means. **speculatores** = spies who mingled in disguise with the enemy to obtain information; **exploratores** = scouts or squads of regular cavalry detailed to range the country in the vicinity of the enemy. 6. **veritus**: 'fearing,' **quod . . . perspexerat**: causal clause mod. **continuit**, see (276). **discederent**: 'indir. quest.,' see (313); sequence from **perspexerat**; the *imperf. tense* shows that the *action* of the verb (**discederent**) is *going on* at the *time* of the action of the verb upon which it depends, 'he had not yet found out (did not know) for what reason the enemy *were departing*.' 8. **prima luce**: 'at early dawn.' **re** = the fact of the enemies' departure. **qui . . . moraretur**: rel. clause of purpose, 'to delay the rear' (of the Belgians); sequence from **praemisit**; the *imperf. tense*

denotes that the *action* of the verb (*moraretur*) is to take place at some time in the *future, subsequent to the time* of the action in *praemisi*; hence this *imperf. subjunc.* = time *fut. (subsequent)*; the *imperf. subjunc. (discederent, just above)* denotes time *pres. (contemporaneous)*. 10. *his* . . . *praefecit*: 'over these he placed in command;' see (337). 12. *hi*: 'the latter,' i. e. Labienus and his men. *novissimos*: supply *hostes*, 'the rear.' *adorti, prosecuti*: mod. *hi*. 13. *eorum fugientium*: 'of them as they fled;' *fugientium* = pres. particip. gen. plur. mod. *eorum*. 14. *cum*: causal, see (350); introduces *consisterent, sustinerent, and ponerent*; 'since those in the rear (*ab, etc.*) whom the Romans had overtaken were making a stand.' *ventum erat* = *impers.*, see (365); lit., '(to whom) it had been come.' 16. *priores*: adj. used as noun (*prior, -ior, -ius*), subj. of *ponerent*, see (258); 'and since those in front,' that is, those at the head of the retreating column. 17. *quod viderentur, continerentur*: subjunc. by attraction, as being part of the *cum ponerent* clause; 'because they seemed to be out of danger and were not restrained.' 18. *omnes*: mod. *priores*. 19. *tantam . . . spatium*: 'as great a number as the length of the day permitted.' 21. *sub occasum*: 'about the setting.' 22. *ut*: parenthetical, 'as they were commanded.'

CHAPTER XII.—1. *postridie eius diei*: 'on the next day,' lit., 'on the after day of that day.' *prius quam*: takes the subjunc. when the action is expected, intended or in suspense; 'before the enemy could recover (themselves).' Caesar now proceeded to subdue the enemy tribe by tribe, since his plans for separating them had been successful. 3. *magno*: 'by making a forced march.' 4. *Noviodunum*: about 20 miles west of Bibrax. *id (oppidum)*: obj. of *oppugnare*. *ex itinere*: as we say, 'on the fly,' without stopping to invest or besiege. 5. *quod*: acc. subj. of *esse*, 'which he kept hearing was.' 6. *paucis defendentibus*: abl. absol., denoting concession, see (364), example 3; 'although few were defending it.' 7. *vineas*: 'to bring up the vineae.' Movable sheds (*vineae*), with roofs and sides of wickerwork or planks covered with skins, were placed end to end, forming galleries through which the men passed back and forth when they were besieging a strongly fortified town. 8. *quae*: anteced. is *ea*, the dir. obj. of *comparare*, 'and to prepare those things which were useful.' *usui*: dat. of purpose, end, or service. 9. *ex fuga*: 'in their flight.' 10. *veneis . . . actis*: 'when the vineae were brought up.' 11. *lacto*: p. p. p. (from *iacio*), forming an abl. absol. with *aggere* (from *agger*). *magnitudine*: abl. of

cause, mod. *permoti*; 'being greatly alarmed on account of the extent of the works,' i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations. 12. *quae*: refers to *operum*, hence neut. plur.; it is dir. obj. of *viderant* and *audierant*, 'which (such as) the Gauls had neither seen nor heard of.' 13. *celeritate*: abl. of cause with *permoti*. 14. *petentibus Remis*: abl. absol., see (364), 'at the request of the Remi.' *ut conservarentur*: affirm. result clause, obj. of *impetrant*, 'they obtain the request that they should be spared.'

CHAPTER XIII.—1. *obsidibus*: apposition with *primis* and *filiis*, which are the principal words—the basis—of the abl. absol. with *acceptis*, 'after he had received as hostages the chief men of the state and the two sons.' *ipsius*: adds emphasis to *Galbae*. 4. *in Bellovacos*: 'against the Bellovaci,' their territory lay west of the Suessiones. *qui*: the rel. pron. at the beginning of a paragraph, see (367); *qui* is translated after *cum*, 'now when these.' 5. *contulissent*: 'had betaken themselves with all their possessions'; *omnia* modifies *sua*, which is used as a noun; see (258). *atque*: joins *contulissent* and *abesset*, both following *cum*; 'and while Caesar was distant.' 7. *maiores*: comparative of *magnus*, used as a noun, subj. of *coeperunt*, etc.; 'all the older men,' lit., 'all the greater by birth.' *egressi*: mod. *maiores*. 8. *voce significare*: 'to declare,' what literally? They uttered cries of supplication in a tongue different from Latin. *sese* . . . *contendere*: indir. disc., *venire* and *contendere* being used in a *fut.* sense: 'that they would place themselves under his protection . . . and would not contend'; *sese* refers to the speakers (*reflexive*), *eius* to Caesar—the person addressed. 10. *cum accessisset, poneret*: 'after he had approached (time *antecedent*) and while he was pitching (time *contemporaneous*) his camp.' 11. *pueri*: 'the children.' *ex muro*: '(standing) on.' *passis manibus*: 'with outstretched hands,' abl. of manner. 12. *ab Romanis*: 'of the Romans.'

CHAPTER XIV.—1. *pro his*: 'in behalf of these'; i.e. the *Bellovaci*. *discessum*: noun, 'after the departure.' 2. *dimissis*: 'when the forces of the Aedui had been dismissed.' *reverterat*: notice the tense, 'he *had* come back.' *facit verba* = *dicat*. The rest of the chapter is in *indir. disc.*; for the 'Oratio Recta' form of this chapter, see (407). 3. *Bellovacos*: 'he said that the Bellovaci had been.' *omni tempore*: 'always.' 4. *impulsos*: p. p. p. mod. (*eos*) the subj. of *defecisse* and *intulisse*; notice the emphatic position of *impulsos*, 'he said that they (the Bellovaci), urged on (being urged

on) by their chiefs . . . had both revolted and brought war.' **qui dicerent**: 'who kept saying;' subord. clause in indir. disc., hence *subjunc.*, see (306). Following **dicerent** (a verb of 'saying') there is an infin. proposition, **Aeduos . . . perferre**; this makes indir. disc. *within* indir. disc. 5. **redactus**: p. p. p. mod. **Aeduos**, lit. 'having been (being) reduced,' but best rendered by a *finite verb*, see (381) 'who kept saying that the Aedui *had been reduced* . . . and were suffering (*perferre*). 6. **et . . . et**: see note 4 above, 'both . . . and.' **defecisse**, **intulisse**: princ. verbs (infin.) in the indir. disc.; for the *time relation of tense*, see (305). **populo**: dat. with comp. verb, **intulisse**, see (337). 7. **qui**: anteced. is (**eos**), acc. subj. of **profugisse**; see O. R. (407); follows **facit verba**: 'he said that those, who had been (were) the leaders in (of) this scheme.' **fuissent**: subord. clause in O. O., see (306); what tense in O. R.? see (467). It is *pluperf.* in the indir. disc. (for *past* time) since it follows **facit verba** (*historical pres.*) which is regarded as a *past tense* rather by its *meaning* than its form. 8. **quod . . . intellegent**: subord. in O. O., 'because they knew'; what in the direct? **civitati**: dat. with comp. verb. **intulissent**; indir. quest. remains subjunc. in O. R., see (407); its sequence is from **intellegent** and it denotes action *completed*; 'because they realized how great a disaster they *had* brought upon.' 9. **profugisse**: see note 7, first part. **petere**: princ. verb in O. O.; notice that it denotes action *going on at the time of the action of facit verba* and that **facit verba** is treated, in the rest of the chapt., as a *pres.* tense, by its *form* rather than its meaning: 'he says that not only the Bellovaci *are pleading*.' 10. **Aeduos**: also subj. of **petere**. **ut . . . utatur**: depends upon **petere**, 'that he should exercise'—freely with **petere**, 'are begging him to exercise': direct, 'the Bellovaci *beg you to exercise*,' see (407). **in eos**: 'toward them'; **se** would have appeared here, but for the interposition of **Aeduos**. 11. **Quod si fecerit**: 'and (he says) that if he (Caesar) does this'; **fecerit** = *perf. subjunc.*, sequence from **facit verba** (*dicat*). 12. **amplificaturum esse**: subj. is (**eum**), 'that he will increase': for this condit. in O. R., see (223, 407); for change of mood and tense, in O. R., see (396). **auxiliis**, etc.: 'by whose aid and assistance,' abl. of *means*, mod. **sustentare**. 13. **si qua**, etc.: 'if any wars (whatever wars) arose.' **consuerint**: perf. subjunc., 'they were (had become) accustomed to hold out.' See (407), for construction in O. R.

CHAPTER XV.—1. **honoris**: gen. depen. upon **causa**, see (7), 'for the sake of his regard.' **Divitiaci, Aedunorum**: objective genitives,

depen. upon *honoris*, 'for Divitiacus and the Aedui'; see chapter 8, note 2, '*virtutis*.' *sese recepturum esse*: depen. upon *dixit*; see (318), 3 and 4. 3. *magna auctoritate*: 'abl. of quality,' see (376), 'because the state was (one) of great influence.' *his . . . collatis* (from *confero*): two abls. absol. of time, mod. *pervenit*; translate by an '*after*' clause, 'after these were handed over,' etc. 6. *Ambianorum*: north of the Bellovaci; Caesar's route lay to the north, probably by way of Amiens. 7. *finis*: obj. of *attingebant*; observe the emphatic position of *finis eorum*. *Nervii*: considered the most savage of all the Belgae, occupying the basin of the Sambre river. *quorum de natura*: adv. phrase mod. *quaereret*, 'when Caesar inquired about their nature and customs.' 9. *nullum aditum*: acc. of thing possessed. *mercatoribus*: dat. of possessor. *esse* = 'have', see (357); indir. disc. to the end of the chapter; 'he found out that merchants *have* no access to them,' lit. 'that no access to them is to merchants'; direct, '*nullus aditus (nom.) ad eos est mercatoribus*.' *pati*: pres. infin. of *patior*, princ. verb (infin.) depen. upon *reperiebat*; the subj. of *pati* is (*eos*); 'that they allowed (were allowing) no wine to be imported (inferri).' *vini*: partitive gen., see (378). 11. *pertinentium*: pres. particip. gen. plur. mod. *rerum*. *inferri*: complementary infin. depen. upon *pati*. *quod . . . existimarent*: subjunc. because a subord. clause in indir. disc.; though modifying *pati* (a *pres. tense*), it derives its sequence from *reperiebat*, the main verb of saying. *rebus*: abl. of means, mod. the two following infins. which depend upon *existimarent*, 'because they believe that by these things.' *animos*: 'spirit,' as a quality of character. *virtutem*: 'valor,' as a manifestation of courage in deeds; 'their spirit is (would be) weakened and their valor given up.' 12. *esse*: follows *reperiebat*, 'he found out that the men were fierce.' *que* connects *feros* (adj.) and *virtutis* (gen. of quality), the latter being used in the sense of an adj.; 'fierce and of great courage.' *inorepitare, incusare*: princ. verbs in indir. disc., subj. (*eos*); 'he found out that they kept chiding and blaming.' 14. *qui*, etc.: would have a subjunc. verb in the direct disc. also, since it is a rel. causal clause; *qui* = *cum ei*, see (350, 368); 'since they had surrendered.' 15. *confirmare*: depen. upon *reperiebat*, and has as its subj. (*se*); 'that they declare.' *se missuros esse*: infin. in indir. disc. with *confirmare*, 'that they will neither send ambassadors nor accept.'

CHAPTER XVI.—1. *eorum*: i.e. of the Nervii. *triduum*: acc. of extent in time, 'for three days'; see (342). *inveniebat*: 'he con-

tinued to find out (further).’ 2. **non amplius**: adv. ‘not more (than).’ **milia**: acc. of extent of space, mod. **abesse**; see (342). 4. **consedisse, expectare**: note the difference in time, with reference to the time of **inveniebat**; ‘that all the Nervii *had encamped and were awaiting*.’ 4. **una cum**: ‘along with.’ 6. **utrisque**: from **uterque**, dat. plur. mod. **his**: for declension of **uter**, see (286); for the case of **his**, see (345); ‘for they had persuaded each of these (tribes).’ **uti (ut) . . . experientur**: clause of purpose depen. upon **persuaserant** (see preced. note and reference), ‘to try.’ 7. **expectari**: infin. in indir. disc. depen. upon **reperiebat**; ‘that the forces of the Aduatuci *were also being waited for*.’ 8. **esse**: ‘were.’ in **itinere**: ‘on the march.’ **mulieres**: acc. dir. obj. of **coniecisse**, whose subj. is (**Nervios**), the infin. clause depen. upon **reperiebat**; ‘that (the Nervii) had hurriedly placed the women.’ **qui**: anteced. is (**eos**), which is to be supplied as a second dir. obj. of **coniecisse**, ‘and those (men) who.’ **per aetatem**: ‘by reason of old age.’ 9. **viderentur**: as depon., ‘seemed.’ **quo**: rel. adv. = **ad quem**, ‘to which,’ ‘where.’ 10. **exercitui, aditus**: dat. of possessor, and nom. of thing possessed, see (357); ‘the army could not (did not) have access.’ **esset**: introduced by **quo**, a rel. clause of *characteristic*, which takes the *subjunc.*, even in the direct disc.

CHAPTER XVII.—2. **qui . . . deligant**: see (311); in what *four* ways may affirmative purpose be expressed? see (355). **ex dediticiis**: with **complures**, in place of the partitive gen., see (378), ‘exceptions’; ‘while several of the surrendered Belgians’: i.e. the Ambiani, Suessiones, and Bellovaci. 4. **secuti**: depon. particip. mod. **complures**, rendered by a finite verb, see (381), ‘were following Caesar and were marching along (with him).’ **quidam ex his**: ‘certain of these’—see note 2 above. **ut . . . cognitum est**: **ut** + indic. = ‘as’; parenthetical and verb impersonal, see (365); ‘as he afterwards found out’—what literally? 5. **consuetudine perspecta**: abl. absol. mod. **pervenerunt**; notice the accumulation of genitives; **dierum** and **exercitus limit itineris**, which in turn depends upon **consuetudine**, ‘after observing the army’s usual marching order during those days.’ 7. **atque his**: ‘and announced to the latter (the Nervii).’ **inter singulas legiones**: indir. disc. through **auderent** (line 12) depen. upon **demonstra(ve)runt**; ‘that between every two legions.’ 8. **intercedere**: depen. upon **demonstrarunt**, subj. **numerus**, ‘a great number of baggage (animals) passed (as a usual thing).’ **neque**: continues indir. disc., ‘and that it was not any trouble.’ **negotii**: partitive

gen. depen. upon *quicquam* (for *quidquam*) acc. neut. in the predicate with *esse*. 9. *venisset*: 'after the first legion had come.' 10. *abessent*: 'and while the rest of . . . were quite a good distance off.' *adoriri*: infin. used as *subj.* of *esse*; *what* was no trouble? 'to attack this legion.' *qua pulsa* (from *pello*): abl. absol. rendered by a conditional, 'and that, if this should be routed;' see (364). 12. *futurum (esse)*: with *demonstrarunt*, 'that it would be,' or 'the result would be.' *ut non auderent*: neg. result clause, 'that the rest of the legions would not dare;' see (321). *futurum esse ut* + *subjunc.* = periphrasis or substitution for the *fut. infin.*; see (362). 13. *adiuvabat*: used impersonally, with the *quod* . . . *effecerant* clause as its *subj.*; 'the fact that (*quod*) the Nervii . . . helped the plan of those who reported the matter.' 14. *Nervii*: *subj.* of *effecerant*; 'the fact that the Nervii had caused these hedges to furnish,' lit. 'had made it so that (*ut*) these hedges furnished (*praeberent*).' *cum* . . . *possent*: 'since they could do nothing with cavalry.' 15. *neque enim*: 'and in fact . . . not.' *ei rei*: dat. obj. of *student*, 'do they care for this kind of service,' i.e. use of cavalry. *quic(d)quid*: adverbial accus., see (374); *quicquid* . . . *copiis*, freely translated, 'all the strength they possess lies in infantry.' 16. *quo* = *ut eo* (accompanied by the comparative *facilius*) introducing *impedirent*: translated and explained in (384). 17. *si* . . . *venissent*: for the *fut. perf. indic.* in the *direct*, see (223, 396); 'if they should come against them.' 18. *crebrisque* . . . *interiectis*: 'and, when their numerous branches had grown out *on the sides* (in *latitudinem*) and when brambles and thornbushes had been *thrown into* (*interiectis*) the spaces between the trees.' The trees were notched and bent when young and the branches were trained to grow out on the sides. In the spaces left between the trees and not covered up were placed brambles and bushes which made an impregnable hedge. 21. *quo* . . . *posset*: rel. clause of result, *quo* = rel. adv.; see (387). *ne* . . . *quidem*: give emphasis to the word between them, 'but not even *be seen*.' *cum*: *causal*, see (350); 'since the march (advance) of our line would be checked.' 23. *omittendum sibi*: see (361, 362, 363).

CHAPTER XVIII.—2. *delegerant*: note the force of the pluperf. *collis*: the hill upon which the Roman camp was laid out. *ab summo*: 'from the top,' mod. *declivis*. *declivis*: 'sloping down uniformly.' 3. *vergebat*: 'inclined.' 4. *pari acclivitate*: 'of equal steepness,' with *collis*. *pari* = adj. of third declens. (one ending), from *par. nascebatur*, etc.: 'rose up facing this and on the other side (of the

stream).’ 5. *ducentos passus*: acc. extent of space, mod. *apertus*; see (342). *infimus, apertus*: mod. *collis*, ‘open (bare of trees) for about 200 feet at the foot (*infimus*)’: the hill was bare of trees for 200 feet up the slope from the bank of the river. *ab superiore parte*: abl. with *ab*, giving the point of view from which; ‘along the upper part.’ 6. *silvestris*: mod. *collis*, ‘covered with trees.’ *ut non . . . posset*: neg. result clause, see (321); recast in the *act.*, ‘so that one could not easily see within.’ 7. *continebant*: imperf. of continued action, see (102). 8. *secundum*: prep. + acc. *videbantur*: ‘there appeared a few squads.’ 9. *pedum*: gen. of measure used in the predicate.

CHAPTER XIX.—1. *praemisso*: ‘after sending forward.’ 2. *copiis*: abl. of attendance or accompaniment; this abl. often omits *cum* in military phrases. *ratio ordoque*: since the two phrases convey a single idea, the verb is singular. *aliter ac*: ‘otherwise than;’ *atque, ac*, after words of likeness and unlikeness mean ‘than;’ translate, ‘was different from what the Belgae had reported.’ 5. *post eas (legiones)*: ‘behind these (legions).’ *totius*: gen.; declined in (286). *colloca(ve)rat*: ‘he had placed (for safety).’ 7. *praesidioque impedimentis erant*: doub. dat., see (352), ‘and guarded the baggage.’ 9. *transgressi*: particip. (perf.) depon., see (340), mod. *equites*, the subj. of the sent.; ‘having crossed.’ 10. *cum*: with *reciperent, facerent, auderent*, the clauses describing the situation and mod. *coeperant munire*. *illi*: subj. of *reciperent* and *facerent*. *ad suos*: ‘adj. used as noun,’ see (258); refers to the *subj.*, ‘while they (the enemy) would retreat . . . and would make an attack again.’ 11. *neque = et . . . non; nostri*: subj. of *auderent*. *longius*: adv. compar. degree (followed by *quam* = ‘than’), mod. *insequi*; ‘and while our men did not dare to pursue them as they were retreating farther than.’ 12. *quem ad finem = ad finem ad quem*, ‘to the limit where.’ *perrecta, aperta*: adjs. mod. *loca*; ‘the level (clear) open ground extended.’ 13. *cedentes*: pres. particip. acc. plur. mod. (*eos*), obj. of *insequi*. 14. *quae . . . venerant*: ‘which had been the first to arrive.’ *dimenso* (from *dimetior*): in *pass.* sense, abl. absol. 15. *ubi*: introduces a purely temporal clause: compare this with *cum* (line 10); see (203). *ubi . . . visa sunt*: ‘when the foremost (part of the) baggage of our army was seen.’ 16. *quod . . . convenerat*: ‘which had been agreed upon as the time.’ 17. *committendi*: see gerundive, (253). *ut . . . confirmaverant*: ‘just as they had arranged their line . . . and (as) they had resolved (to do)’—*sese confirmaverant* = ‘had resolved.’ 20. *his*: abl. absol., ‘as these (our cavalry) were easily defeated.’ 21.



**decucurrerunt**: 'they ran down.' **ut . . . viderentur**: affirm. result, see (321); 'so that the enemy seemed (to be).' **paene uno** 'almost at one and the same time.' 22. **et ad silvas**: 'both near the woods.' **iam in manibus nostris**: 'and now close at hand.' Perhaps about twenty minutes, as the Roman camp was three-quarters of a mile from the river, in fording which there was no doubt some delay. It is a surprise that Caesar did not have troops ready to repel the enemies' charge. 23. **adverso colle**: 'up the hill (facing them).' 24. **eos**: with **ad**; 'and to those who were engaged;' **occupati** has the force of a pred. adj. **opere**: i.e. fortifying the camp.

CHAPTER XX.—1. **Caesari**: dat. of pers. agent, mod. **agenda erant**; see (361, 362, 363); 'Caesar had to do everything at once,' lit. 'all things had to be done by Caesar.' 2. **proponendum erat**: 'had to be raised;' supply **erat** or **erant** with each of the following verbs (periphrastic). The vexillum was the large banner hoisted to announce an intended engagement. **cum . . . oporteret**: lit., 'when it ought to be hurried,' freely, 'when the soldiers ought to hasten;' see (385). 3. **tuba**: 'the call had to be sounded with the trumpet;' the call to take their places in the line. **ab opere**: 'from their work.' 4. **qui**: its anteced. is the *subj.* contained in **arcessendi erant**, 'those who had proceeded.' These soldiers would need a special messenger since they were out of hearing of the usual signals. **paulo longius**: 'a little farther (than usual).' **aggeris**, etc.: 'for the sake of procuring material for the rampart;' see gerundive (253). 5. **cohortandi erant**: the *gerundive* of a *depon.* always has a *passive* meaning; 'had to be encouraged;' this was always done if possible. 6. **signum dandum (erat)**: here a signal for the attack made by horns and trumpets. **quarum rerum**: gen. depen. upon **partem**; **quarum** = 'but these,' see (367); 'but the shortness of the time and the approach of . . . prevented a great part of these things.' 7. **impediebat**: sing. agreeing with the nearer *subj.* **difficultatibus**, **subsidio**: doub. dat., see (352); 'in (to) these difficulties two things were (for) a help:' first, the previous training of the soldiers; second, putting a lieutenant over each legion. 8. **scientia atque usus**: apposition with **duae res**. **quod . . . poterant**: 'because they themselves (ipsi) could.' 9. **exercitati**: p. p. p. mod. **ipsi**, the *subj.* of the **quod** clause; see (316). **quid**: acc. *subj.* of **fieri**, depen. upon the impersonal verb **oporteret**—a subjunc. of *indir. quest.*, see (313); **oporteret** gets its sequence from **poterant praescribere**; 'could give directions to themselves (sibi) as to what ought to be done.' 10. **non minus**: 'no less.' **quam**: 'than.' 11.

**doceri (poterant):** 'could be directed by others.' 12. **singulis legionibus:** 'from (ab) the several legions.' **singulos legatos:** acc. subj. of **discedere**, depen. upon **vetuerat** (from **veto**); 'had forbidden the several lieutenants to withdraw.' 13. **nisi castris munitis:** idiom, 'until the camp had been fortified.' 14. **nihil imperium:** 'no command whatever;' 'not at all.' 15. **per se:** 'of their own efforts.' **quae:** anteced. is (**ea**), obj. of **administrabant**, 'attended to what (= those things which) seemed best.'

CHAPTER XXI.—1. **necessariis**, etc.: 'after giving (only) the necessary commands.' **ad cohortandos:** see (355), 'four ways to express *purpose*;' see (253), 'gerundive construction.' 2. **quam in partem = in eam partem in quam:** 'into that quarter where fortune led him.' 3. **decimam:** Caesar's favorite legion; it was at the extreme left of the line; next came the IXth, then the XIth, VIIIth, XIIth, and lastly the VIIth. **milites:** acc. dir. obj. of **cohortatus**, which mod. *Caesar*; 'having encouraged his soldiers.' **non longiore quam ut:** 'with no longer an address than (to tell them) that.' 4. **suae:** refers to the subj. of **retinerent**; see (189, 214); 'of their usual.' 5. **neu:** negatives are continued by **neve** or **neu**, 'and that they should not.' 6. **sustinerent:** with **ut** understood depen. upon **cohortatus**. **quod . . . aberant:** mod. **dedit**. **non longius quam:** 'no farther than (the distance)' 7. **quo:** adverbial relative; 'to which a dart could be hurled.' **posset:** introduced by **quo**, a characteristic relative, taking the verb in the *subjunc.* 8. **profectus:** 'depon. perf. participle,' see (340); mod. the subj. of **occurrit**; 'having advanced into another quarter.' 9. **pugnantibus:** pres. particip. dat. plur. mod. (**suis**), the dat. obj. of **occurrit** (comp. verb—**ob-curro**); see (337); 'he came upon his men (already) fighting.' **tanta exiguitas:** 'such was the want of time.' 10. **hostium:** with **animus**; 'and the spirit of . . . so determined upon a battle.' **ut . . . defuerit** (from **desum**): affirm. result, 'that time was lacking;' note the use again of the *perf. subj.* (of result) after **fuit**, a verb of *past* time. 11. **ad insignia:** 'for putting on their decorations': to distinguish the different legions and officers. 12. **scutis:** mod. **detrudenda**, 'from their shields': for agreement of these gerundives, see (253). 13. **quam in partem:** 'to whatever place each man from his work came.' **quaeque**, etc.: 'and whatever standards he first saw.' 14. **ad haec:** 'near these.' **ne . . . dimitteret:** neg. purpose, see (320); 'lest he should lose the opportunity (**tempus**).' in **quaerendis suis (signis):** gerundive, 'in searching for his own standards.'

CHAPTER XXII.—1. *magis ut, quam ut*: 'rather as,' 'than as,' take the *indic* *postulabat*. *natura, delectus, necessitas*: subjects of *postulabat*. in the *magis ut* clause, the verb (singular) being in agreement with the nearest subj. 2. *ratio, ordo*: subj. in the *quam ut* clause, 'than as the arrangement and order of military science.' 3. *cum* . . . *resisterent*: 'since the legions were resisting the enemy separately, some in one place and some in another'; this clause and the next, *cum* . . . *impediretur*, modify *poterant collocari* in the main clause. *cliae*: with *legiones* understood. 4. *hostibus*: dat. indir. obj. of *resisterent*; for case, see (348). *saepibus interiectis*: abl. absol. of *means* mod. *impediretur*; 'by the interposition of very thick hedges.' *tu*: 'as.' 5. *impediretur*: causal subjunc. introduced by *cum* (line 3), 'since the view was cut off.' *neque*: beginning of the main clause whose verb is *poterant*. 6. *subsidia*: subj. of *poterant collocari*; 'neither could reserves be stationed regularly.' *quid* . . . *esset*: indir. quest. subj. of *poterat provideri*; 'nor could whatever was needed in each quarter be provided—for.' 7. *administrari*: complementary infin. with *poterant*, 'could all commands be executed by a single man'—notice the emphatic position of *ab uno*. 8. *itaque*: 'and so.' *tanta*: mod. *iniquitate*. *fortuna*: gen. depen. upon *eventus*, the subj. of *sequebantur*, 'various issues of fortune also.'

CHAPTER XXIII.—1. *milites*: subj. of *compulerunt et interfecerunt*, 'the soldiers of the ninth,' etc., who were commanded by Labienus. *ut* . . . *constiterant*: 'as they had taken their stand.' 2. *acie* = *aciei* (gen.). *pilis emissis*: abl. absol. of *means* mod. *compulerunt*; best translated, 'by throwing pikes.' *pilum* = an offensive weapon, a strong and heavy pike six feet long and weighing ten or eleven pounds. This was the principal weapon of the legion soldiers, being thrown only at close range. *cursu ac lassitudine*: abl. of *means* mod. *exanimatos*, 'made breathless by speed and fatigue.' They had run about a mile and forded the river. 3. *exanimatos, confectos*: mod. *Atrebatas*, the obj. of *compulerunt*; 'drove the Atrebatas, made breathless . . . and exhausted with wounds.' *his* = *Atrebatas*; dat. after comp. verb *obvenerat*; see (337). *ea pars*: on the Roman side; 'for that part (the Roman left wing) had encountered these (the latter).'

4. *conantes*: pres. particip. (*act. form*) of *depon.*, acc. plur. mod. *eos*, i.e. *Atrebatas*, to be supplied as the dir. object of *insecuti*; 'and pursuing (them) as they were trying.' 5. *impeditam*: mod. *partem*, 'embarrassed (in the attempt to cross).' *ipsi*: emphatic; the soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions. 6. *resistentes*: pres. particip. mod.

*hostes*, the obj. of *coniecerunt*, 'put to flight the enemy when they again offered resistance.' 10. *profligatis*: p. p. p. abl. absol.; 'after routing the Viromandui with whom they had been engaged.' 11. in *ipsis ripis*: 'on the very banks.' 12. *proeliabantur*: for the force of the impf. see (102); 'kept up the fight.' at: 'but.' *totis . . . castris*: abl. absol. of *time* or *cause* mod. *contenderunt* (line 16). Notice the emphatic position of *totis* modified by *fere*, 'almost'; 'now that the camp was almost *entirely* laid bare along the front and on the left side.' The VIIIth and XIth had left the front of the camp, and the IXth and Xth the left, in pursuit of the enemy. 13. *cum . . . constitisset*: see causal *cum* (350)—'since the twelfth legion had taken its stand . . . and at no great distance from it.' 14. *ab ea*: *ea* refers to *duodecima legio*. *intervallo*: abl. of degree (measure) of difference. 15. *duce Boduognato*: abl. absol. composed of *two nouns*; see (364). 16. *summam*: noun, with limiting gen. *imperii* = 'the chief command.' 17. *aperto latere*: 'on the unprotected flank.' *circumvenire*: depen. upon *coepit*, which has the *first pars* as its subj., 'a part of whom began to surround.' 18. *summum castrorum locum*: 'the main point occupied by the camp.'

CHAPTER XXIV.—1. *levis armaturae*: 'of light equipment' = 'light-armed,' limiting *pedites*. 2. *cum eis una*: 'along with them'; *una* = adv. *quos*: acc. subj. of *pulsos esse*, indir. disc. depen. upon *dixeram*, 'who (not *whom*) I had said (before) were routed at the first assault.' *eis* = *equites*, *quos* = *equites et pedites*. 3. *cum . . . se reciperent*: historical *cum*, (see 128, 203, 359); 'as they were retreating.' *adversis hostibus*: dat. indir. obj. of the comp. verb, *occurrabant*, see (337); 'met the enemy face to face.' 4. *aliam in partem*: 'in another direction.' 5. *fugam petebant*: 'took flight.' Observe the *descriptive* force of the *imperfects* in this chapter. Just as the Nervii entered the Roman camp from the right, the Roman cavalry and auxiliaries (*pedites levis armaturae*) who had returned by a circuitous route poured into the camp from the left side, face to face with the enemy. *ab decumana porta*: 'from the rear gate.' abl. of the point of view from which. 6. *summo*, etc.; 'and from the uppermost ridge of the hill.' The rear of the camp was higher than the front and the *calones*, stationed here, could see the legions at the left cross the stream. They started to follow, but on looking back saw the Nervii rushing into the Roman camp from the right. *victores*: in the predicate with *nostros*. *transisse* (from *transeo*): infin. of indir. disc. with *conspexerant*; the subj. is *nostros*; for mean-

ings of the *perf. infin.* in O. O., see (305), 'that our men *had crossed* the river as victors.' 7. *egressi*: depon. *perf. particip.*, see (340); mod. *calones*, 'having gone forth.' *cum respexissent et vidissent*: histor. *cum*, see (359): compare the *time* of the action in *these verbs*, with that of *reciperent*, note 3 (line 3): these clauses mod. *mandabant*, 'on looking back and seeing.' 8. *hostes . . . versari*: depon. upon *vidissent*, 'that the enemy were (*versari*).' *praecipites*: adj. nom. plur. mod. *calones*, but with an adverbial force, 'in haste.' 9. *eorum*: the drivers, etc., in charge of the baggage-train behind which the XIIIth and XIVth legions had been placed; it is gen. depon. upon *clamor fremitusque*, 'the din and noise of those who were coming.' 10. *oriebatur*: sing., as *clamor* and *fremitus* contain one idea, 'arose.' 11. *perterriti*: p. p. p. mod. the subj. *alii*, see (316): 'and in great terror (thoroughly frightened) they fled (were borne), *some* in one direction, *some* in another.' *quibus*: see (367); mod. *rebus*, which in turn limits *permoti* (as an abl. of *means*); 'and thoroughly frightened by all *these* happenings.' 12. *permoti*: p. p. p. mod. *equites Treveri*, the subj. of *contenderunt* and *renuntiaverunt*. *virtutis opinio*: 'reputation for valor.' 14. *missi*: p. p. p. mod. *qui*, 'who had come being sent,' etc. *cum*: with *vidissent*, denoting time or cause, 'when or since they saw.' The infinitives (indir. disc.) depending upon *vidissent*, are: *compleri*, *premi*, *teneri*, and *fugere*; notice that these *infin.* are in the *pres. tense*, denoting action *going on* at the *time* of (*contemporaneous with*) the action of *vidissent*; see (301, 302, 392). *castra*: acc. subj. of *compleri*: 'that our camp was filling (was being filled).' 15. *legiones*: acc. subj. of *premi* and *teneri*. *circumventus*: p. p. p. mod. *legiones*, 'and that they *were being held* (*teneri*) almost surrounded.' 16. *calones*, etc.: acc. subj. of *fugere*, 'that the slaves, etc., were fleeing.' *diversos dissipatosque*: 'separated and scattered.' 17. *desperatis . . . rebus*: 'giving up our affairs as hopeless.' 18. *Romanos*: acc. subj. of *pulsos*, *superatos(esse)*, indir. disc. with *renuntiaverunt*; 'that the Romans had been defeated,' etc. 19. *castris impedimentisque*: abl. obj. of *potitos esse*, see (353). *hostes*: acc. subj. of *potitos esse*, indir. disc., 'that the enemy had captured their camp,' etc.

CHAPTER XXV.—1. *ab cohortatione*: 'from the cheering of the tenth legion'; abl. of place from which, mod. *profectus*. 2. *profectus*: depon. mod. *Caesar*, 'having proceeded.' *ubi . . . vidit*: translate *Caesar* as the subj. of this clause, though in the Latin it is the subj. of *processit* (line 15)—the first principal verb: 'when *Caesar* saw that his men were hard pressed.' *signis . . . collatis* (from *confero*): abl.

absol. 'the standards being brought together'; better rendered as a clause of statement, 'and that the standards were brought together.'

3. **confertos milites**: acc. subj. of **esse**, with **vidit**. **sibi, ipsos**: reciprocally emphasizing, these words are kept together: **ipsos** mod. **milites**; **sibi** with **impedimento** = doub. dat., see (352), lit. 'for a hindrance to themselves'; translate, 'and (when he saw) that the crowded soldiers of . . . were in one another's way for fighting (in the fight).'

4. **cohortis**: gen. depen. upon **centurionibus**. 5. **occisis**: abl. absol. with **centurionibus**, 'after all the centurions of . . . had been cut down.'

6. **amisso**: abl. absol., '(and) after the standard was lost.' These ablatives absol. denote *time* and mod. **processit**. **ferre**: adv. mod. **omnibus** (another abl. absol.), 'after nearly all the centurions of . . . had been either killed or wounded.'

7. **in his**: 'among these.' **primipilo . . . confecto**: abl. absol. 'the chief centurion, P. Baculus, a very brave man, being disabled by many severe wounds.' The chief ambition of the centurions was to become a **primipilus**, the highest in rank of all the centurions who stood in regular gradation. He had charge of the standard and was a member of the council of war.

9. **ut non posset**: neg. result; see (321); 'so that he could no longer stand up'; the sequence of **posset** is from **confecto**, which denotes *past time*; the *imperf.* (**posset sustinere** = **sustineret**) denotes action *going on* at the time of (contemporaneous with) the action of **confecto**.

**reliquos**: adj. used as noun, see (258); acc. subj. of **esse** with **vidit**, which is repeated in line 13 because of the length of the sentence; 'that the rest were *losing spirit* (**tardiores**).'

10. **nonnullos ab novissimis**: acc. subj. of **excedere** and **vitare**, 'and that some of those in the rear were withdrawing.'

11. **vitare**: 'were avoiding'; for the meaning of the *pres. infin.* in O. O., see (301, 302). **hostis** = **hostes**, acc. subj. of **intermittere** and **instare**. **neque**: 'and . . . not.'

12. **subeuntes**: pres. particip. of **subeo**, acc. plur. mod. **hostis**; 'and (when he saw) that the enemy did not cease coming up along the front from.'

**instare**: 'and were pressing forward.'

13. **rem esse in augusto**: 'and that the matter had reached a crisis.'

**neque subsidium**: 'and that there was no reserve force.'

14. **quod . . . posset**: characteristic rel. clause, 'that could be brought up.'

**souto . . . detracto**: abl. absol., 'jerking a shield.'

**uni militi**: dat. with a verb of *taking away*; see construction of **hostibus**, chap. 7, note 5; 'from a soldier.'

**ab novissimis**: '(among those) in the rear.'

16. **appellatis**: abl. absol., 'addressing the centurions by name.'

**cohortatus**: mod. Caesar, 'and encouraging the rest.'

17. **signa inferre**: 'to advance,' *infin.* with

*iussit*. By advancing they would increase the space between the ranks and obtain more room for the use of their swords. 18. *quo . . . possent*: affirm. purpose; *quo* = *ut eo* + comparative (*facilius*), see (384); 'so that they could use their swords to more advantage.' *uti*: from *utor*. *cuius adventu*: see (367), 'now upon the arrival of this one.' 18. *spe illata* (from *infero*): 'hope being inspired.' *militibus*: dat. with comp. verb, see (337); 'in the soldiers.' 19. *cum . . . cuperet*: causal clause, mod. *tardatus est*; see (350); 'since each man on his own account . . . even (*etiam*) in the greatest peril to himself desired to do his best.' 21. *paulum*: adv., 'a little.'

CHAPTER XXVI.—1. *cum . . . vidisset*: although *Caesar* (in the Latin sent.) is the subj. of *monuit*, it is to be read as the subj. of the *cum* clause; 'when Caesar saw that the seventh legion was likewise hard pressed.' 2. *tribunos*: dir. obj. of *monuit*, which is followed by the *ut* clause as a secondary object, 'he advised the tribunes . . . that the legions should gradually draw together.' 3. *conversa*: p. p. p. acc. plur. mod. *signa*, the acc. obj. of *inferrent*; lit., 'the turned standards,' but best translated by a co-ordinate verb; see (381); 'that they should face about and advance upon the enemy.' 4. *quo*: see (367); abl. absol., 'now when this was done.' *cum alius*, etc.: 'since one rendered assistance to one, another to another.' *alii*: dat., see (348). 5. *neque*, etc.: 'and since they did not fear (were not fearing).' *ne*: see (343), 'verbs of *fearing*'; 'that (lest) they would be surrounded.' *aversi*: p. p. p. nom. plur. mod. the subj. of *circumvenirentur*; 'in the rear': i.e. with their backs turned towards the enemy. 8. *praesidio, impedimentis*: doub. dat., see (352); translate (with *fuertant*), 'which had guarded the baggage in the rear.' *proelio nuntiato*: 'on hearing a report of the battle.' *cursu incitato*: 'having quickened their pace.' 10. *Labienu*: modified by two depon. participles, *potitus* and *conspicatus*, 'and Labienus having captured . . . and having observed from his higher position.' He, with the IXth and Xth legions, had been pursuing the Atrebatas. 10. *castris*: abl. obj. of *potitus*, see (353). 11. *quae res . . . gererentur*: indir. quest., see (313); sequence from *conspicatus*; 'having observed what things were going on (lit. 'were being waged') in our camp.' 12. *qui*: i.e. the soldiers of the Xth legion. Translate *within the cum* clause, 'now when these had found out.' 13. *quo . . . esset*: *quo*, from interrog. *quis*, introducing an indir. quest.; sequence from *cognovissent*, 'in what condition the affair was.' *quanto . . . versaretur*: indir. quest. (interrog. *quantus*), 'and in how great danger both the camp

... etc., *were* (*versaretur*).' 14. *versaretur*: sing. agreeing with the nearest of the *three* subjects. 15. *nihil... fecerunt*: 'they came up with the utmost possible speed.' *reliqui*: partitive gen. depen. upon *nihil*, lit. 'they made nothing of the rest as to (ad) quickness.'

CHAPTER XXVII.—1. *adventu*: abl. of cause, see (210), mod. *facta est*; 'upon (on account of) the arrival of these.' *rerum*: gen. with *commutatio*, 'change in things.' 2. *ut... redintegrarent*: affirm. result, see (321), sequence from *facta est*. *etiam qui*, etc.: 'even those who had fallen, exhausted with wounds.' *confecti*: p. p. p. mod. *qui*, see (316), and also (for *different* translation) see (381). 3. *soutis*: abl. known as the *locative ablative* (place where), mod. *innixi*. *innixi*: depon. perf. particip. mod. *nostri* (*qui*), 'leaning upon their shields.' *calones*: subj. of *occurrerunt*. 4. *perterritos*: p. p. p. mod. *hostes*, obj. of *conspicati*, which agrees with *calones*; 'then the slaves, seeing the enemy in utter confusion.' *inermes*: nom. plur. mod. *calones*, 'even though unarmed.' *armatis*: 'the armed'; p. p. p. of *armo*, mas. plur. *used as a substantive*, see (258); dat. with the compound verb *occurrerent*; see (337). 5. *equites vero*: 'and the cavalry too.' *ut... delerent*: affirm. purpose, 'so as to wipe out.' 6. *quo... praeferrent*: also affirm. purpose, *quo* = *ut eo*, rarely used without a comparative; 'so that thereby they might outdo.' *militibus*: dat. with a comp. verb, translated like an *accus.*; lit., 'place themselves before.' 7. *at*: 'but yet,' marks in an emphatic way a change in the point of view of the narrative, describing the maneuvers of the enemy. 8. *ut*: introduces *insisterent*, *pugnarent*, *conicerent*, *remitterent*, being repeated in line 12 (*ut non*) with *deberet*. *cum primi*, etc.; 'after their foremost men *had fallen*' (from *cado*). 9. *proximi*: adj. as noun, 'the next stood upon them as they lay prostrate.' *iacentibus*: pres. particip. dat. with *eis* understood after the comp. verb, *insisterent*. 10. *ex corporibus*: i.e. from the tops of the dead bodies; *ex* = 'on.' *his deiectis*: abl. absol., 'when these (*proximi*) were cut down.' 11. *qui superessent*: before this rel. clause supply *ut* going with *conicerent et remitterent*, the subj. of these verbs being the anteced. of *qui*; the *ut* clauses depend upon *praestiterunt*, in line 8; 'the enemy displayed such valor that those who survived hurled darts upon.' *ut ex tumulo*: 'as from a hill.' 12. *intercepta*: p. p. p. acc. plur. neut. mod. *pila*, but rendered by a verb co-ordinate with *remitterent*; 'picked up and threw back the pikes', or by a rel. clause, 'threw back the pikes which they picked up.' *ut non deberet*: neg. result, see (321), 'so that it ought not to be con-



sidered (iudicari).' 13. *nequiquam ausos esse*: the subj. of the infin. is *homines*; 'had vainly dared.' 15. *quae*: acc. plur. (mod. by *facilia*) obj. of *redegerat*; 'things (*bold deeds*) which their greatness of courage had made easy.' *ex*: 'from having been.' *difficillimis*: for comparison, see (314).

CHAPTER XXVIII.—1. *facto*: 'being finished.' 2. *gente ac nomine redacto*: 'the race and name of the Nervii being reduced almost to annihilation': *redacto* agrees with the *nearer* of the two nouns. *maiores natu*: 'the older men,' lit., 'the greater by birth': *subj.* of *miserunt, dederunt, and dixerunt*. *quos*: acc. subj. of *coniectos esse*, depend. upon *dixeramus*; 'who (not *whom*) I had said were hastily placed.' 3. *una cum*: 'along with.' *in*: with *acc.*, because of the idea of *motion* that prevails in *coniectos*. 4. *hac*, etc.: abl. absol., rendered, 'upon hearing a report of this engagement.' *cum . . . arbitrarentur*: causal clause, mod. *miserunt*, etc., see (350). *arbitrarentur* (a verb of *thinking*) governs two infin. propositions, *nihil impeditum esse*, and *nihil tutum esse*; 'that nothing was an obstacle to the victors and nothing secure for the conquered.' 5. *victis*: p. p. p. used as a noun, lit., 'for those having been conquered.' *omnium*: depen. upon *consensu*: 'with the consent of . . . the older men (from line 2) sent ambassadors.' 7. *ei*: dat. indir. obj., 'to him,' in *commemoranda calamitate*: gerundive, see (253). 8. *ex sexcentis, ex hominum milibus LX*: adverbial phrases limiting *redactos esse*: so with the two ad phrases. 9. *vix*: adv. restricting *ad quingentos*, 'to barely 500.' *qui . . . possent*: characteristic rel. clause and would take a subjunc. verb in the *direct*. *sese redactos esse*: for the *time relation* of this infin. with respect to the verb *dixerunt*, see (305); 'they said that they *had been* reduced.' 10. *quos*: obj. of *conservavit*, see (367); '*now* Caesar spared *these*.' 11. *ut . . . videretur*: 'that he might appear to have shown (*usus esse*) mercy.' *usus (esse)*: since the subj. of *usus esse* is the same as that of *videretur*, a *passive form*, the participial part of the *infin.* is retained in the *nom. case* (personal construction): here *usus* (nom. sing.) agrees with the subj. of *videretur*. *in*: 'toward.' 12. *finibus, oppidis*: abl. obj. of *uti* (from *utor*). 13. *finitimis*: dat. obj. of *imperavit*, see (145). What is the relation of the *time* expressed by *prohiberent* to that of *imperavit*? At the time he issued the command, were they not to execute it at some subsequent (fut.) time?

CHAPTER XXIX.—3. *domum*: acc. of limit of motion without *ad*, see (386). 4. *desertis*: 'after abandoning.' *sua*: adj. (neut. plur.)

as a noun mod. by *omnia*, obj. of *contulerunt* : for its reflex. force, see (189, 214); 'all their possessions.' *egregie munitum* : p. p. p. mod. *oppidum*, 'remarkably fortified.' Perhaps this *oppidum* (name not given) was placed upon the plateau in an angle formed by the confluence of the *Chambre* and *Meuse*, about 35 miles northeast of the battlefield. 5. *quod . . . haberet* : 'now although *this* town had'; again the *relative* at the beginning of a paragraph, see (350, 367). *ex . . . partibus* : in brief, 'all round.' 7. *una ex parte* : 'on one side.' *leniter acclivis* : 'a gently sloping.' 8. *amplius* : acc. of ext. in space, used adverbially. *pedum* : the gen. (with numerals) is used to define measures of *length*, *width*, etc. 9. *duplici altissimo muro* : abl. of means, mod. *muni(v)erant*, 'with a very high double wall': meaning either two parallel walls, or a wall of double the usual thickness. *tum* : 'then,' i.e. at this particular time. *magni ponderis* : 'of great weight.' 10. *collocabant* : force of the imperfect? *ipsi* : emphatic or intensive pron. 11. *ex Cimbris* : abl. of source. *erant prognati* : 'were descended.' *qui* : subj. of *reliquerunt*. 12. *eis impedimentis* : abl. absol. with *depositis*; 'having placed those incumbrances, which they could not take along': cattle as well as baggage. 14. *custodiam, praesidium* : in apposition with *milia*, 'left six thousand men as a guard and garrison.' *ex suis* : 'of their own.' 15. *una* : 'together with these'; i.e. with the *impedimentis*. *hi* : 'the latter,' i.e. the six thousand. 16. *exagitati* : 'being harassed.' *cum alias inferrent* : 'when at one time they were waging war.' 17. *alias*, etc.: supply *bellum sibi* with *illatum*, 'at another time they warded off (the war) *waged* (upon them).' 18. *pace facta* : abl. absol., mod. *delegerunt*. *delegerunt* : note the force of the perfect—time indefinitely past.

CHAPTER XXX.—*adventu* : abl. of time, 'and upon the first arrival of our army.' 2. *faciebant* : 'they kept making'; see (102). 3. *postea* : 'afterwards.' *vallo, castellis* : abl. of means, mod. *circummuniti*. 4. *circummuniti* : p. p. p. mod. the subj. of *continebant*; 'being protected by a rampart 15 miles around and by numerous strongholds.' *oppido* : supply in. 5. *vineis actis* : 'after the vineae were brought up.' *aggere exstructo* : '(and) after the agger had been made': *agger* = a long sloping mound of earth leading up to the height of the walls. *turrim . . . constitui* : indir. disc. with *viderunt*; notice the *time* indicated by the tense of *constitui*, 'that a tower *was being* constructed,' see (301, 302). 6. *irridere, increpitare* : *historical infinitives*; the infin. is often used for the *impf. indic.*

(descriptive impf.) and takes a subj. in the *nom.*; 'they at first began to laugh at us . . . and to taunt' (*increpitare vocibus*). 7. *quod . . . instrueretur*: subjunc. because the reason is given upon the authority of some one other than Caesar; see (276); 'because (as they stated) such an engine of war *was being erected*.' Notice the time of the action of *instrueretur*, as it relates to the time of the action in *irridere*; *irridere* = impf. indic. (a past tense), hence the subjunc. must be either impf. or plupf.; here impf. to denote *action* going on at the time of the action of *irridere* (contemporaneous action). *ab tanto spatio*: *ab* = adv., 'away.' *spatio* = abl. of degree of difference, 'at such a distance.' 8. *quibusnam manibus confident*: a question in the indirect disc., with the verb in the subjunc., 'by what hands, pray, or with what strength did they hope?' *viribus*: from *vis*. 9. *praesertim homines*: 'especially being men of such small stature,' spoken contemptuously. The Gauls expected the Romans to lift the tower and place it upon the wall—which seemed amusing. This indicates their utter lack of civilization. 10. *Gallis, contemptui*: doub. dat., see (352). 'for our shortness (of stature) is an object of ridicule with the Gauls.' 11. *tanti oneris*: 'of such weight.' *moturos (esse) sese*: indir. disc. with *confident*; for *time* indicated by *moturos esse*, see (318)—3 and 4; 'did they hope that they *would* move'? i.e. did they expect to move?

CHAPTER XXXI.—1. *ubi vero*: 'when indeed.' *moveri et appropinquare*: subj. *turrim* understood, 'was moving and approaching.' *moenibus*: dat. with a comp. verb. 2. *specie*: abl. of cause, mod. *commoti* (p. p. p.), which in turn mod. the subj. of *miserunt*; 'being greatly alarmed by the new and unusual sight.' 3. *locuti*: depon. perf. particip. mod. *qui*, the subj. of *dixerunt* (line 7); 'speaking after (ad) this fashion, said.' For use (mood and tense) of infin. and subjunc.—princip. and subord. clauses—in O. O., see (301, 302, 305, 306, 318, 392). 4. *existimare*: princip. verb depen. upon *dixerunt*; subj. *se* understood; 'that they did not believe (were not believing).' *Romanos . . . gerere*: is indir. disc. with *existimare*, like a wheel within a wheel; 'that the Romans waged (were waging)'; note the force of the pres. infin. in O. O., see (302)—example 3. 5. *qui . . . possent*: a rel. clause denoting cause, *qui* = *cum ei* (see 350), which would take a subjunc. verb in the *direct*; 'since they could move forward.' 7. *permittere*: 'that they surrendered themselves,' etc. *unum*: 'one thing only,' acc. sing. neut. obj. of *petere*; notice the emphatic

position of *unum*, which is explained by the *ne . . . despoliaret* clause; indir. disc. to the end of the chapt. *petere*, etc.: subj. is *se* understood, 'that they asked (were asking) and begged for one thing.' *si*: in this condition *si statuisset* is the protasis, *ne . . . despoliaret* the apodosis: in the *direct disc.* they were, *si statueris* (fut. perf. indic.) see (223), and *noli despoliare* (for *ne despolia*—imperative). For 'commands and exhortations,' see (389, 390). In changing this sent. to indir. disc., the princip. verb (*noli despoliare*) becomes *subjunc.* (neg. *ne*), *pres.* after *dicunt*, *imperf.* after *dixerunt* (as in this instance); the subord. verb, representing time *completed* (in the future), becomes *perf. subjunc.* after *dicunt*, *pluperf.* after *dixerunt* (as in this instance): observe that the person changes from the *second* to the *third*; 'if perchance Caesar resolved . . ., (they begged) that he would not (*ne*) deprive them of their arms.' 8. *pro sua*, etc.: 'in accordance with his usual.' *quam . . . audirent*: subord. clause in O. O., hence *subjunc.*; though depending upon the *si statuisset* clause, it obtains its sequence from *dixerunt*, the main verb of saying. Observe the *time* indicated by *audirent*, 'which they themselves *were* (constantly) *hearing of* through others.' 9. *conservandos esse*: periphras. pass. infin., indir. disc. with *statuisset*; 'that the Aduatuci ought to be spared.' How is the periphras. act. formed? how the pass.? how express the *person. agent* with this pass.? 10. *sibi*: dat. with *inimicos*, see (126), 'were hostile to them.' 11. *virtuti*: dat. indir. obj. of *invidere*, see (348), 'were jealous of their valor.' 12. *traditis armis*: abl. absol., translated by a conditional, 'if their arms were given up.' *sibi praestare*: indir. disc. with *dixerunt*; impersonal verb having up. *clause*, *quamvis fortunam . . . pati*, as the *subj.*; 'that it would be better for them . . . to suffer (*pati*),' etc. *si . . . deducerentur*: move viv. fut. in the direct; was this *fut.* or *fut. pf.* indic. in the direct? see (223). Does the imperf. subjunc. (O. O.) denote *finished* time, such as would be indicated by the fut. pf. indic. (O. R.)? Find answers to these questions in (396). 14. *quam interfici*: 'than to be put to death.' *consue(vi)sset*: subord. clause in O. O., plupf. denoting completed time, 'had been in the habit of.'

CHAPTER XXXII.—1. *respondit*: perf., not *pres.* *se*: indir. disc. through inferent. 2. *consuetudine, merito*: 'rather in accordance with his usual habit (of merciful treatment of a foe) than on account of any act of theirs'; the former = abl. of manner, the latter = abl. of cause; both mod. *conservaturum esse. conservaturum esse*: 'that

he would spare': this is the *apodosis verb* of a more viv. fut. condition in indir. disc., the *protasis verb* being *dedidissent*. In the *direct* they are written, *ego conservabo, si dedideritis* (fut. perf. indic.): notice that there is a change of *mood, tense, and person* when turning direct into indir. disc., the principal verbs of *declarative statement* clauses becoming *infin.*, and all subord. verbs *subjunc.* In changing *conservabo* to the *infin.*, the *tense* remains the same (whether it follows *replies* or *replied*); but in changing *dedideritis* to the *subjunc.*, the *tense* must be changed (as there is no *fut. perf. subjunc.*); the representatives of *finished time* in the *subjunc.* (*dedideritis* = time *finished* in the fut. before another fut. action) are the *perf.* after *replies*, the *pluperf.* after *replied*; see rule of seq. (135), and condit. in indir. disc., (396); and specimens of indir. disc., (400, 401). 3. *prius quam*: introducing *attigisset*, subord. verb in O. O., 'before the battering ram touched (reached)': *attigisset* = *attigerit* (fut. perf. indic.) in the *direct*; why not *imperf. subjunc.*? 4. *nullam condicionem*: acc. subj. of *esse*, 'that there were (would be) no terms.' *nisi armis traditis*: idiom, translated, 'unless their arms were handed over.' Offers of submission must be made before the battering ram (*aries*) reached the wall, since a besieged place was looked upon as already captured when this stage of the siege was reached. 5. *id facturum esse*: *id*, obj. of *facturum*, and anteced. of *quod*, 'that he would do that thing.' *quod . . . fecisset*: subord. verb in O. O., 'which he did (had done).' *fecisset* = what, in the *direct*? 6. *ne . . . inferrent*: could non be used? see (228, 389, 390); 'that he would command them not to do any (*quam*) harm.' Although *ne . . . inferrent* depends upon *imperaturum (esse)*, which is *fut.*, yet the *sequence of tense* is determined by *respondit (past tense)*; see (397). 7. *ad suos*: 'to their own people.' *quae*: anteced. is (*ea*), obj. of *facere*; *quae* = subj. of *imperarentur*. *facere*: *infin.* in indir. disc., subj. is (*se*); we should expect *facturos esse*, but the pres. tense is here used as an immediate future; 'they said that they would do those things which were being ordered.' 8. *magna multitudine . . . iacta*: abl. absol. of *time mod. usi sunt*, 'after they had thrown a large number.' 9. *sic ut*: 'so that.' *summam*: noun, dir. obj. of *adaequarent* (*subjunc.* of affirm. result). 10. *acervi*: subj. of *adaequarent*, 'the heaps of arms were almost as high as the top of the wall and the agger.' The deep space (*fossa*) between the wall and the end of the mound (*agger*) which gradually rose to a height equal to that of the wall of the town was almost filled with the arms.

11. *et tamen tertia . . . celata, retenta*: 'and yet about a third part being concealed and kept.' 12. *portis patefactis*: abl. absol. mod. *usi sunt*; 'after throwing the gates wide open they enjoyed peace.' 13. *pace*: why abl.? see (353).

CHAPTER XXXIII.—1. *sub*: 'towards.' 2. *ne . . . acciperent*: neg. purpose; would non do? see (211, 320); 'lest they should receive.' *quam*: indefinite pron. after *si, nisi, ne, num*; 'any violence.' *ab*: 'at the hands of.' *illi*: subj. of *fecerunt*, line 11. *inito*: p. p. p. of *ineo*, forming abl. absol. with *consilio*, the phrase modifying *fecerunt*; 'according to a plan formerly arranged.' *ut, etc.*: parenthetical and impersonal, 'as it was learned (later on).' 4. *quod . . . crediderant*: mod. *fecerunt*, 'because they had supposed.' *deducturos esse*: indir. disc. with *crediderant*. 6. *partim cum*: 'partly with those arms . . . partly with shields,' adverbial phrases mod. *fecerunt*. 7. *ex . . . factis, etc.*: *factis* limits *scutis*, 'made out of bark or twigs woven together.' *quae*: antecod. is *scutis*; it is the dir. obj. of *induxerant*. 8. *ut*: 'as.' 9. *tertia vigilia*: abl. of time mod. *fecerunt*. *qua*: adv., 'where.' This passage indicates that the Roman lines were on high ground. *minime*: adv. mod. *arduus*, 'least difficult.' 10. *ascensus*: subj. of *videbatur*, 'the approach to (ad) . . . seemed.' 11. *ut, etc.*: 'as Caesar had previously commanded'; *imperarat = imperaverat*. 12. *ignibus*: abl. of means mod. *facta*, which in turn limits *significatione* in the abl. sing. fem.; 'after fire-signals had been made.' 13. *eo concursum est*: impers., see (365). *pugnatum . . . est*: 'and the enemy fought,' what literally? *ita acriter ut*: 'just as bravely as.' 14. *ut*: goes with *pugnari debuit*, 'as it ought to have been fought.' For meaning of *pugnari* (pres. infin.), see (385), how ought and must are expressed, *past action*, example *a*. Translate freely 'as brave men ought to have fought.' *a viris*: pers. agent, see (240). 15. *qui . . . iacerent*: characteristic rel. clause which takes a *subjunc.* verb: 'who were casting.' 16. *cum . . . consisteret*: causal *cum*, see (350), 'since all hope depended (was depending)'; the clause mod. *pugnari debuit*. *in una virtute*: 'upon valor alone.' 17. *ad*: adv. mod. *quattuor, quattuor*, 'after about four thousand.' 18. *cum . . . defenderent*: causal clause mod. *refractis*, 'at a time when no one any longer (*iam*) defended them.' 20. *sectionem . . . universam*: i.e. the whole people with all their possessions. According to ancient ideas this procedure of selling into slavery the captured foe as a punishment for treachery was perfectly justifiable. *ab eis*: regular pers. agent, see (240), mod. *relatus est*; 'the number of souls

reported to him by those who.' *milium*, etc.: pred. gen. of characteristic.

CHAPTER XXXIV.—1. *eodem tempore*: as the subjugation of the several tribes mentioned in this chapter was accomplished by the VIIth legion, which had been detached from the Roman army just after the battle of the Sambre, it would seem that the siege described in the few preceding chapters must have lasted a month or more. a *Crasso*: pers. agent mod. *certior factus est*. 2. *ad*: 'against.' 4. *certior factus est*: as a verb of hearing it takes the acc. + infin., *civitates . . . redactas esse*.

CHAPTER XXXV.—1. *tanta opinio . . . perlata est*: 'such a report of this war was spread.' Notice the emphasis given to the verb by the prefix *per*; the report went from tribe to tribe until it reached all of them. 2. *uti . . . mitterentur*: affirm. result, 'that ambassadors were sent.' 3. *incolerent*: subjunc. by attraction, see (276). Why is *quae fem. plur.*? 4. *qui . . . pollicerentur*: rel. clause of purpose, see (311). What is the *time* of the action of *pollicerentur* with respect to that of *mitterentur*, *present* (going on) at the *time of sending*, or *future* (subsequent to it)? *daturas (esse)*: why not *datuross*? To what does *se* refer? What is the gender of *nationibus*? 5. *quas Caesar iussit*: 'and Caesar ordered these.' *legationes* = *legatos*. in *Italiam*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Caesar's province extended to the Rubicon. *Illyricum*: east of the Adriatic, also a part of Caesar's 'province,' where he usually spent the winter season. 6. *inita*: from *ineo*, p. p. p. abl. absol. with *aestate*, 'at the beginning of the following summer,' 'early next summer.' 7. in *Carnutes*, etc.: adverbial phrases mod. *deductis*, which forms an abl. absol. with *legionibus*; 'after he had brought his legions into their winter-quarters among (in).' *quaeque civitates*: translate as if, *et civitates quae*, 'and among those states which were.' 8. *ubi*: 'where.' 10. *ob easque*: note the position of *que*. *ex litteris*: 'in accordance with letters from Caesar.' 11. *supplicatio*: a public thanksgiving, decreed by the Senate in honor of a victory, at first lasting only one day, then usually three or four. Caesar was granted a *supplicatio* which lasted for fifteen days, the longest time that had ever been granted. *quod*: = *id quod*, 'an honor (a thing) which.' 12. *nulli*: notice the emphatic position.

## 448. First-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts of verbs marked \*, see vocabulary at end of the book; those unmarked are regular, like **portō**, **amō**, etc.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>accommodō</b> , <i>adjust</i>                 | 34. <b>dubitō</b> , <i>hesitate, doubt</i>  |
| 2. <b>adaequō</b> , <i>equal</i>                    | 35. <b>exagitō</b> , <i>harass</i>  |
| 3. <b>adiuvō</b> ,* <i>aid</i>                      | 36. <b>exanimō</b> , <i>make breathless</i>   |
| 4. <b>administrō</b> , <i>execute</i>               | 37. <b>exercitō</b> , <i>train</i>  |
| 5. <b>adpropinquō</b> , <i>draw near to</i>         | 38. <b>existimō</b> , <i>think</i>  |
| 6. <b>aedificō</b> , <i>build</i>                   | 39. <b>explorō</b> , <i>find out</i>  |
| 7. <b>amplificō</b> , <i>increase</i>               | 40. <b>expugnō</b> , <i>storm</i>   |
| 8. <b>appellō</b> , <i>call</i>                     | 41. <b>expectō</b> , <i>await</i>   |
| 9. <b>arbitror</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>think</i>      | 42. <b>fugō</b> , <i>rout</i>   |
| 10. <b>armō</b> , <i>arm</i>                        | 43. <b>hiemō</b> , <i>winter</i>  |
| 11. <b>cēlō</b> , <i>conceal</i>                    | 44. <b>imperō</b> , <i>command</i>  |
| 12. <b>circumdō</b> ,* <i>surround</i>              | 45. <b>impetrō</b> , <i>obtain</i>  |
| 13. <b>coacervō</b> , <i>pile up</i>                | 46. <b>incitō</b> , <i>quicken, excite</i>  |
| 14. <b>cohortor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>encourage</i> | 47. <b>increpitō</b> , <i>taunt</i>   |
| 15. <b>commemorō</b> , <i>relate</i>                | 48. <b>incūsō</b> , <i>blame</i>  |
| 16. <b>comparō</b> , <i>prepare</i>                 | 49. <b>īnstō</b> ,* <i>press forward</i>  |
| 17. <b>cōnfirmō</b> , <i>establish</i>              | 50. <b>intrō</b> , <i>enter</i>   |
| 18. <b>coniūrō</b> , <i>conspire</i>                | 51. <b>iūdicō</b> , <i>suppose</i>  |
| 19. <b>conlocō</b> , <i>place</i>                   | 52. <b>iuvō</b> ,* <i>aid</i>   |
| 20. <b>cōnor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>attempt</i>      | 53. <b>laxō</b> , <i>spread out</i>   |
| 21. <b>cōnservō</b> , <i>spare</i>                  | 54. <b>mandō</b> , <i>direct, instruct</i>  |
| 22. <b>convocō</b> , <i>summon</i>                  | 55. <b>mātūrō</b> , <i>hasten</i>   |
| 23. <b>cōnspicor</b> ,* <i>see</i>                  | 56. <b>moror</b> ,* <i>delay</i>  |
| 24. <b>dēcertō</b> , <i>contend</i>                 | 57. <b>nāvō</b> , <i>do with zeal</i> [ <b>operam</b><br><b>nāvāre</b> , <i>do one's best</i> ] |
| 25. <b>dēmōnstrō</b> , <i>explain</i>               | 58. <b>nōminō</b> , <i>name</i>   |
| 26. <b>dēpopulor</b> ,* <i>lay waste</i>            | 59. <b>nūdō</b> , <i>strip</i>  |
| 27. <b>dēprecor</b> ,* <i>pray (for)</i>            | 60. <b>nūntiō</b> , <i>announce</i>   |
| 28. <b>dēspērō</b> , <i>despair (of)</i>            | 61. <b>occupō</b> , <i>seize</i>  |
| 29. <b>dēspoliō</b> , <i>deprive (of)</i>           | 62. <b>oppugnō</b> , <i>attack</i>  |
| 30. <b>dīmicō</b> , <i>fight</i>                    | 63. <b>pācō</b> , <i>subdue</i>   |
| 31. <b>dissipō</b> , <i>scatter</i>                 | 64. <b>perīclitor</b> ,* <i>test, try</i> [ <b>order</b> ]                                      |
| 32. <b>dō</b> ,* <i>give</i>                        | 65. <b>perturbō</b> , <i>throw into dis-</i>  |
| 33. <b>dominor</b> ,* <i>rule</i>                   |   |

<sup>1</sup> deponent verb; see (325) and vocabulary at end of the book.



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 66. <b>populor</b> ,* <i>plunder</i>   | 80. <b>revocō</b> , <i>call back</i>   |
| 67. <b>portō</b> , <i>carry</i>        | 81. <b>servō</b> , <i>watch</i>        |
| 68. <b>postulō</b> , <i>demand</i>     | 82. <b>significō</b> , <i>show</i>     |
| 69. <b>praedor</b> ,* <i>plunder</i>   | 83. <b>sollicitō</b> , <i>incite</i>   |
| 70. <b>praestō</b> ,* <i>excel</i>     | 84. <b>superō</b> , <i>overcome</i>    |
| 71. <b>proelior</b> ,* <i>fight</i>    | 85. <b>sustentō</b> , <i>hold out</i>  |
| 72. <b>prōflīgō</b> , <i>defeat</i>    | 86. <b>tardō</b> , <i>check</i>        |
| 73. <b>properō</b> , <i>hasten</i>     | 87. <b>vāstō</b> , <i>lay waste</i>    |
| 74. <b>prōpūgnō</b> , <i>fight</i>     | 88. <b>versor</b> ,* <i>remain, be</i> |
| 75. <b>prōturbō</b> , <i>repulse</i>   | 89. <b>vetō</b> ,* <i>forbid</i>       |
| 76. <b>prōvolō</b> , <i>rush forth</i> | 90. <b>vexō</b> , <i>harass</i>        |
| 77. <b>pūgnō</b> , <i>fight</i>        | 91. <b>vītō</b> , <i>avoid</i>         |
| 78. <b>redintegrō</b> , <i>renew</i>   | 92. <b>vulnerō</b> , <i>wound</i>      |
| 79. <b>renūntiō</b> , <i>announce</i>  |  |

#### 449. Second-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>audeō</b> , <i>dare</i>                    | 22. <b>persuādeō</b> , <i>persuade</i>              |
| 2. <b>commoveō</b> , <i>alarm</i>                | 23. <b>perterreō</b> , <i>frighten</i>              |
| 3. <b>compleō</b> , <i>fill</i>                  | 24. <b>pertineō</b> , <i>reach</i>                  |
| 4. <b>contineō</b> , <i>keep, hold in</i>        | 25. <b>polliceor</b> , <i>promise</i>               |
| 5. <b>dēbeō</b> , <i>ought, owe</i>              | 26. <b>possideō</b> , <i>possess, occupy</i>        |
| 6. <b>dēleō</b> , <i>destroy</i>                 | 27. <b>praebeō</b> , <i>furnish, display</i>        |
| 7. <b>dēterreō</b> , <i>prevent</i>              | 28. <b>prohibeō</b> , <i>prevent, cut off</i>       |
| 8. <b>distineō</b> , <i>separate, keep apart</i> | 29. <b>prōmoveō</b> , <i>move forward</i>           |
| 9. <b>doceō</b> , <i>explain</i>                 | 30. <b>prōvideō</b> , <i>provide</i>                |
| 10. <b>habeō</b> , <i>have</i>                   | 31. <b>respondeō</b> , <i>reply</i>                 |
| 11. <b>iaceō</b> , <i>lie prostrate</i>          | 32. <b>retineō</b> , <i>restrain</i>                |
| 12. <b>invideō</b> , <i>envy</i>                 | 33. <b>studeō</b> , <i>desire</i>                   |
| 13. <b>irrideō</b> , <i>mock</i>                 | 34. <b>supersedeō</b> , <i>refrain from</i>         |
| 14. <b>iubeō</b> , <i>order</i>                  | 35. <b>sustineō</b> , <i>withstand</i>              |
| 15. <b>lateō</b> , <i>lie hid</i>                | 36. <b>teneō</b> , <i>hold</i>                      |
| 16. <b>moneō</b> , <i>direct, advise</i>         | 37. <b>timeō</b> , <i>fear</i>                      |
| 17. <b>moveō</b> , <i>move</i>                   | 38. <b>urgeō</b> , <i>press hard</i>                |
| 18. <b>obtimeō</b> , <i>hold, maintain</i>       | 39. <b>valeō</b> , <i>have influence, be strong</i> |
| 19. <b>oportet</b> , <i>ought, it behooves</i>   | 40. <b>vereor</b> , <i>fear</i>                     |
| 20. <b>pateō</b> , <i>extend</i>                 | 41. <b>videō</b> , <i>see</i>                       |
| 21. <b>permoveō</b> , <i>excite</i>              | 42. <b>videor</b> , <i>seem</i>                     |

**450. Third-conjugation verbs.**

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <b>abdō</b> , <i>hide</i>                              | 35. <b>cōnspiciō</b> , <i>see</i>                     |
| 2. <b>accēdō</b> , <i>approach</i>                        | 36. <b>cōstituō</b> , <i>determine, ar-<br/>range</i> |
| 3. <b>accidō</b> , <i>happen</i>                          | 37. <b>cōnsuēscō</b> , <i>be accustomed</i>           |
| 4. <b>accipiō</b> , <i>receive</i>                        | 38. <b>contendō</b> , <i>hasten, struggle</i>         |
| 5. <b>addūcō</b> , <i>bring, influence</i>                | 39. <b>convertō</b> , <i>turn</i>                     |
| 6. <b>adiciō</b> , <i>hurl</i>                            | 40. <b>crēdō</b> , <i>believe</i>                     |
| 7. <b>aggredior</b> , <i>attack</i>                       | 41. <b>cupiō</b> , <i>desire</i>                      |
| 8. <b>agō</b> , <i>do</i>                                 | 42. <b>dēcernō</b> , <i>decree</i>                    |
| 9. <b>āmittō</b> , <i>lose, let pass</i>                  | 43. <b>dēcurrō</b> , <i>run down</i>                  |
| 10. <b>arcessō</b> , <i>summon</i>                        | 44. <b>dēdō</b> , <i>surrender</i>                    |
| 11. <b>ascendō</b> , <i>climb</i>                         | 45. <b>dēdūcō</b> , <i>lead away</i>                  |
| 12. <b>atingō</b> , <i>border upon</i>                    | 46. <b>dēfendō</b> , <i>defend</i>                    |
| 13. <b>āvertō</b> , <i>turn back or away</i>              | 47. <b>dēficiō</b> , <i>revolt</i>                    |
| 14. <b>cadō</b> , <i>fall, be killed</i>                  | 48. <b>dēiciō</b> , <i>hurl down</i>                  |
| 15. <b>cēdō</b> , <i>retreat</i>                          | 49. <b>dēligō</b> , <i>choose</i>                     |
| 16. <b>circumiciō</b> , <i>place around</i>               | 50. <b>dēpōnō</b> , <i>set down</i>                   |
| 17. <b>claudō</b> , <i>close</i>                          | 51. <b>dēserō</b> , <i>desert</i>                     |
| 18. <b>cōgnōscō</b> , <i>find out</i>                     | 52. <b>dēsistō</b> , <i>cease</i>                     |
| 19. <b>cōgō</b> , <i>collect, assemble</i>                | 53. <b>dētrahō</b> , <i>jerk, snatch<br/>(away)</i>   |
| 20. <b>committō</b> , <i>begin</i>                        | 54. <b>dētrūdō</b> , <i>remove, strip off</i>         |
| 21. <b>compellō</b> , <i>drive</i>                        | 55. <b>dīcō</b> , <i>say</i>                          |
| 22. <b>conciō</b> , <i>cut to pieces</i>                  | 56. <b>dīmittō</b> , <i>dismiss</i>                   |
| 23. <b>concurrō</b> , <i>hurry, rush</i>                  | 57. <b>dīripiō</b> , <i>plunder</i>                   |
| 24. <b>condūcō</b> , <i>hire, collect</i>                 | 58. <b>discēdō</b> , <i>depart</i>                    |
| 25. <b>cōnficiō</b> , <i>exhaust, furnish,<br/>finish</i> | 59. <b>dūcō</b> , <i>lead</i>                         |
| 26. <b>cōnfidō</b> , <i>trust, rely on</i>                | 60. <b>ēdūcō</b> , <i>lead out</i>                    |
| 27. <b>cōnfigō</b> , <i>fight</i>                         | 61. <b>efficiō</b> , <i>bring about, cause</i>        |
| 28. <b>congregior</b> , <i>fight</i>                      | 62. <b>ēgredior</b> , <i>depart</i>                   |
| 29. <b>cōniciō</b> , <i>place, hurl, drive</i>            | 63. <b>ēligō</b> , <i>choose</i>                      |
| 30. <b>coniungō</b> , <i>join</i>                         | 64. <b>ēmittō</b> , <i>hurl</i>                       |
| 31. <b>cōnscribō</b> , <i>enroll</i>                      | 65. <b>emō</b> , <i>buy</i>                           |
| 32. <b>cōnsequor</b> , <i>pursue</i>                      | 66. <b>ēnāscor</b> , <i>grow out</i>                  |
| 33. <b>cōnsidō</b> , <i>settle, encamp</i>                | 67. <b>excēdō</b> , <i>go away</i>                    |
| 34. <b>cōnsistō</b> , <i>make a stand,<br/>rally</i>      | 68. <b>expellō</b> , <i>drive out</i>                 |

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 69. <b>exstruō</b> , <i>construct</i>        | 107. <b>patefaciō</b> , <i>open wide</i>                       |
| 70. <b>faciō</b> , <i>make</i>               | 108. <b>patior</b> , <i>allow</i>                              |
| 71. <b>fallō</b> , <i>disappoint</i>         | 109. <b>pellō</b> , <i>defeat, drive</i>                       |
| 72. <b>fugiō</b> , <i>flee</i>               | 110. <b>permittō</b> , <i>give up, entrust</i>                 |
| 73. <b>gerō</b> , <i>carry on</i>            | 111. <b>perspiciō</b> , <i>find out</i>                        |
| 74. <b>iaciō</b> , <i>hurl, construct</i>    | 112. <b>petō</b> , <i>ask for, seek</i>                        |
| 75. <b>impellō</b> , <i>urge on</i>          | 113. <b>pōnō</b> , <i>place</i>                                |
| 76. <b>incendō</b> , <i>burn</i>             | 114. <b>poscō</b> , <i>demand</i>                              |
| 77. <b>incidō</b> , <i>happen</i>            | 115. <b>praeficiō</b> , <i>place in com-</i><br><i>mand of</i> |
| 78. <b>incidō</b> , <i>notch, cut into</i>   | 116. <b>praemittō</b> , <i>send forward</i>                    |
| 79. <b>incipiō</b> , <i>begin</i>            | 117. <b>praescribō</b> , <i>give directions</i>                |
| 80. <b>incolō</b> , <i>inhabit, live</i>     | 118. <b>premō</b> , <i>press hard</i>                          |
| 81. <b>inducō</b> , <i>cover, draw on</i>    | 119. <b>prōcēdō</b> , <i>advance</i>                           |
| 82. <b>induō</b> , <i>put on</i>             | 120. <b>prōcumbō</b> , <i>fall</i>                             |
| 83. <b>inflectō</b> , <i>bend</i>            | 121. <b>proficīscor</b> , <i>set out, go</i>                   |
| 84. <b>ingredior</b> , <i>enter</i>          | 122. <b>profugiō</b> , <i>flee</i>                             |
| 85. <b>innitor</b> , <i>lean upon</i>        | 123. <b>prōgredior</b> , <i>advance</i>                        |
| 86. <b>insequor</b> , <i>pursue</i>          | 124. <b>prōiciō</b> , <i>give up, abandon</i>                  |
| 87. <b>insistō</b> , <i>stand upon</i>       | 125. <b>prōpōnō</b> , <i>display</i>                           |
| 88. <b>instruō</b> , <i>draw up, erect</i>   | 126. <b>prōsequor</b> , <i>pursue</i>                          |
| 89. <b>intellegō</b> , <i>know</i> [tween    | 127. <b>quaerō</b> , <i>inquire</i>                            |
| 90. <b>intercēdō</b> , <i>be or move be-</i> | 128. <b>recipiō</b> , <i>receive</i>                           |
| 91. <b>intercipiō</b> , <i>pick up</i>       | 129. <b>reddō</b> , <i>give back, render</i>                   |
| 92. <b>interficiō</b> , <i>kill</i>          | 130. <b>redigō</b> , <i>reduce</i>                             |
| 93. <b>intericiō</b> , <i>place between</i>  | 131. <b>reducō</b> , <i>lead back</i>                          |
| 94. <b>intermittō</b> , <i>cease</i>         | 132. <b>refringō</b> , <i>break down</i>                       |
| 95. <b>interscindō</b> , <i>cut down</i>     | 133. <b>rēiciō</b> , <i>throw or drive back</i>                |
| 96. <b>intexō</b> , <i>weave in</i>          | 134. <b>relanguēscō</b> , <i>be weakened</i>                   |
| 97. <b>intrōducō</b> , <i>bring in</i>       | 135. <b>relinquō</b> , <i>leave</i>                            |
| 98. <b>intrōmittō</b> , <i>let in</i>        | 136. <b>remittō</b> , <i>hurl back, relax</i>                  |
| 99. <b>inveterāscō</b> , <i>grow old</i>     | 137. <b>repellō</b> , <i>drive back</i>                        |
| 100. <b>loquor</b> , <i>speak</i>            | 138. <b>resistō</b> , <i>resist</i>                            |
| 101. <b>mittō</b> , <i>send</i>              | 139. <b>respiciō</b> , <i>look back</i>                        |
| 102. <b>nāscor</b> , <i>rise, spring up</i>  | 140. <b>revertō</b> , <i>turn back</i>                         |
| 103. <b>obducō</b> , <i>dig, construct</i>   | 141. <b>revertor</b> , <i>return</i>                           |
| 104. <b>occidō</b> , <i>slay</i>             | 142. <b>scribō</b> , <i>write</i>                              |
| 105. <b>occurrō</b> , <i>meet</i>            | 143. <b>sequor</b> , <i>follow</i>                             |
| 106. <b>omittō</b> , <i>overlook</i>         |  |

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 144. statuō, <i>determine</i>       | 151. trādō, <i>hand over</i>     |
| 145. submitto, <i>send</i>          | 152. trādūcō, <i>lead across</i> |
| 146. subruō, <i>undermine</i>       | 153. trānsgridior, <i>cross</i>  |
| 147. subsequor, <i>follow after</i> | 154. ūtor, <i>use, employ</i>    |
| 148. succēdō, <i>approach</i>       | 155. vēndō, <i>sell</i>          |
| 149. sūmō, <i>claim, assume</i>     | 156. vergō, <i>incline</i>       |
| 150. tendō, <i>stretch out</i>      | 157. vincō, <i>conquer</i>       |

#### 451. Fourth-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. adōrior, <i>attack</i>                         | 10. expōrior, <i>try, risk</i>         |
| 2. audiō, <i>hear</i>                             | 11. impediō, <i>hinder</i>             |
| 3. circummūniō, <i>fortify</i><br><i>strongly</i> | 12. inveniō, <i>come upon</i>          |
| 4. circumveniō, <i>surround</i>                   | 13. mūniō, <i>fortify</i>              |
| 5. cōsentiō, <i>conspire</i>                      | 14. obveniō, <i>meet</i>               |
| 6. conveniō, <i>assemble</i>                      | 15. orior, <i>descend, spring from</i> |
| 7. dēveniō, <i>come</i>                           | 16. perveniō, <i>arrive at</i>         |
| 8. dīmētiōr, <i>measure off</i>                   | 17. potior, <i>capture</i>             |
| 9. exaudiō, <i>hear distinctly</i>                | 18. reperiō, <i>find out</i>           |
|   | 19. veniō, <i>come</i>                 |

#### 452. Irregular verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- |                                      |                                       |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. absum, <i>be distant</i>          | 14. intersum, <i>impers., it con-</i> |
| 2. adeō, <i>approach</i>             | 15. nōlō, <i>be unwilling</i> [cerns] |
| 3. adferō, <i>bring to</i>           | 16. offerō, <i>carry, bring</i>       |
| 4. coepī, <i>begin</i>               | 17. perferō, <i>endure</i>            |
| 5. cōnferō, <i>collect</i>           | 18. possum, <i>be able, can</i>       |
| 6. dēferō, <i>report</i>             | 19. praeferō, <i>prefer</i>           |
| 7. dēsum, <i>be lacking, wanting</i> | 20. praesum, <i>be in command of</i>  |
| 8. eō, <i>go</i>                     | 21. redeō, <i>go back, descend,</i>   |
| 9. exeō, <i>go out</i>               | 22. referō, <i>report</i> [slope]     |
| 10. ferō, <i>bear</i>                | 23. subeō, <i>approach</i>            |
| 11. fiō, <i>be made, happen</i>      | 24. sum, <i>be</i>                    |
| 12. ineō, <i>enter upon</i>          | 25. supersum, <i>survive</i>          |
| 13. inferō, <i>wage, bring upon</i>  | 26. trānseō, <i>cross</i>             |

## PARADIGMS OF DECLENSIONS.

453. First declension.—Most nouns are *feminine*. The stem ends in *a*.

*Silva, forest.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>silva</i>	<i>silvae</i>
<i>silvae</i>	<i>silvārum</i>
<i>silvae</i>	<i>silvīs</i>
<i>silvam</i>	<i>silvās</i>
<i>silva</i>	<i>silvae</i>
<i>silvā</i>	<i>silvīs</i>

*Galea, helmet.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>galea</i>	<i>galeae</i>
<i>galeae</i>	<i>galeārum</i>
<i>galeae</i>	<i>galeīs</i>
<i>galeam</i>	<i>galeās</i>
<i>galea</i>	<i>galeae</i>
<i>galeā</i>	<i>galeīs</i>

454. Second declension.—Nouns in *us*, *er*, and *ir* are *masculine*, those in *um* *neuter*. The stem ends in *o*.

*Gladus, sword.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>gladius</i>	<i>gladiī</i>
<i>gladiī</i>	<i>gladiōrum</i>
<i>gladiō</i>	<i>gladiīs</i>
<i>gladium</i>	<i>gladiōs</i>
<i>gladie</i>	<i>gladiī</i>
<i>gladiō</i>	<i>gladiīs</i>

*Ager, field.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>ager</i>	<i>agrī</i>
<i>agrī</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>
<i>agrō</i>	<i>agrīs</i>
<i>agrum</i>	<i>agrōs</i>
<i>ager</i>	<i>agrī</i>
<i>agrō</i>	<i>agrīs</i>

*Vir, man.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>vir</i>	<i>virī</i>
<i>virī</i>	<i>virōrum</i>
<i>virō</i>	<i>virīs</i>
<i>virum</i>	<i>virōs</i>
<i>vir</i>	<i>virī</i>
<i>virō</i>	<i>virīs</i>

*Scūtum, shield.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>scūtum</i>	<i>scūta</i>
<i>scūtī</i>	<i>scūtōrum</i>
<i>scūtō</i>	<i>scūtīs</i>
<i>scūtum</i>	<i>scūta</i>
<i>scūtum</i>	<i>scūta</i>
<i>scūtō</i>	<i>scūtīs</i>

**455. Classification of third-declension nouns by stems.**—The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the *stem-characteristic*, into (1) *consonant stems* and (2) *vowel stems*.

*Consonant stems* are divided into—

1. *Liquid stems*, ending in **l, m, n, r**.
2. *Sibilant stems*, ending in **s**.
3. *Mute stems*

{	ending in <i>p-mute</i> , <b>b, p</b> .
	“ “ <i>k-mute</i> , <b>c, g</b> .
	“ “ <i>t-mute</i> , <b>d, t</b> .

**456. Consonant stems.**—A. *Liquid stems* in **l** or **r** form the nominative without terminations; as, **sōl, sōlis, sun**, stem **sōl**; **rūmor, rūmōris**, stem **rūmōr**.

In stems in **n** the nominative is formed without **s**; most masculine and feminine nouns drop the stem-characteristic and change a preceding vowel to **o**, while most neuter and a few masculine nouns retain the stem-characteristic and change preceding **i** to **e**:

**homō, hominis**, stem **homin**; **flūmen, flūminis**, stem **flūmin**.

B. *Sibilant stems* have no additional **s** in the nominative, masculines changing **e** to **i** before **s**, and neuters **e** or **o** to **u**; in the oblique cases the **s** of the stem changes to **r** between two vowels.

**pulvis, pulveris** (mas.), *powder*, stem **pulves**.

**latus, lateris**, stem **lates**; **corpus, corporis**, stem **corpos**.

C. *Mute stems*, masculines and feminines, have **s** in the nominative. Before **s**, a *p-mute* is retained, a *k-mute* unites with it as **x**, a *t-mute* is dropped. Most polysyllabic mute stems change the final vowel **i** to **e** in the nominative.

*p-mute*: **prīnceps, prīncipis**, stem **prīncip**.

*k-mute*: **lēx, lēgis**, stem **lēg**; **vōx, vōcis**, stem **vōc**.

*t-mute*: **mīles, mīlitis**, stem **mīlit**; **pēs, pedis**, stem **ped**.

**457. Vowel stems end in *i* or *u*.**—Masculine and feminine nouns form the nominative in *s*, and have *ēs* and *is* in the accusative plural; neuters end in *e*, *al*, *ar* and have *ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, and *i* in the ablative singular. Some masculine and feminine nouns also have *i* in the ablative singular. A few feminines change the stem vowel *i* to *e* in the nominative before *s*, and neuters change the *i* to *e*, which is dropped in polysyllabics after *l* and *r*.

Vowel stems in *i* are *parisyllabic* and have *ium* in the genitive plural, masculines and feminines ending in *ēs*, *er*, *is*—neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*.

*vātēs, vātis* (mas. and fem.), *seer*, stem *vāti*.

*hostis, hostis* (mas.), stem *hosti*.

*īnsigne, īsignis* (neut.), stem *īsigni*.

*animal, animālis, animal*, stem *animāli*.

**458. Third declension.**—General rules of gender for third-declension nouns, classed according to the nominative ending.

### GROUP I.

*Masculines* are: (1) nouns in *es*, gen. *itis*: *mīles, militis*;—(2) *es* or *is*, gen. *idis*: *obses, obsidis; lapis, lapidis*;—(3) *er* or *or*: *frāter, rūmor*;—(4) many *vowel stems* in *i*: *fīnis, fīnis*;—(5) some *monosyllables*: *pēs, mōs, pōns*;—(6) nouns in *ō* or *ōs*.

**Miles, soldier.**

**Lapis, stone.**

**Frāter, brother.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>mīles</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>lapis</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>frāter</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>
<i>militis</i>	<i>militum</i>	<i>lapidis</i>	<i>lapidum</i>	<i>frātris</i>	<i>frātrum</i>
<i>militī</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>lapidī</i>	<i>lapidibus</i>	<i>frātrī</i>	<i>frātribus</i>
<i>militem</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>lapidem</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>frātrem</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>
<i>mīles</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>lapis</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>frāter</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>
<i>mīlite</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>lapide</i>	<i>lapidibus</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>frātribus</i>

**Hostis, enemy.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
hostis	hostēs
hostis	hostium
hostī	hostibus
hostem	hostēs, -īs
hostis	hostēs
hoste	hostibus

**Pēs, foot.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
pēs	pedēs
pedis	pedum
pedī	pedibus
pedem	pedēs
pēs	pedēs
pede	pedibus

For the mode of distinguishing *vowel stems*, which are parasyllabic, from *consonant stems*, which are imparasyllabic, see (131).

**GROUP II.**

*Feminines* are: (1) nouns in *ās*, gen. *ātis*: *facultās*, *facultātis*;—(2) nouns in *iō* (*abstract and collective*): *legiō*, *legiōnis*;—(3) *ūs*, gen. *ūtis* or *ūdis*: *virtūs*, *virtūtis*;—(4) *dō* and *gō*, gen. *inis*: *multitūdō*, *multitūdinis*;—(5) some *monosyllables*: *pāx*, *lēx*;—(6) nouns in *ēs*, *ys*, *is*, and *s* (preceded by a *consonant*).

**Facultās, opportunity.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
facultās	facultātēs
facultātis	facultātum
facultātī	facultātibus
facultātem	facultātēs
facultās	facultātēs
facultāte	facultātibus

**Legiō, legion.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
legiō	legiōnēs
legiōnis	legiōnum
legiōnī	legiōnibus
legiōnem	legiōnēs
legiō	legiōnēs
legiōne	legiōnibus

**Virtūs, courage.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
virtūs	virtūtēs
virtūtis	virtūtum
virtūtī	virtūtibus
virtutem	virtūtēs
virtūs	virtūtēs
virtute	virtūtibus

**Lēx, law.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
lēx	lēgēs
lēgis	lēgum
lēgī	lēgibus
lēgem	lēgēs
lēx	lēgēs
lēge	lēgibus



**Multitūdō, multitude.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<b>multitūdō</b>	<b>multitūdinēs</b>
<b>multitūdinis</b>	<b>multitūdinum</b>
<b>multitūdinī</b>	<b>multitūdinibus</b>
<b>multitūdinem</b>	<b>multitūdinēs</b>
<b>multitūdō</b>	<b>multitūdinēs</b>
<b>multitūdine</b>	<b>multitūdinibus</b>

**GROUP III.**

*Neuters* are: (1) nouns in **us**, gen. **eris** or **oris**: **latus**, **lateris**; **corpus**, **corporis**;—(2) **men**, gen. **minis**: **flūmen**, **flūminis**;—(3) nouns in **e**, **al**, **ar**, **ur**.

**Latus, side.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<b>latus</b>	<b>latera</b>
<b>lateris</b>	<b>laterum</b>
<b>laterī</b>	<b>lateribus</b>
<b>latus</b>	<b>latera</b>
<b>latus</b>	<b>latera</b>
<b>latere</b>	<b>lateribus</b>

**Corpus, body.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<b>corpus</b>	<b>corpora</b>
<b>corporis</b>	<b>corporum</b>
<b>corporī</b>	<b>corporibus</b>
<b>corpus</b>	<b>corpora</b>
<b>corpus</b>	<b>corpora</b>
<b>corpore</b>	<b>corporibus</b>

**Flūmen, river.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<b>flūmen</b>	<b>flūmina</b>
<b>flūminis</b>	<b>flūminum</b>
<b>flūminī</b>	<b>flūminibus</b>
<b>flūmen</b>	<b>flūmina</b>
<b>flūmen</b>	<b>flūmina</b>
<b>flūmine</b>	<b>flūminibus</b>

**Īnsigne, badge.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<b>īnsigne</b>	<b>īnsignia</b>
<b>īnsignis</b>	<b>īnsignium</b>
<b>īsignī</b>	<b>īsignibus</b>
<b>īnsigne</b>	<b>īnsignia</b>
<b>īnsigne</b>	<b>īnsignia</b>
<b>īsignī</b>	<b>īsignibus</b>

**459. Irregular nouns of the third declension.**

**Milia, thousands. Vis, force, vigor. Iter, march, journey.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<b>mille</b>	<b>milia</b>	<b>vīs</b>	<b>vīrēs</b>	<b>iter</b>	<b>itinera</b>
<i>indeclinable</i>	<b>milium</b>	<b>vīs</b>	<b>vīrium</b>	<b>itineris</b>	<b>itinerum</b>
<i>adjective</i>	<b>milibus</b>	—	<b>vīribus</b>	<b>itinerī</b>	<b>itineribus</b>
	<b>milia</b>	<b>vim</b>	<b>vīrēs</b>	<b>iter</b>	<b>itinera</b>
	<b>milia</b>	—	<b>vīrēs</b>	<b>iter</b>	<b>itinera</b>
	<b>milibus</b>	<b>vī</b>	<b>vīribus</b>	<b>itinere</b>	<b>itineribus</b>

**460. Genitive plural in *um* and *ium*, third declension.**

*Vowel stems in i* have *ium*.

*Monosyllabic mute stems* with the characteristic preceded by a *consonant* have *ium*: *mōns*, *montium*, *urbs*, *urbium*.

*Monosyllabic mute stems* with characteristics preceded by a *long vowel* have either *um* or *ium*: *dōs*, *dōtis* (*dowry*), *dōtium*; *lēx*, *lēgis*, *lēgum*.

*Monosyllabic mute stems* with the characteristic preceded by a *short vowel* have *um*: *dux*, *ducis*, *ducum*.

*Polysyllabic stems* in *āt* have both *um* and *ium*: *civītās*, *civītātis*, *civītātum* or *civītātium*. *Polysyllabic stems* in *nt* and *rt* often have *ium*: *cohors*, *cohortis*, *cohortium*.

**461. Fourth declension.**—Nouns in *us* are *masculine*, a few *feminine*; those in *ū*, *neuter*. The stem ends in *u*.

**Manus, hand, band.**

SINGULAR.

**manus**

**manūs**

**manūi (ū)**

**manum**

**manus**

**manū**

PLURAL.

**manūs**

**manuum**

**manibus**

**manūs**

**manūs**

**manibus**

**Cornū, horn, wing.**

SINGULAR.

**cornū**

**cornūs**

**cornū**

**cornū**

**cornū**

**cornū**

PLURAL.

**cornua**

**cornuum**

**cornibus**

**cornua**

**cornua**

**cornibus**

**462. Fifth declension.**—Nouns are *feminine*, except *diēs*. *day*, which is *masculine* or *feminine* in the singular and *masculine* in the plural. The stem ends in *ē*.

**Diēs, day.**

SINGULAR.

**diēs**

**diēi**

**diēi**

**diem**

**diēs**

**diē**

PLURAL.

**diēs**

**diērum**

**diēbus**

**diēs**

**diēs**

**diēbus**

**Rēs, thing.**

SINGULAR.

**rēs**

**reī**

**reī**

**rem**

**rēs**

**rē**

PLURAL.

**rēs**

**rērum**

**rēbus**

**rēs**

**rēs**

**rēbus**

## PRONOUNS.

## 463 Personal pronoun, first person.

Ego, I.		Nōs, we.	
SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	ego		nos
Gen.	meī	{	nostrum
		{	nostrī
Dat.	mihi		nōbīs
Acc.	mē		nōs
Abl.	mē		nōbīs

## 464. Demonstrative pronouns.

Is, ea, id, *he, this, that*, etc.; sometimes used as the personal pronoun, third person.

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
Nom.	is,	ea,	id	eī (iī),	eae,	ea
Gen.	ēius			eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum
Dat.	eī			eīs (iīs)		
Acc.	eum,	eam,	id	eōs,	eās,	ea
Abl.	eō,	eā,	eō	eīs (iīs)		

Hīc, *this* (near the speaker).

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
Nom.	hīc,	haec,	hōc	hī,	hae,	haec
Gen.	hūius			hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum
Dat.	huic			hīs		
Acc.	hunc,	hanc,	hōc	hōs,	hās,	haec
Abl.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc	hīs		

Ille, *that* (remote from the speaker).

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.		
Nom.	ille,	illa,	illud	illī,	illae,	illa
Gen.	illius			illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum
Dat.	illī			illīs		
Acc.	illum,	illam,	illud	illōs,	illās,	illa
Abl.	illō,	illā,	illō	illīs		

**Īdem, the same.**

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>īdem,</b>	<b>eadem,</b>	<b>īdem</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ēiusdem</b>		
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>eīdem</b>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>eundem,</b>	<b>eandem,</b>	<b>īdem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>eōdem,</b>	<b>eādem,</b>	<b>eōdem</b>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>eīdem (īīdem),</b>	<b>eaedem,</b>	<b>eadem</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>eōrundem,</b>	<b>eārundem,</b>	<b>eōrundem</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>eīsdem (īīsdem)</b>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>eōsdem,</b>	<b>eāsdem,</b>	<b>eadem</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>eīsdem (īīsdem)</b>		

**Ipsē, he, self (with intensive force).**

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>ipse, ipsa, ipsum</b>	<b>ipsī, ipsae, ipsa</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>ipsius</b>	<b>ipsōrum, ipsārum, ipsōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>ipsī</b>	<b>ipsīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>ipsum, ipsam, ipsum</b>	<b>ipsōs, ipsās, ipsa</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>ipsō, ipsā, ipsō</b>	<b>ipsīs</b>

**465. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite pronouns.**Relative **quī, quae, quod, who, which, that.**

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>quī, quae, quod</b>	<b>quī, quae, quae</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cūius</b>	<b>quōrum, quārum, quōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cui</b>	<b>quibus</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>quem, quam, quod</b>	<b>quōs, quās, quae</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>quō, quā, quō</b>	<b>quibus</b>

Interrogative and Indefinite **quis (quī), who?—any one.**

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<b>quis (quī), quae, quid (quod)</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>cūius</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>cui</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>quem, quam, quid (quod)</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>quō, quā, quō</b>

The plural is the same as that of the *relative*.

## 466. Adjectives.—First and second declensions.

*Altus, high, tall.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
altus,	-a,	-um	altī,	-ae,	-a
altī,	-ae,	-ī	altōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum
altō,	-ae,	-ō	altīs,	-īs,	-īs
altum,	-am,	-um	altōs,	-ās,	-a
alte,	-a,	-um	altī,	-ae,	-a
altō,	-ā,	-ō	altīs,	-īs,	-īs

*Crēber, frequent.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
crēber,	-bra,	-brum	crēbrī,	-brae,	-bra
crēbrī,	-brae,	-brī	crēbrōrum,	-brārum,	-brōrum
crēbrō,	-brae,	-brō	crēbrīs,	-īs,	-īs
crēbrum,	-bram,	-brum	crēbrōs,	-ās,	-a
crēber,	-bra,	-brum	crēbrī,	-ae,	-a
crēbrō,	-brā,	-brō	crēbrīs,	-īs,	-īs

## 467. Adjectives continued.—Third declension.

*Duplex, double*—adjective of *one ending*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
duplex, duplex, duplex	duplicēs, duplicēs, duplicia
duplicis	duplicium
duplicī	duplicibus
·duplicem, -cem, duplex	duplicēs (-īs), -cēs (-īs), -cia
duplex	duplicēs, duplicēs, duplicia
duplicī	duplicibus

*Fortis, brave*—adjective of *two endings*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
fortis, -tis, -te	fortēs, fortēs, fortia
fortis	fortium
fortī	fortibus
fortem, -tem, -te	fortēs (-īs), fortēs (-īs), fortia
fortis, -tis, -te	fortēs, fortēs, fortia
fortī	fortibus

**Equester**, of cavalry—adjective of *three endings*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
equester,	-tris,	-tre	equestrēs,	-trēs,	-tria
equestris			equestrium		
equestrī			equestribus		
equestrem,	-trem,	-tre	equestrēs (-īs),	-trēs (-īs),	-tria
equester,	-tris,	-tre	equestrēs,	-trēs,	-tria
equestrī			equestribus		

**Pūgnāns** (present participle), declined like an *adjective* of the *third declension*, with *one ending* in the nominative singular.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
pūgnāns,	pūgnāns,	pūgnāns	pūgnantēs,	-tēs,	-tia
pūgnantis			pūgnantium		
pūgnantī			pūgnantibus		
pūgnantem,	-tem,	pūgnāns	pūgnantēs (-īs),	-tēs (-īs),	-tia
pūgnāns			pūgnantēs,	-tēs,	-tia
pūgnante (-ī)			pūgnantibus		

**Altior**, taller—comparative of *altus*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
altior,	-ior,	-ius	altiōrēs,	-ōrēs,	-ōra
altiōris			altiōrum		
altiōrī			altiōribus		
altiōrem,	-ōrem,	altius	altiōrēs,	-ōrēs,	-ōra
altior,	-ior	-ius	altiōrēs,	-ōrēs,	-ōra
altiōre (-ī)			altiōribus		

Adjectives of the third declension, parasyllabic and imparisyllabic, such as **duplex**, **fortis**, **equester**, etc., have *ī* in the *ablative singular*, *ia* in the *nominative plural neuter*, and *is* or *ēs* in the *accusative plural masculine* and *feminine*.

Note carefully the corresponding endings of these cases in the present participle (**pūgnāns**), and the comparative of the adjective (**altior**).

## 468. Numeral adjectives.

	Ūnus, <sup>1</sup> <i>one.</i>	Duo, <i>two.</i>	Trēs, <i>three.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus, -a, -um	duo, duae, duo	trēs, trēs, tria
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnūs	duōrum, -ārum, -ōrum	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	duōbus, -ābus, -ōbus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum, -am, -um	duōs (duo), -ās, -o	trēs, trēs, tria
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō, -ā, -ō	duōbus, -ābus, -ōbus	tribus

The numeral adjectives 4-100 are indeclinable; hundreds are declined like the *plural* of *altus*.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

## 469. Regular adjectives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>altus, tall</i>	altior, -ior, -ius	altissimus, -a, -um
<i>certus, certain</i>	certior, -ior, -ius	certissimus, -a, -um
<i>dēnsus, dense</i>	dēnsior, -ior, -ius	dēnsissimus, -a, -um
<i>inīquus, unfair</i>	inīquior, -ior, -ius	inīquissimus, -a, -um
<i>parātus, ready</i>	parātior, -ior, -ius	parātissimus, -a, -um
<i>tardus, slow</i>	tardior, -ior, -ius	tardissimus, -a, -um
<i>tūtus, safe</i>	tūtior, -ior, -ius	tūtissimus, -a, -um
<i>fortis, brave</i>	fortior, -ior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
<i>gravis, severe</i>	gravior, -ior, -ius	gravissimus, -a, -um
<i>potēns, powerful</i>	potentior, -ior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um
<i>amāns, loving</i>	amantior, -ior, -ius	amantissimus, -a, -um

470. Adjectives ending in *er*.—These add *rimus, -a, -um* to the *nominative singular masculine* of the positive.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>ācer, sharp</i>	ācrior, -ior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
<i>asper, rough</i>	asperior, -ior, -ius	asperrimus, -a, -um
<i>celer, swift</i>	celerior, -ior, -ius	celerrimus, -a, -um
<i>miser, wretched</i>	miserior, -ior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
<i>pulcher, beautiful</i>	pulchrior, -ior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um

<sup>1</sup> The voc. sing. mas. ūne is found but rarely.

**471. Adjectives ending in *ilis*.**—Six adjectives in *ilis* add the superlative ending *limus* to the *stem*, stripped of its final vowel, viz.: **facilis**, *easy*; **difficilis**, *difficult*; **similis**, *like*; **dissimilis**, *unlike*; **gracilis**, *slender*; **humilis**, *low*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.	
<b>facilis</b>	<b>facilior</b> ,	<b>-ior, -ius</b>	<b>facillimus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>
<b>difficilis</b>	<b>difficilior</b> ,	<b>-ior, -ius</b>	<b>difficillimus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>
<b>similis</b>	<b>similior</b> ,	<b>-ior, -ius</b>	<b>simillimus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>
<b>dissimilis</b>	<b>dissimilior</b> ,	<b>-ior, -ius</b>	<b>dissimillimus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>
<b>gracilis</b>	<b>gracilior</b> ,	<b>-ior, -ius</b>	<b>gracillimus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>
<b>humilis</b>	<b>humilior</b> ,	<b>-ior, -ius</b>	<b>humillimus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>

#### 472. Irregular adjectives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.	
<b>bonus</b> , <i>good</i>	<b>melior</b> ,	<b>-ior, -ius</b>	<b>optimus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>
<b>malus</b> , <i>bad</i>	<b>pēior</b> ,	<b>-ior, -ius</b>	<b>pessimus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>
<b>māgnus</b> , <i>great</i>	<b>māior</b> ,	<b>-ior, -ius</b>	<b>māximus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>
<b>multus</b> , <i>much</i>	<i>no mas. or fem., plūs</i>		<b>plūrimus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>
<b>parvus</b> , <i>small</i>	<b>minor</b> ,	<b>-or, -us</b>	<b>minus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>
<b>īferus</b> , <i>lower</i>	<b>īferior</b> ,	<b>-ior, -ius</b>	<b>īnīmus</b> or <b>īnus</b>	
<b>superus</b> , <i>upper</i>	<b>superior</b> ,	<b>-ior, -ius</b>	<b>suprēmus</b> or <b>summus</b>	
<b>novus</b> , <i>new</i>	<i>no comparative</i>		<b>novissimus</b> ,	<b>-a, -um</b>

Most adjectives ending in *us* preceded by a vowel, except those ending in *quus*, have no terminational comparison, and are compared by prefixing **magis**, *more*, and **māximē**, *most*; as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>idōneus</b> , <i>suitable</i>	<b>magis idōneus</b>	<b>māximē idōneus</b>

Adjectives ending in *quus* are regular; as,

<b>antīquus</b> , <i>ancient</i>	<b>antīquior</b>	<b>antīquissimus</b>
----------------------------------	------------------	----------------------

See also **iniquus**, (469).



## 473. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>ācritēr</b> , <i>fiercely</i>	<b>ācrius</b>	<b>ācerrimē</b>
<b>audācter</b> , <i>boldly</i>	<b>audācius</b>	<b>audācissimē</b>
<b>celeriter</b> , <i>quickly</i>	<b>celerius</b>	<b>celerrimē</b>
<b>diligenter</b> , <i>promptly</i>	<b>diligentius</b>	<b>diligentissimē</b>
<b>diū</b> , <i>a long time</i>	<b>diūtius</b>	<b>diūtissimē</b>
<b>facile</b> , <i>easily</i>	<b>facilius</b>	<b>facillimē</b>
<b>fortiter</b> , <i>bravely</i>	<b>fortius</b>	<b>fortissimē</b>
<b>longē</b> , <i>far</i>	<b>longius</b>	<b>longissimē</b>
<b>māgnū</b> , <i>greatly</i>	<b>magis</b>	<b>māximē</b>
<b>multū</b> , <i>much</i>	<b>plūs</b>	<b>plūrimū</b>
<b>parvū</b> , <i>a little, slightly</i>	<b>minus</b>	<b>minimē</b>
<b>prope</b> , <i>nearly</i>	<b>propius</b>	<b>proximē</b>

1. The accusatives of adjectives and pronouns are sometimes used as adverbs; as, **multū**, **multa**, *much*; **facile**, *easily*; **aliās**, *otherwise*.

2. Some adverbs were originally ablatives; as, **vērō**, *in truth, but, however*; **forte**, *by chance*; **iūre**, *rightly*.

3. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, upon which they depend for comparison. Adjectives of the first and second declensions form the adverbs in **ē**, **ō**, **um**; as, **longus**, **longē**; **multus**, **multō**, and **multum**. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverbs in **ter**; as, **audāx**, **audāc-ter**; **fortis**, **forti-ter**; **diligens**, **diligen-ter**.

4. Some adverbs are formed by the union of prepositions with case forms; as, **inter-eā**, *meanwhile*; **post-eā**, *afterwards*; **paulis-per**, *for a little while*.

5. The comparative of the adverb is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; the superlative of the adverb is formed by changing the ending **us** of the superlative of the adjective to **ē**.

## THE LATIN VERB.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

474. Active voice.—**Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, to love.****Present indicative.***I love, do love, am loving.*

amō  
amās  
amat  
amāmus  
amātis  
amant

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had loved.*

amāveram  
amāverās  
amāverat  
amāverāmus  
amāverātis  
amāverant

**Imperfect indicative.***I was loving, loved.*

amābam  
amābās  
amābat  
amābāmus  
amābātis  
amābant

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have loved.*

amāverō  
amāveris  
amāverit  
amāverimus  
amāveritis  
amāverint

**Future indicative.***I shall love.*

amābō  
amābis  
amābit  
amābimus  
amābitis  
amābunt

**Present subjunctive.***I may love.*

amem  
amēs  
amet  
amēmus  
amētis  
ament

**Perfect indicative.***I have loved, loved, did love.*

amāvī  
amāvistī  
amāvit  
amāvimus  
amāvistis  
amāvērunt (-ēre)

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might love.*

amārem  
amārēs  
amāret  
amārēmus  
amārētis  
amārent

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have loved.*

amāverim  
 amāveris  
 amāverit  
 amāverimus  
 amāveritis  
 amāverint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have loved.*

amāvissem  
 amāvissēs  
 amāvisset  
 amāvissēmus  
 amāvissētis  
 amāvissent

**Imperative.***amā, love (thou)**amātō, thou shalt love**amātō, he shall love**amāte, love (ye)**amātōte, ye shall love**amantō, they shall love***Participle.***Present. amāns, loving**Future. amātūrus, -a, -um, being about to love***Infinitive.***Present. amāre, to love**Perfect. amāvisse, to have loved**Future. amātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to love***Gerund.***Gen. amandī, of loving**Dat. amandō, to or for loving**Acc. ad amandum, for loving**Abl. amandō, by loving***Supine.***amātum, to love**amātū, to love***475. Passive voice.—Amor, amārī, amātus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) loved.*

amor  
 amāris (-re)  
 amātur  
 amāmur  
 amāminī  
 amantur

**Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) loved.*

amābar  
 amābāris (-re)  
 amābātur  
 amābāmur  
 amābāminī  
 amābantur

**Future indicative.***I shall be loved.*

amābor  
 amāberis (-re)  
 amābitur  
 amābimur  
 amābimini  
 amābuntur

**Present subjunctive.***I may be loved.*

amer  
 amēris (-re)  
 amētur  
 amēmur  
 amēmini  
 amentur

**Perfect indicative.***I have been loved, was loved.*

amātus, -a, -um sum  
                                   es  
                                   est  
 amātī, -ae, -a sumus  
                                   estis  
                                   sunt

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be loved.*

amārer  
 amārēris (-re)  
 amārētur  
 amārēmur  
 amārēmini  
 amārentur

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um eram  
                                   erās  
                                   erat  
 amātī, -ae, -a erāmus  
                                   erātis  
                                   erant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um sim  
                                   sīs  
                                   sit  
 amātī, -ae, -a sīmus  
                                   sītis  
                                   sint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um erō  
                                   eris  
                                   erit  
 amātī, -ae, -a erimus  
                                   eritis  
                                   erunt

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um essem  
                                   essēs  
                                   esset  
 amātī, -ae, -a essēmus  
                                   essētis  
                                   essent

**Imperative.****amāre**, *be thou loved***amāminī**, *be ye loved***amātor**, *thou shalt be loved***amātor**, *he shall be loved***amantor**, *they shall be loved***Present infinitive.****amārī**, *to be loved***Perfect infinitive.****amātum**, **-am**, **-um esse**, *to have been loved***Future infinitive.****amātum irī** *to be about to be loved***Perfect participle.****amātus**, **-a**, **-um**, *having been loved***Gerundive.****amandus**, **-a**, **-um**, *worthy to be loved***SECOND CONJUGATION.**

**476. Active voice.**—**Moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitum**,  
*to advise.*

**Present indicative.**

*I advise, do advise, am ad-  
 vising.*

**moneō****monēs****monet****monēmus****monētis****monent****Imperfect indicative.**

*I was advising, advised.*

**monēbam****monēbās****monēbat****monēbāmus****monēbātis****monēbant**

**Future indicative.***I shall advise.*

monēbō

monēbis

monēbit

monēbimus

monēbitis

monēbunt

**Present subjunctive.***I may advise.*

moneam

moneās

moneat

moneāmus

moneātis

moneant

**Perfect indicative.***I have advised, advised, did advise.*

monuī

monuistī

monuit

monuimus

monuistis

monuērunt (-ēre)

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might advise.*

monērem

monērēs

monēret

monērēmus

monērētis

monērent

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had advised.*

monueram

monuerās

monuerat

monuerāmus

monuerātis

monuerant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have advised.*

monuerim

monueris

monuerit

monuerimus

monueritis

monuerint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have advised.*

monuerō

monueris

monuerit

monuerimus

monueritis

monuerint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have advised.*

monuissē

monuissēs

monuisset

monuissēmus

monuissētis

monuissent

**Imperative.**

<b>monē</b> , <i>advise (thou)</i>	<b>monēte</b> , <i>advise (ye)</i>
<b>monētō</b> , <i>thou shalt advise</i>	<b>monētōte</b> , <i>ye shall advise</i>
<b>monētō</b> , <i>he shall advise</i>	<b>monentō</b> , <i>they shall advise</i>

**Participle.**

<i>Present.</i>	<b>monēns</b> , <i>advising</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<b>monitūrus</b> , <i>-a, -um, being about to advise</i>

**Infinitive.**

<i>Present.</i>	<b>monēre</b> , <i>to advise</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>monuisse</b> , <i>to have advised</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<b>monitūrum</b> , <i>-am, -um esse, to be about to advise</i>

**Gerund.**

<b>monendī</b> , <i>of advising</i>
<b>monendō</b> , <i>to or for advising</i>
<b>ad monendum</b> , <i>for advising</i>
<b>monendō</b> , <i>by advising</i>

**Supine.**

<b>monitum</b> , <i>to advise</i>	<b>monitū</b> , <i>to advise</i>
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

**477. Passive voice.—Moneor, monēri, monitus sum.**

<b>Present indicative.</b>	<b>Imperfect indicative.</b>
<i>I am (being) advised.</i>	<i>I was (being) advised.</i>

<b>moneor</b>	<b>monēbar</b>
<b>monēris (-re)</b>	<b>monēbāris (-re)</b>
<b>monētur</b>	<b>monēbātur</b>
<b>monēmur</b>	<b>monēbāmur</b>
<b>monēmini</b>	<b>monēbāmini</b>
<b>monentur</b>	<b>monēbantur</b>

**Future indicative.***I shall be advised.*

monēbor  
 monēberis (-re)  
 monēbitur  
 monēbimur  
 monēbimini  
 monēbuntur

**Present subjunctive.***I may be advised.*

monear  
 moneāris (-re)  
 moneātur  
 moneāmur  
 moneāmini  
 moneantur

**Perfect indicative.***I have been advised, was advised.*

monitus, -a, -um sum  
 es  
 est  
 monitī, -ae, -a sumus  
 estis  
 sunt

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be advised.*

monērer  
 monērēris (-re)  
 monērētur  
 monērēmur  
 monērēmini  
 monērentur

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um eram  
 erās  
 erat  
 monitī, -ae, -a erāmus  
 erātis  
 erant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um sim  
 sis  
 sit  
 monitī, -ae, -a sīmus  
 sītis  
 sint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um erō  
 eris  
 erit  
 monitī, -ae, -a erimus  
 eritis  
 erunt

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um essem  
 essēs  
 esset  
 monitī, -ae, -a essēmus  
 essētis  
 essent



**Imperative.**

<b>monēre</b> , <i>be thou advised</i>	<b>monēmini</b> , <i>be ye advised</i>
<b>monētor</b> , <i>thou shalt be advised</i>	
<b>monētor</b> , <i>he shall be advised</i>	<b>monentor</b> , <i>they shall be advised</i>

**Present infinitive.**

**monērī**, *to be advised*

**Perfect infinitive.**

**monitum**, -am, -um **esse**, *to have been advised*

**Future infinitive.**

**monitum irī**, *to be about to be advised*

**Perfect participle.**

**monitus**, -a, -um, *having been advised*

**Gerundive.**

**monendus**, -a, -um, *worthy to be advised*

**THIRD CONJUGATION.**

**478. Active voice.**—**Pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, *to place*.

**Present indicative.**

*I place, do place, am placing.*

**pōnō**  
**pōnis**  
**pōnit**  
**pōnimus**  
**pōnitis**  
**pōnunt**

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was placing, placed.*

**pōnēbam**  
**pōnēbās**  
**pōnēbat**  
**pōnēbāmus**  
**pōnēbātis**  
**pōnēbant**

**Future indicative.***I shall place.*

pōnam  
 pōnēs  
 pōnet  
 pōnēmus  
 pōnētis  
 pōnent

**Present subjunctive.***I may place.*

pōnam  
 pōnās  
 pōnat  
 pōnāmus  
 pōnātis  
 pōnant

**Perfect indicative.***I have placed, placed, did place.*

posuī  
 posuistī  
 posuit  
 posuimus  
 posuistis  
 posuērunt (-ēre)

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might place.*

pōnerem  
 pōnerēs  
 pōneret  
 pōnerēmus  
 pōnerētis  
 pōnerent

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had placed.*

posueram  
 posuerās  
 posuerat  
 posuerāmus  
 posuerātis  
 posuerant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have placed.*

posuerim  
 posueris  
 posuerit  
 posuerimus  
 posueritis  
 posuerint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have placed.*

posuerō  
 posueris  
 posuerit  
 posuerimus  
 posueritis  
 posuerint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have placed.*

posuissem  
 posuissēs  
 posuisset  
 posuissēmus  
 posuissētis  
 posuissent

**Imperative.**

<b>pōne</b> , <i>place (thou)</i>	<b>pōnite</b> , <i>place (ye)</i>
<b>pōnitō</b> , <i>thou shalt place</i>	<b>pōnitōte</b> , <i>ye shall place</i>
<b>pōnitō</b> , <i>he shall place</i>	<b>pōnuntō</b> , <i>they shall place</i>

**Participle.**

*Present.* **pōnēns**, *placing*

*Future.* **positūrus**, *-a, -um, being about to place*

**Infinitive.**

*Present.* **pōnere**, *to place*

*Perfect.* **posuisse**, *to have placed*

*Future.* **positūrum**, *-am, -um esse, to be about to place*

**Gerund.**

**pōnendī**, *of placing*

**pōnendō**, *to or for placing*

**ad pōnendum**, *for placing*

**pōnendō**, *by placing*

**Supine.**

**positum**, *to place*

**positū**, *to place*

**479. Passive voice.—Pōnor, pōnī, positus sum.****Present indicative.**

*I am (being) placed.*

**pōnor**

**pōneris (-re)**

**pōnitur**

**pōnimur**

**pōnimini**

**pōnuntur**

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was (being) placed.*

**pōnēbar**

**pōnēbāris (-re)**

**pōnēbātur**

**pōnēbāmur**

**pōnēbāmini**

**pōnēbantur**

**Future indicative.***I shall be placed.*

pōnar  
 pōnēris (-re)  
 pōnētur  
 pōnēmur  
 pōnēminī  
 pōnentur

**Present subjunctive.***I may be placed.*

pōnar  
 pōnāris (-re)  
 pōnātur  
 pōnāmur  
 pōnāminī  
 pōnantur

**Perfect indicative.***I have been placed, was placed.*

positus, -a, -um sum  
                               es  
                               est  
 positī, -ae, -a sumus  
                               estis  
                               sunt

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be placed.*

pōnerer  
 pōnerēris (-re)  
 pōnerētur  
 pōnerēmur  
 pōnerēminī  
 pōnerentur

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been placed.*

positus, -a, -um eram  
                               erās  
                               erat  
 positī, -ae, -a erāmus  
                               erātis  
                               erant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been placed.*

positus, -a, -um sim  
                               sīs  
                               sit  
 positī, -ae, -a sīmus  
                               sītis  
                               sint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been placed.*

positus, -a, -um erō  
                               eris  
                               erit  
 positī, -ae, -a erimus  
                               eritis  
                               erunt

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been placed.*

positus, -a, -um essem  
                               essēs  
                               esset  
 positī, -ae, -a essemus  
                               essētis  
                               essent

**Imperative.****pōnere**, *be thou placed***pōniminī**, *be ye placed***pōnitor**, *thou shalt be placed***pōnitor**, *he shall be placed***pōnuntor**, *they shall be placed***Infinitive.***Present.* **pōnī**, *to be placed**Perfect.* **positum**, -am, -um **esse**, *to have been placed**Future.* **positum irī**, *to be about to be placed***Perfect participle.****positus**, -a, -um, *having been placed***Gerundive.****pōnendus**, -a, -um, *worthy to be placed*

## THIRD CONJUGATION. THE 'IŌ' VERB.

**480. Active voice.**—**Capiō**, **capere**, **cēpī**, **captum**, *to take.***Present indicative.***I take, do take, am taking.***capiō****capis****capit****capimus****capitis****capiunt****Future indicative.***I shall take.***capiam****capiēs**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have taken, did take, took.***cēpī****cēpistī**

[etc., regular]

**Imperfect indicative.***I was taking, took.***capiēbam****capiēbās**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had taken.***cēperam****cēperās**

[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have taken.***cēperō****cēperis**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have taken.***cēperim****cēperis**

[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may take.***capiam****capiās**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have taken.***cēpissem****cēpissēs**

[etc., regular]

**Imperative.****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might take.***caperem****caperēs**

[etc., regular]

**cape, take (thou)****capitō, thou shalt take****capitō, he shall take****capite, take (ye)****capitōtē, ye shall take****capiuntō, they shall take****Participle.***Present. capiēns, taking**Future. captūrus, -a, -um, being about to take***Infinitive.***Present. capere, to take**Perfect. cēpisse, to have taken**Future. captūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to take***Gerund.****capiendī, of taking****capiendō, to or for taking****ad capiendum, for taking****capiendō, by taking****Supine.****captum, to take****captū, to take**

## 481. Passive voice.—Capior, capi, captus sum.

**Present indicative.***I am (being) taken.***capior****caperis (-re)****capitur****capimur****capimini****capiuntur****Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) taken.***capiēbar****capiēbāris (-re)**

[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall be taken.***capiar****capiēris (-re)**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been taken, was taken.***captus, -a, -um sum****“ “ “ es**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been taken.***captus, -a, -um eram****“ “ “ erās**

[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been taken.***captus, -a, -um erō****“ “ “ eris**

[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may be taken.***capiar****capiāris (-re)**

[etc., regular]

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be taken.***caperer****caperēris (-re)**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been taken.***captus, -a, -um sim****“ “ “ sis**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been taken.***captus, -a, -um essem****“ “ “ essēs**

[etc., regular]

**Imperative.****capere, be thou taken****capitor, thou shalt be taken****capitor, he shall be taken****capimini, be ye taken****capiuntor, they shall be taken**

**Infinitive.***Present. capi, to be taken**Perfect. captum, -am, -um esse, to have been taken**Future. captum iri, to be about to be taken***Perfect participle.***captus, -a, -um, having been taken***Gerundive.***capiendus, -a, -um, worthy to be taken***FOURTH CONJUGATION.****482. Active voice.**—*Mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi, mūnitum, to fortify.***Present indicative.***I fortify, do fortify, am fortifying.***mūniō****mūnīs****mūnit****mūnīmus****mūnītis****mūniunt****Future indicative.***I shall fortify.***mūniam****mūniēs****mūniet****mūniēmus****mūniētis****mūnient****Imperfect indicative.***I was fortifying, fortified.***mūniēbam****mūniēbās****mūniēbat****mūniēbāmus****mūniēbātis****mūniēbant****Perfect indicative.***I have fortified, did fortify, fortified.***mūnīvī****mūnīvistī****mūnīvit****mūnīvimus****mūnīvistis****mūnīvērunt (-ēre)**



**Pluperfect indicative.***I had fortified.*

mūnīveram  
 mūnīverās  
 mūnīverat  
 mūnīverāmus  
 mūnīverātis  
 mūnīverant

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might fortify.*

mūnīrem  
 mūnīrēs  
 mūnīret  
 mūnīrēmus  
 mūnīrētis  
 mūnīrent

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have fortified.*

mūnīverō  
 mūnīveris  
 mūnīverit  
 mūnīverimus  
 mūnīveritis  
 mūnīverint

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have fortified.*

mūnīverim  
 mūnīveris  
 mūnīverit  
 mūnīverimus  
 mūnīveritis  
 mūnīverint

**Present subjunctive.***I may fortify.*

mūniam  
 mūniās  
 mūniat  
 mūniāmus  
 mūniātis  
 mūniant

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have fortified.*

mūnīvissem  
 mūnīvissēs  
 mūnīvisset  
 mūnīvissēmus  
 mūnīvissētis  
 mūnīvissent

**Imperative.**

mūnī, fortify (thou)  
 mūnītō, thou shalt fortify  
 mūnītō, he shall fortify

mūnīte, fortify (ye)  
 mūnītōte, ye shall fortify  
 mūniuntō, they shall fortify

**Participle.***Present. mūniēns, fortifying**Future. mūnītūrus, -a, -um, being about to fortify*

**Infinitive.**

- Present.* **mūnīre**, to fortify  
*Perfect.* **mūnīvisse**, to have fortified  
*Future.* **mūnītūrum, -am, -um esse**, to be about to fortify

**Gerund.**

- mūniendī**, of fortifying  
**mūniendō**, to or for fortifying  
**ad mūniendum**, for fortifying  
**mūniendō**, by fortifying

**Supine.**

- mūnītum**, to fortify                      **mūnītū**, to fortify

**483. Passive voice.—Mūnior, mūnīri, mūnitus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) fortified.*

- mūnior**  
**mūnīris (-re)**  
**mūnītur**  
**mūnimur**  
**mūnīminī**  
**mūniuntur**

**Future indicative.***I shall be fortified.*

- mūniar**  
**mūniēris (-re)**  
**mūniētur**  
**mūniēmur**  
**mūniēminī**  
**mūnientur**

**Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) fortified.*

- mūniēbar**  
**mūniēbāris (-re)**  
**mūniēbātur**  
**mūniēbāmur**  
**mūniēbāminī**  
**mūniēbantur**

**Perfect indicative.***I have been, was fortified.*

- mūnītus, -a, -um sum**  
**es**  
**est**  
**mūnītī, -ae, -a sumus**  
**estis**  
**sunt**

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been fortified.*

<b>mūnītus, -a, -um eram</b>	
<b>erās</b>	
<b>erat</b>	
<b>mūnītī, -ae, -a erāmus</b>	
<b>erātis</b>	
<b>erant</b>	

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be fortified.*

<b>mūnīrer</b>	
<b>mūnīrēris (-re)</b>	
<b>mūnīrētur</b>	
<b>mūnīrēmur</b>	
<b>mūnīrēminī</b>	
<b>mūnīrentur</b>	

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been fortified.*

<b>mūnītus, -a, -um erō</b>	
<b>eris</b>	
<b>erit</b>	
<b>mūnītī, -ae, -a erimus</b>	
<b>eritis</b>	
<b>erunt</b>	

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been fortified.*

<b>mūnītus, -a, -um sim</b>	
<b>sīs</b>	
<b>sit</b>	
<b>mūnītī, -ae, -a sīmus</b>	
<b>sītis</b>	
<b>sint</b>	

**Present subjunctive.***I may be fortified.*

<b>mūniar</b>	
<b>mūniāris (-re)</b>	
<b>mūniātur</b>	
<b>mūniāmur</b>	
<b>mūniāminī</b>	
<b>mūniantur</b>	

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been fortified.*

<b>mūnītus -a, -um essem</b>	
<b>essēs</b>	
<b>esset</b>	
<b>mūnītī, -ae, -a essēmus</b>	
<b>essētis</b>	
<b>essent</b>	

**Imperative.**

<b>mūnīre, be thou fortified</b>	
<b>mūnītor, thou shalt be fortified</b>	
<b>mūnītor, he shall be fortified</b>	
<b>mūnīminī, be ye fortified</b>	
<b>mūniuntor, they shall be fortified</b>	

**Infinitive.**

<b>Present.</b>	<b>mūnīrī, to be fortified</b>
<b>Perfect.</b>	<b>mūnītum, -am, -um esse, to have been fortified</b>
<b>Future.</b>	<b>mūnītum īrī, to be about to be fortified</b>

**Perfect participle.****mūnītus, -a, -um, *having been fortified*****Gerundive.****mūniendus, -a, -um, *worthy to be fortified*****IRREGULAR VERBS.****484. Sum, esse, fuī, *to be.*****Present indicative.***I am.***sum****es****est****sumus****estis****sunt****Perfect indicative.***I have been, was.***fuī****fuistī****fuit****fuius****fuistis****fuērunt (-ōre)****Imperfect indicative.***I was***eram****erās****erat****erāmus****erātis****erant****Pluperfect indicative.***I had been.***fuera****fuērās****fuera****fuērāmus****fuērātis****fuera****Future indicative.***I shall be.***erō****eris****erit****erimus****eritis****erunt****Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been.***fuero****fuero****fuero****fuero****fuero****fuero**

**Present subjunctive.***I may be.***sim****sīs****sit****sīmus****sītis****sint****Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been.***fueroim****fuerois****fueroit****fueroimus****fueroitis****fueroint****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be.***essem****essēs****esset****essēmus****essētis****essent****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been.***fuissem****fuissets****fuisset****fuissemus****fuissetis****fuisissent****Imperative.****es, be thou****estō, thou shalt be****estō, he shall be****este, be ye****estōte, ye shall be****suntō, they shall be****Participle.***Future. futūrus, -a, -um, being about to be***Infinitive.***Present. esse, to be**Perfect. fuisse, to have been**Future. futūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to be***485. Possum, posse, potui, to be able.****Present indicative.***I am able.***possum****potes****potest****possumus****potestis****possunt**

**Imperfect indicative.***I was able.*

**poteram**  
**poterās**  
 [etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall be able.*

**poterō**  
**poteris**  
 [etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been, was able.*

**potuī**  
**potuisti**  
 [etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been able.*

**potueram**  
**potuerās**  
 [etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been able.*

**potuerō**  
**potueris**  
 [etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may be able.*

**possim**  
**possis**  
**possit**  
**possīmus**  
**possitis**  
**possint**

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be able.*

**possem**  
**possēs**  
**posset**  
**possēmus**  
**possētis**  
**possent**

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been able.*

**potuerim**  
**potueris**  
 [etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been able.*

**potuissem**  
**potuissēs**  
 [etc., regular]

**Infinitive.***Present. posse, to be able**Perfect. potuisse, to have been able*

486. **Eō, ire, ivi, itum, to go.****Present indicative.***I go, am going, do go.*

eō  
is  
it  
imus  
itis  
eunt

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had gone.*

iveram  
iverās  
iverat  
iverāmus  
iverātis  
iverant

**Imperfect indicative.***I was going, went.*

ibam  
ibās  
ibat  
ibāmus  
ibātis  
ibant

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have gone.*

iverō  
iveris  
iverit  
iverimus  
iveritis  
iverint

**Future indicative.***I shall go.*

ibō  
ibis  
ibit  
ibimus  
ibitis  
ibunt

**Present subjunctive.***I may go.*

eam  
eās  
eat  
eāmus  
eātis  
eant

**Perfect indicative.***I have gone, went.*

ivī  
ivistī  
ivit  
ivimus  
ivistis  
ivērunt (-ēre)

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might go.*

irem  
irēs  
iret  
irēmus  
irētis  
irent

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have gone.*

īverim  
īveris  
īverit  
īverimus  
īveritis  
īverint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have gone.*

īvissem  
īvisse  
īvisset  
īvissemus  
īvissetis  
īvisserint

**Imperative.**

ī, *go (thou)*  
itō, *thou shalt go*  
itō, *he shall go*

ite, *go (ye)*  
itōte, *ye shall go*  
euntō, *they shall go*

**Participle.**

*Present.* iēns (gen. euntis), *going*  
*Future.* itūrus, -a, -um, *being about to go*

**Infinitive.**

*Present.* ire, *to go*  
*Perfect.* īvisse, *to have gone*  
*Future.* itūrum, -am, -um esse, *to be about to go*

**Gerund.**

eundī, *of going*  
eundō, *to or for going*  
ad eundum, *for going*  
eundō, *by going*

**Supine.**itum, *to go*itū, *to go***487. Volō, velle, voluī, to wish.****Present indicative.***I wish, am wishing, do wish.*

volō  
vīs  
vult  
volumus  
vultis  
volunt

**Imperfect indicative.***I was wishing, wished.*

volēbam  
volēbās  
volēbat  
volēbāmus  
volēbātis  
volēbant



**Future indicative.***I shall wish.***volam****volēs****volet****volēmus****volētis****volent****Present subjunctive.***I may wish.***velim****velīs****velit****velīmus****velītis****velint****Perfect indicative.***I have wished, wished.***voluī****voluistī****voluit****voluimus****voluistis****voluērunt (-ēre)****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might wish.***vellem****vellēs****vellet****vellēmus****vellētis****vellent****Pluperfect indicative.***I had wished.***volueram****voluerās****voluerat****voluerāmus****voluerātis****voluerant****Perfect subjunctive.***I may have wished.***voluerim****volueris****voluerit****voluerimus****volueritis****voluerint****Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have wished.***voluerō****volueris****voluerit****voluerimus****volueritis****voluerint****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have wished.***voluissem****voluissēs****voluisset****voluissēmus****voluissētis****voluissent****Present participle.****volēns, wishing**

**Infinitive.***Present.* **velle**, to wish*Perfect.* **voluisse**, to have wished**488. Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, to be unwilling.****Present indicative.***I am unwilling.***nōlō****nōn vīs****nōn vult****nōlumus****nōn vultis****nōlunt****Imperfect indicative.***I was unwilling.***nōlēbam****nōlēbās**

[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall be unwilling.***nōlam****nōlēs**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been, was, unwilling.***nōluī****nōluistī**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been unwilling.***nōlueram****nōluerās**

[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been unwilling.***nōluerō****nōlueris**

[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may be unwilling.***nōlim****nōlis****nōlit****nōlimus****nōlitis****nōlint****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be unwilling.***nōllem****nōllēs**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been unwilling.***nōluerim****nōlueris**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been unwilling.***nōluissem****nōluissets**

[etc., regular]

**Imperative.**

<b>nōlī</b> , <i>be (thou) unwilling</i>	<b>nōlīte</b> , <i>be (ye) unwilling</i>
<b>nōlitō</b> , <i>thou shalt be unwilling</i>	<b>nōlitōte</b> , <i>ye shall be unwilling</i>
<b>nōlitō</b> , <i>he shall be unwilling</i>	<b>nōlantō</b> , <i>they shall be unwilling</i>

**Present participle.**

**nōlēns**, *being unwilling*

**Infinitive.**

*Present.* **nōlle**, *to be unwilling*

*Perfect.* **nōluisse**, *to have been unwilling*

**489. Mālō, mälle, mālui, to prefer.****Present indicative.**

*I prefer, am preferring, do prefer.*

**mālō**  
**māvīs**  
**māvult**  
**mālumus**  
**māvultis**  
**mālunt**

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was preferring, preferred.*

**mālēbam**  
**mālēbās**  
 [etc., regular]

**Future indicative.**

*I shall prefer.*

**mālam**  
**mālēs**  
 [etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have preferred, preferred.*

**mālui**  
**māluiſtī**  
 [etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had preferred.*

**mālueram**  
**māluerās**  
 [etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have preferred.*

**māluerō**  
**mālueris**  
 [etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may prefer.*

**mālim**  
**mālīs**  
**mālīt**  
**mālīmus**  
**mālītis**  
**mālīnt**

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might prefer.*

**māllem**  
**mālles**  
**māllet**  
**māllēmus**  
**māllētis**  
**māllent**

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have preferred.***māluerim****mālueris**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have preferred.***māluissem****māluissēs**

[etc., regular]

**Infinitive.***Present. mālle, to prefer**Perfect. māluisse, to have preferred***490. Active voice.—Ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, to bear.****Present indicative.***I bear, am bearing, do bear.***ferō****fers****fert****ferimus****fertis****ferunt****Pluperfect indicative.***I had borne.***tuleram****tulerās**

[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have borne.***tulerō****tuleris**

[etc., regular]

**Imperfect indicative.***I was bearing, bore.***ferēbam****ferēbās**

[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall bear.***feram****ferēs**

[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may bear.***feram****ferās**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have borne, bore.***tulī****tulistī**

[etc., regular]

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might bear.***ferrem****ferrēs**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have borne.***tulerim****tuleris**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have borne.***tulisse****tulissēs**

[etc., regular]

**Imperative.****fer**, bear (*thou*)**fertō**, thou shalt bear**fertō**, he shall bear**forte**, bear (*ye*)**fertōte**, ye shall bear**feruntō**, they shall bear**Participle.***Present.* **ferēns**, bearing*Future.* **lāturus**, -a, -um, being about to bear**Infinitive.***Present.* **ferre**, to bear*Perfect.* **tulisse**, to have borne*Future.* **lātūrum**, -am, -um **esse**, to be about to bear**Gerund.****ferendī**, of bearing, etc.**Supine.****lātum**, to bear**lātū**, to bear**491. Passive voice.—Feror, ferri, lātus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) borne.***feror****ferris** (-re)**fertur****ferimur****ferimini****feruntur****Future indicative.***I shall be borne.***ferar****ferēris** (-re)

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been, was, borne.***lātus**, -a, -um **sum****es**

[etc.]

**Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) borne.***ferēbar****ferēbāris** (-re)

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had been borne.*  
**lātus, -a, -um eram**  
**erās**  
 [etc.]

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might be borne.*  
**ferrer**  
**ferrēris (-re)**  
 [etc., regular]

**Future perfect indicative.**

*I shall have been borne.*  
**lātus, -a, -um erō**  
**eris**  
 [etc.]

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have been borne.*  
**lātus, -a, -um sim**  
**sīs**  
 [etc.]

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may be borne.*  
**ferar**  
**ferāris (-re)**  
 [etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have been borne.*  
**lātus, -a, -um essem**  
**essēs**  
 [etc.]

**Imperative.**

<b>ferre, be thou borne</b>	<b>feriminī, be ye borne</b>
<b>fertor, thou shalt be borne</b>	
<b>fertor, he shall be borne</b>	<b>feruntor, they shall be borne</b>

**Infinitive.**

*Present.* **ferri, to be borne**  
*Perfect.* **lātum, -am, -um esse, to have been borne**  
*Future.* **lātum iri, to be about to be borne**

**Perfect participle.**

**lātus, -a, -um, having been borne**

**Gerundive.**

**ferendus, -a, -um, worthy to be borne**

492. Active voice.—**Faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, to make.**

**Present indicative.**

*I make, am making, do make.*

**faciō  
facis  
facit  
facimus  
facitis  
faciunt**

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was making, made.*

**faciēbam  
faciēbās  
[etc., regular]**

**Future indicative.**

*I shall make.*

**faciam  
faciēs  
[etc., regular]**

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have made, made.*

**fēcī  
fēcistī  
[etc., regular]**

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had made.*

**fēceram  
fēcērās  
[etc., regular]**

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have made.*

**fēcerō  
fēceris  
[etc., regular]**

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may make.*

**faciam  
faciās  
[etc., regular]**

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might make.*

**facerem  
facerēs  
[etc., regular]**

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have made.*

**fēcirim  
fēcēris  
[etc., regular]**

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have made.*

**fēcissem  
fecissēs  
[etc., regular]**

**Imperative.**

**fac, make (thou)  
facitō, thou shalt make  
facitō, he shall make**

**facite, make (ye)  
facitōte, ye shall make  
faciuntō, they shall make**

**Participle.***Present.* **faciēns**, *making**Future.* **factūrus, -a, -um**, *being about to make***Infinitive.***Present.* **facere**, *to make**Perfect.* **fēcisse**, *to have made**Future.* **factūrum, -am, -um esse**, *to be about to make***Gerund.****faciendī**, *of making, etc.***Supine.****factum**, *to make***factū**, *to make***493. Passive voice.—Fīō, fieri, factus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) made, become.***fīō****fīs****fit****fīmus****fītis****fīunt****Pluperfect indicative.***I had been made.***factus, -a, -um eram****erās [etc.]****Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been made.***factus, -a, -um erō****eris [etc.]****Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) made, became***fīēbam****fīēbās [etc.]****Future indicative.***I shall be made, shall become.***fīam****fīēs [etc.]****Present subjunctive.***I may be made, may become***fīam****fīās****fīat****fīāmus****fīātis****fīant****Perfect indicative.***I have been, was, made.***factus, -a, -um sum**  
**es [etc.]****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be made, might become.***fīerem****fīerēs [etc.]**



**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been made.***factus, -a, -um sim**  
**sīs [etc.]****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been made.***factus, -a, -um essem**  
**essēs [etc.]****Imperative.****fī, be thou made****fite, be ye made****Infinitive.***Present. fierī, to be made, to become**Perfect. factum, -am, -um esse, to have been made**Future. factum irī, to be about to be made***Perfect participle.****factus, -a, -um, having been made****Gerundive.****faciendus, -a, -um, worthy to be made****DEPONENT VERBS.****494. First conjugation.—Populor, populāri, populātus**  
**sum, to plunder.****Present indicative.***I plunder, am plundering, etc.***populor**  
**populāris (-re)**  
**populātur [etc.]****Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have plundered.*  
**populātus erō [etc.]****Present subjunctive.***I may plunder.*  
**populer**  
**populēris (-re)**  
**populētur [etc.]****Imperfect indicative.***I was plundering.*  
**populābar [etc.]****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might plunder.*  
**populārer [etc.]****Future indicative.***I shall plunder.*  
**populābor [etc.]****Perfect indicative.***I have plundered.*  
**populātus sum [etc.]****Perfect subjunctive.***I may have plundered.*  
**populātus sim [etc.]****Pluperfect indicative.***I had plundered.*  
**populātus eram [etc.]****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have plundered.*  
**populātus essem [etc.]**

**Imperative.**

<b>populāre</b> , <i>plunder (thou)</i>	<b>populāminī</b> , <i>plunder ye</i>
<b>populātor</b> , <i>thou shalt plunder</i>	
<b>populātor</b> , <i>he shall plunder</i>	<b>populantor</b> , <i>they shall plunder</i>

**Infinitive.**

<i>Present.</i>	<b>populārī</b> , <i>to plunder</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>populātum</b> , <b>-am</b> , <b>-um esse</b> , <i>to have plundered</i>

**Perfect participle.**

**populātus**, **-a**, **-um**, *having plundered*

**Gerundive.**

**populandus**, **-a**, **-um**, *worthy to be plundered*

**Active forms.**

<i>Present participle.</i>	<b>populāns</b> , <i>plundering</i>	
<i>Future participle.</i>	<b>populātūrus</b> , <b>-a</b> , <b>-um</b> , <i>being about to plunder</i>	
<i>First supine.</i>	<b>populātum</b> , <i>to plunder</i>	
<i>Second supine.</i>	<b>populātū</b> , <i>to plunder</i>	[ <i>plunder</i> ]
<i>Future infinitive.</i>	<b>populātūrum</b> , <b>-am</b> , <b>-um esse</b> , <i>to be about to</i>	
<i>Gerund.</i>	<b>populandī</b> , <i>of plundering</i> [etc.]	

**495. Second conjugation.—Vereor, verērī, veritus sum, to fear.**

**Present indicative.**

*I fear, am fearing, etc.*

**vereor**

**verēris (-re)**

**verētur** [etc.]

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was fearing.*

**verēbar** [etc.]

**Future indicative.**

*I shall fear.*

**verēbor** [etc.]

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have feared.*

**veritus sum** [etc.]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had feared.*

**veritus eram** [etc.]

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have feared.*

**veritus erō** [etc.]

**Present subjunctive.***I may fear.***vereor****vereāris (-re)****vereātur [etc.]****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might fear.***verērer [etc.]****Perfect subjunctive.***I may have feared.***veritus sim [etc.]****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have feared.***veritus essem [etc.]****Imperative.****verēre, fear (thou)****verēmini, fear (ye)****verētor, thou shalt fear****verētor, he shall fear****verentor, they shall fear****Infinitive.***Present. verērī, to fear**Perfect. veritum, -am, -um esse, to have feared***Perfect participle.****veritus, -a, -um, having feared****Gerundive.****verendus, -a, -um, worthy to be feared****Active forms.***Present participle. verēns, fearing**Future participle. veritūrus, -a, -um, being about to fear**First supine. veritum, to fear**Second supine. veritū, to fear**Future infinitive. veritūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to fear**Gerund. verendī, of fearing, etc.***496. Third conjugation.—Ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, to use.****Present indicative.***I use, am using, etc.***ūtor****ūteris (-re)****ūtitor****ūtimur****ūtimini****ūtuntur****Imperfect indicative.***I was using.***ūtēbar [etc.]****Future indicative.***I shall use.***ūtar****ūtēris (-re)****ūtētur [etc.]**

**Perfect indicative.***I have used.***ūsus sum** [etc.]**Pluperfect indicative.***I had used.***ūsus eram** [etc.]**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have used.***ūsus erō** [etc.]**Present subjunctive.***I may use.***ūtār****ūtāris (-re)****ūtātur** [etc.]**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might use.***ūterer** [etc.]**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have used.***ūsus sim** [etc.]**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have used.***ūsus essem** [etc.]**Imperative.****ūtere**, (*use thou*)**ūtiminī**, (*use (ye)*)**ūtitor**, (*thou shalt use*)**ūtitor**, (*he shall use*)**ūtuntor**, (*they shall use*)**Infinitive.***Present.* **ūtī**, *to use**Perfect.* **ūsum, -am, -um esse**, *to have used***Perfect participle.****ūsus, -a, -um**, *having used***Gerundive.****ūtendus, -a, -um**, *worthy to be used***Active forms.***Present participle.* **ūtēns**, *using**Future participle.* **ūsūrus, -a, -um**, *being about to use**First supine.* **ūsum**, *to use**Second supine.* **ūsū**, *to use**Future infinitive.* **ūsūrum, -am, -um esse**, *to be about to use**Gerund.* **ūtendī**, *of using, etc.*

**497. Fourth conjugation.**—Potior, potiri, potitus sum, *to capture.*

**Present indicative.**

*I capture, am capturing, etc.*

potior  
potiris (-re)  
potitur  
potimur  
potimini  
potiuntur

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was capturing.*

potiēbar [etc.]

**Future indicative.**

*I shall capture.*

potiar  
potiēris (-re)  
potiētur [etc.]

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have captured.*

potitus sum [etc.]

**Imperative.**

potire, capture (thou)

potitor, thou shalt capture

potitor, he shall capture

potimini, capture (ye)

potiuntor, they shall capture

**Infinitive.**

*Present.* potiri, to capture

*Perfect.* potitum, -am, -um esse, to have captured

**Perfect participle.**

potitus, -a, -um, having captured

**Gerundive.**

potiendus, -a, -um, worthy to be captured

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had captured.*

potitus eram [etc.]

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have captured.*

potitus erō [etc.]

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may capture.*

potiar  
potiāris (-re)  
potiātur [etc.]

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might capture.*

potīrer [etc.]

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have captured.*

potitus sim [etc.]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have captured.*

potitus essem [etc.]

## Active forms.

<i>Present participle.</i>	<b>potiēns</b> , capturing
<i>Future participle.</i>	<b>potitūrus</b> , -a, -um, being about to capture
<i>First supine.</i>	<b>potitum</b> , to capture
<i>Second supine.</i>	<b>potitū</b> , to capture <span style="float: right;">[ture</span>
<i>Future infinitive.</i>	<b>potitūrum</b> , -am, -um <b>esse</b> , to be about to cap-
<i>Gerund.</i>	<b>potiendī</b> , of capturing, etc.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

The *active voice* of the 'Periphrastic' is formed by annexing forms of **sum** to the *future active participle*; the *passive*, by annexing these forms to the *gerundive*.

**498. Active voice.**—**Amātūrus sum**, *I am about to love.*

**Present indicative.**

*I am about to love.*

**amātūrus**, -a, -um **sum**  
**es**  
**est**

**amātūrī**, -ae, -a **sumus**  
**estis**  
**sunt**

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was about to love.*

**amātūrus**, -a, -um **eram**  
**erās** [etc.]

**Future indicative.**

*I shall be about to love.*

**amātūrus**, -a, -um **erō**  
**eris** [etc.]

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have been, was, about to love.*

**amātūrus**, -a, -um **fuī**  
**fuistī** [etc.]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had been about to love.*

**amātūrus**, -a, -um **fuera**m  
**fuērās** [etc.]

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have been about to love.*

**amātūrus**, -a, -um **fuerō**  
**fuēris** [etc.]

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may be about to love.*

**amātūrus**, -a, -um **sim**  
**sīs** [etc.]

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might be about to love.*

**amātūrus**, -a, -um **essem**  
**essēs** [etc.]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been about to love.***amātūrus, -a, -um fuerim**  
fueris [etc.]**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been about to love.***amātūrus, -a, -um fuisset**  
fuissēs [etc.]**Infinitive.***Present. amātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to love**Perfect. amātūrum, -am, -um fuisse, to have been about to love***499. Passive voice.—Amandus sum, I deserve to be loved.****Present indicative.***I am to be, ought to be, loved.***amandus, -a, -um sum**  
es  
est  
**amandī, -ae, -a sumus**  
estis  
sunt**Pluperfect indicative.***I had deserved to be loved.***amandus, -a, -um fueram****Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have deserved to be loved.***amandus, -a, -um fuerō****Present subjunctive.***I may be worthy to be loved.***amandus, -a, -um sim****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be worthy to be loved.***amandus, -a, -um essem****Perfect subjunctive.***I may have deserved to be loved.***amandus, -a, -um fuerim****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have deserved to be loved.***amandus, -a, -um fuisset****Infinitive.***Present. amandum, -am, -um esse, to deserve to be loved**Perfect. amandum, -am, -um fuisse, to have deserved to be loved*

## QUANTITY RULES OF LATIN VOWELS AND SYLLABLES.

**500. General rules of quantity.**—1. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is *short*: except in the fifth declension, where *ē* follows a vowel, as *diēi*; *i* in the genitive singular *iūs*, see (286); *i* in some forms of *fiō*, see (493).

2. Diphthongs and vowels formed by contraction are *long*: as *ae* in *fossae*, and *ō* in the penult of *cōgō* (= *con* + *agō*).

3. A syllable ending in a *short* vowel before a mute followed by *l* or *r* is *common*, i.e., long or short; as, *pātris*.

4. A vowel is *always long* before *ns*, *nf*, *gn*, and often long before *scō*, *scor* in inceptive verbs; as, *regēns*, *inferō*, *rēgnum*, *proficiscor*.

5. Compounds retain their *long* vowels; as, *dē-dūcō*.

6. Vowels are *long* in the nominative singular ending of nouns and adjectives which *increase long* in the genitive: *vōx*, *vōcis*; *ferāx*, *ferācis*.

7. A syllable is long by *nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong; long by *position* when it precedes two or more consonants or a double consonant.

**501. Quantity of final syllables ending in a vowel.**—In words of *more than one* syllable, final *a*, *e*, *y* are *short*, final *i*, *o*, *u* are *long*.

1. Final *a* is *short*, as *vālla*: except ablative of first declension, as *tubā*; imperative of first conjugation, as *portā*; most uninflected words, as *posteā*, *intrā*, but not so *ita*.

2. Final *e* is *short*, as *milite*: except ablative of fifth declension, as *spē*; imperative of second conjugation, as



**dēlē**; most adverbs derived from adjectives of second declension, as **māximē**.

3. Final **i** is *long*, as **flūminī**: except **nisi**, **cui**; final **i** is common in **mihī**, **tibī**, **sibī**, **ibī**, **ubī**.

4. Final **o** is *long*, as **pōnō**: except **homo**, **ego**, **modo**, **octo**, **duo**.

5. Final **u** is always *long*, as **adventū**.

**502. Quantity of final syllables ending in a consonant.**—

1. All final syllables ending in a *single* consonant *other than s* are *short*, as **amātur**, **reget**.

2. Of final syllables in **s**, **as**, **es**, **os** are *long*, **is**, **us**, **ys** are *short*.

3. Final **as** is *long*, as **tubās**, **audiās**.

4. Final **es** is *long*, as **amēs**, **diēs**: except nominative and vocative singular, third declension, where the genitive ending is **-etis**, **-idis**, **-itis**, as **obses**, **miles**; **es** (from **sum**) and compounds of **sum**, as **potes**.

5. Final **os** is *long*, as **virōs**.

6. Final **is** is *short*, as **militis**, **amātis**: except dative and ablative plural, as **pueris**, **altis**; accusative plural, third declension, as **finis** (= **finēs**); second person singular, present indicative active, fourth conjugation, as **audis**; **vis** (noun and verb from **volō**), **fis**, **sis**, **velis**, **nōlis**, **mālis**, **possis**, and **is** (from **eō**).

7. Final **us** is *short*, as **mūrus**, **amātus**: except genitive singular, and nominative and accusative plural, fourth declension, as **exercitūs**; nominative third declension, when long **u** occurs in the genitive, as **virtūs**, **virtūtis**.

**503. Quantity of monosyllables.**—1. All monosyllables that end in a *vowel* are *long*, as **ā**, **sī**, **dē**, **sē**, etc.: except the enclitic **que**.

2. Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a *consonant* follow the rules given.

3. Monosyllabic nouns and adjectives have a *long* vowel in the nominative when they end in a *consonant*, as *mōs*, *sōl*, *pēs*, *pār*: but not so *vir*.

4. Monosyllabic *particles* that end in a consonant are *short*, as *cis*, *in*, *nec*, *per*, etc.: except *nōn*, *quīn*, and adverbs in *c*, as *sic*.

**504. Quantity of verb stems and endings.**—1. A vowel is always *short* before final *m*, *r*, and *t*.

2. A vowel is always *short* before another vowel (except in certain forms of *fiō*), *nd*, and *nt*.

3. Final *a*, *i*, *o*, and *u* are *long*; final *e* is *short*, except in the imperative active, second person singular, in the second conjugation; as, *monē*.

4. Before final *s*, *a* and *e* are *long*; *i* and *u* are *short*, except that in the present indicative active, second person singular, in the fourth conjugation, *ī* is long; as, *audis*: see also (502), 6.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

- ā, ab**, prep. + *abl.*, *from, by* ;  
 chapt. 7 (last sentence), *away*.  
**abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum**,  
*hide*.  
**absum, abesso, āfui**, *be distant*.  
**ac** (before consonants only), conj.,  
*and* ; chapt. 19 (first sentence),  
*than*.  
**accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum**,  
*go towards, approach* ; chapt.  
 13 (with *ad* + *acc.*) ; chapt. 7,  
*be inspired in* (with *dat.*).  
**accidō, -cidere, -cidī**, (no supine),  
*happen*.  
**accipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum**,  
*receive, accept* ; chapt. 33, *suffer*.  
**acclivis, -is, -e**, adj. (of two ter-  
 minations), *sloping upward*.  
**acclivitās, -tātis, fem.**, *slope (up-  
 ward)*.  
**accommodō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**,  
*adjust, fit, put on*.  
**acervus, -i, mas.**, *a pile, a heap*.  
**aciēs, -ēi, fem.**, *line of battle, an  
 army*.  
**ācriter, adv.**, *sharply, desperately*.  
**ad**, prep. + *acc.*, *to, towards, near* ;  
*ad* + gerundive, *for* ; chapt. 1,  
*ad eōs, against them* ; chapt. 31,  
*according to*.  
**adaequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *make  
 equal to, equal*.  
**addūcō**, see **dūcō**, *lead to, bring,  
 lead* (with *ad* + *acc.*).  
**adeō, -ire, -ivi -ii, -itum**, *go to* ;  
 chapt. 7, *reach*.  
**adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum**,  
*throw to, hurl*.  
**aditus, -ūs, n. as.**, *access, approach,  
 admittance*.  
**adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvi, -iūtum**,  
*aid, help*.  
**administrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**,  
*execute, attend to*.  
**adorior, -oriri, -ortussum, depon.**,  
*rise up against, attack*.  
**Aduatuci, -ōrum, mas.**, a Belgic  
 tribe living on the west bank  
 of the Meuse.  
**adventus, -ūs, mas.**, *approach,  
 arrival*.  
**adversus, -a, -um, adj.**, *opposite* ;  
 literally, *turned to or towards*.  
**aedificium, -i, neut.**, *a building*.  
**aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *build*.  
**Aeduī, -ōrum, mas.**, a Gallic  
 tribe living between the upper  
 waters of the Saone and Loire.  
**Aedus, -a, -um, adj.**, *Aeduan*.  
**aegrē, adv.**, *with difficulty, barely*.  
**aequāliter, adv.**, *uniformly,  
 evenly*.  
**aestās, -tātis, fem.**, *summer*.  
**aestuārium, -i, neut.**, *a sea-marsh* ;

- literally, *relating to the tide or sea*.
- aetās**, -tātis, fem., *age, old age*.
- afferō**, -ferre, attuli, allātum, *bring to, carry to*.
- affinitās**, -tātis, fem., *relationship (by marriage)*.
- ager**, agri, mas., *a field, land (which is cultivated)*.
- agger**, aggeris, mas., *a mound, materials for a mound* (chapt. 20).
- aggredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., *approach, attack*.
- agmen**, -minis, neut., *the line of march (the marching column)*.
- agō**, agere, ēgi, āctum, *drive*; chapt. 12, 30, *bring up*; 20, *do*; 21, *carry*.
- aliās . . . aliās**, adv., *at one time . . . at another*.
- aliēnus**, -a, -um, adj., *another's, of others*.
- aliter**, adv., *otherwise*.
- alius**, alia, aliud, adj., *other, another, different*; **alius aliam in partem**, *one in one direction, another in another*.
- alter**, -era, -erum, adj., *the other (of two); other, another*.
- altitūdō**, -dinis, fem., *height*.
- altus**, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall, deep*.
- Ambiāni**, -ōrum, mas., *a Belgic tribe, from whose name is derived the modern Amiens*.
- amicitia**, -ae, fem., *friendship*.
- amicus**, -i, mas., *a friend*.
- amicus**, -a, -um, adj., *friendly*.
- āmittō**, see **mittō**, *lose, let go (away)*.
- amplificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *increase*.
- amplius**, neut. compar., *used adverbially or as noun, more*.
- Andēs**, -ium, mas., *a Gallic tribe north of the Loire*.
- Andocumborius**, -i, mas., *a chief man among the Remi*.
- angustus**, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, difficult*; chapt. 25, *in angustō, at a crisis*.
- animus**, -i, mas., *mind, courage, feelings*; chapt. 1, *character*.
- annus**, -i, mas., *a year*.
- ante**, adv., *formerly*; prep. + acc., *before (of place and time)*.
- antiquitus**, adv., *in olden times*.
- apertus**, -a, -um, adj., *open*; chapt. 23, *exposed, unprotected*.
- appellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *call (name)*; chapt. 25, *address*.
- appropinquō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *to draw near, approach*.
- apud**, prep. + acc., *near, among*.
- arbitror**, -trāri, -trātus sum, depon., *think, suppose*.
- arbor**, arboris, fem., *a tree*.
- arcessō**, -cessere, -cessivi, -cessitum, *summon, invite*.
- arduus**, -a, -um, adj., *high, difficult (of ascent), steep*.
- ariēs**, -ietis, mas., *a battering ram*.
- arma**, -ōrum, neut., *arms, weapons*.
- armātūra**, -ae, fem., *equipment*.
- armō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *arm, equip*.
- ascendō**, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsum, *climb, ascend*.
- ascēsus**, -ūs, mas., *an ascent*;

chapt. 33, *the way up, means of ascent.*

at, conj., *but.*

atque, conj., *and also, and;*  
chapt. 6, *as.*

Atrebātēs, -um, mas., a tribe in  
Northeastern Gaul.

attingō, -tingere, attigī, attāc-  
tum, *touch upon, reach, border*  
*upon.*

auctōritās, -tātis, fem., *influence,*  
*power, authority* (not military  
or political).

audācter, adv., *boldly.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, semi-  
depon., *dare, venture.*

audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *listen to;*  
chapt. 12, *hear;* 31, *hear of or*  
*about.*

Aulerci, -ōrum, mas., a people  
of Central Gaul, consisting of  
several tribes.

Aurunculīus, -ī, mas., a lieu-  
tenant of Caesar.

aut, conj., *or;* aut . . . aut, *either*  
*. . . or.*

autem, conj., *but, moreover.*

auxilia, -ōrum, neut., *auxiliaries*  
(as opposed to the regular  
heavy-armed Roman infantry).

auxilium, -ī, neut., *help, aid,*  
*assistance.*

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-  
sum, *turn away from.*

Axona, -ae, fem., a river of  
Northern Gaul (now called  
Aisne) flowing into the Isara.

Baculus, -ī, mas., a centurion in  
Caesar's army.

Baleāris, -is, -e, adj., *Balearic;*  
the Balearic islands, famous  
for their slingers, lie in the  
Mediterranean off the coast of  
Spain.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *barba-*  
*rian;* plur., *the barbarians*  
(used of the Gauls).

Belgae, -ārum, mas., *the Bel-*  
*gians,* a warlike people in the  
northern part of Gaul.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, mas., a pow-  
erful Belgic tribe, between the  
Seine and the Oise.

bellum, -ī, neut., *war.*

Bibrax, -actis, fem., a town of  
the Remi.

Boduōgnātus, -ī, mas., a leader  
of the Nervii.

Bratuspantium, -ī, neut., a town  
of the Bellovacī.

brevitās, -tātis, fem., *shortness;*  
with *temporis,* *want of time.*

Britannia, -ae, fem., *Britain.*

cadāver, -eris, neut., *a dead*  
*body.*

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum,  
*fall, be killed.*

Caeroesi, -ōrum, mas., a tribe  
in Northern Gaul.

Caesar, -aris, mas., *Caesar,*  
Caius Julius Caesar, conqueror  
of Gaul.

calamitās, -tātis, fem., *calamity,*  
*disaster.*

Caleti, -ōrum, mas., a tribe in  
Normandy, on the Seine.

cālō, -ōnis, mas., *a camp-servant,*  
*groom.*

- captivus**, -a, -um, adj., *taken captive*; mas. as noun, *captive, prisoner*.
- caput**, **capitis**, neut., *the head*; less exactly, *person*.
- Carnutēs**, -um, mas., a tribe in Central Gaul.
- castellum**, -i, neut., *a redoubt, stronghold*.
- castra**, -ōrum, neut., *a camp*.
- cāsus**, -ūs, mas., *event*; chapt. 21, *chance*; 31, *misfortune*.
- causa**, -ae, fem., *a cause, a reason*; **causā**, *for the sake of*, used like a prep., following the genitive.
- cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cessi**, **cessum**, *retreat, give way*.
- celeritās**, -tātis, fem., *swiftness, quickness*.
- celeriter**, adv., *quickly, speedily*.
- cēlō**, -āre, -āvi, ātum, *conceal, hide*.
- centum**, indeclin. num. adj., *a hundred*.
- centuriō**, -ōnis, mas., *a centurion*; a subordinate officer commanding a century (a hundred men).
- certus**, -a, -um, adj., *certain*; **certiōrem** (-ēs) **facere**, *inform* (with acc. + infin.).
- (**cēterus**), -a, -um, adj., *the rest of*; usually plur. as noun, *the rest*.
- Cimbri**, -ōrum, mas., a German tribe in Jutland, defeated by Marius B.C. 101.
- circiter**, adv., *about, not far from*.
- circuitus**, -ūs, mas., *a circuit, a circumference*.
- circum**, prep. + acc., *around, about*.
- circumdō**, see **dō**, *put around*; less exactly, *surround*.
- circumiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *place around, throw around*.
- circummūniō**, see **mūniō**, *fortify around, fortify*.
- circumveniō**, see **veniō**, *surround, outflank*.
- cis**, prep. + acc., *on this side of*.
- citerior**, -ior, -ius, adj. (comparative — two terminations), *hither, nearer*.
- citrā**, prep. + acc., *on this side of*.
- civitās**, -tātis, fem., *a state*.
- clāmor**, -ōris, mas., *a shout*.
- claudō**, **claudere**, **clausi**, **clausum**, *close, bring up*.
- clēmēntia**, -ae, fem., *kindness, clemency*.
- coacervō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *pile up*.
- coepī**, **coepisse**, **coeptus sum**, *began*.
- cōgnōscō**, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *find out, ascertain*.
- cōgō**, **cōgere**, **coēgi**, **coāctum**, *collect, assemble, force*.
- cohors**, -hortis, fem., *a cohort* (the tenth part of a legion).
- cohortātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *an encouraging, encouragement*.
- cohortor**, -tāri, -tātus sum, *depon., encourage, urge*.
- collis**, -is, mas., *a hill*.
- comes**, **comitis**, mas., *a comrade*.

- commeātus**, -ūs, mas., *supplies, provisions.*  
**commemorō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *remind one of, state, relate.*  
**committō**, see **mittō**, *join*; with **proelium**, *begin the battle.*  
**commodē**, adv., *easily, readily.*  
**commoveō**, see **moveō**, *alarm, disturb.*  
**commūnis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *common, general.*  
**commūtatiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a change.*  
**comparō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *prepare, get ready.*  
**compellō**, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *drive together, drive.*  
**compleō**, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *fill.*  
**complūrēs**, -rēs, -ria (-ra), adj. (of two terminations), *very many, a great many.*  
**concidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *cut to pieces.*  
**concilium**, -i, neut., *a council (of war), an assembly.*  
**concurrō**, -currere, -curri (-curri), -cursum, *run together, rush up.*  
**condiciō**, -ōnis, fem., *terms, condition.*  
**Condrūsī**, -ōrum, mas., *a Belgic tribe on the Meuse.*  
**condūcō**, see **dūcō**, *bring together, hire.*  
**cōnferō**, -ferre, -tuli, collātum, *bring together, collect; sē cōnferre, betake one's self.*  
**cōnfertus**, -a, -um, adj., *crowded, dense.*  
**cōnficiō**, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *accomplish*; chapt. 4, *raise*; 23, 25, 27, *exhaust.*  
**cōnfidō**, -fidere, -fisis sum, semi-depon., *believe in, trust.*  
**cōnfirmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *establish*; chapt. 15, *assure*; 19, *encourage.*  
**cōnfigō**, -figere, -fixi, -fictum, *fight, contend.*  
**congregior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., *engage (in battle), fight*  
**cōniciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw together*; chapt. 6, 27, *hurl*; 23, *drive*; 16, 28, *place.*  
**coniungō**, -iungere, -iūnxi, -iūntum, *join, unite.*  
**coniūrō**, -iūrāre, -iūrāvi, -iūrātum, *conspire, swear together.*  
**conlocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *place, station (of troops).*  
**cōnor**, -nārī, -nātus sum, depon., *attempt, undertake, try.*  
**cōnsanguineus**, -a, -um, adj., *akin (by blood)*; plur. as noun, *kinsmen.*  
**cōnscribō**, see **scribō**, *enroll, enlist.*  
**cōnsēnsus**, -ūs, mas., *consent, agreement.*  
**cōnsentiō**, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, *agree, combine, conspire.*  
**cōnsequor**, see **sequor**, depon., *follow, secure, obtain.*  
**cōnservō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *spare, save.*  
**cōnsidō**, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum, *settle, encamp.*  
**cōnsilium**, -i, neut., *wise counsel, a plan*; chapt. 17, *a suggestion.*

**cōnsimilis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *very like, quite similar*.

**cōnsistō**, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, *halt, make a stand*; chapt. 33, *depend upon*.

**cōnspectus**, -ūs, mas., *sight, view*.  
**cōnspiciō**, -spicere, -spēxi, -spec-tum, *see, behold*.

**cōnspicor**, -cāri, -cātus sum, *depon.*, *see, observe*.

**cōnstanter**, adv., *uniformly, steadily*.

**cōnstituō**, -tuere, -tui, -tūtum, *decide*; chapt. 12, 30, *set up*; 8, 19, *arrange, station*.

**cōnsuēscō**, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, *become accustomed*; in the perf. tenses, *be accustomed*.

**cōnsuētūdō**, -dinis, fem., *custom, habit*.

**contemptus**, -ūs, mas., *contempt, scorn*.

**contendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *struggle, fight, hasten*.

**contineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *hold in, keep* (within bounds), *keep*.

**contrā**, adv. and prep. + acc., *against, in opposition*.

**contrārius**, -a, -um, adj., *opposite*.

**contumēlia**, -ae, fem., *an insult, an outrage*.

**conveniō**, see **veniō**, *meet, assemble*; chapt. 19, *be agreed upon*.

**convertō**, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *turn*; **signa convertere**, *face about*.

**convocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *summon, call together*.

**cōpia**, -ae, fem., *an abundance, plenty*; (plur.) *forces*.

**cornū**, -ūs, neut., *a horn, a wing* (of an army).

**corpus**, -oris, neut., *the body*; chapt. 10, 27, *a (dead) body*.

**cortex**, -ticis, mas. and fem., *bark*.

**cotidiē**, adv., *daily, every day*.

**Cotta**, -ae, mas., *a lieutenant of Caesar*.

**Crassus**, -i, mas., *a son of the Triumvir and a lieutenant in Caesar's army*.

**crēber**, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous, thick*.

**crēdō**, **crēdere**, **crēdidi**, **crēditum**, *believe, trust*.

**Crēs**, **Crētis**, mas., *a Cretan* (an inhabitant of Crete).

**cruciātus**, -ūs, mas., *torture, suffering*.

**cum**, prep. + abl., *with*; conj., *when, while, after, since*; chapt. 29, second sentence, *although*; **cum primum**, *as soon as*.

**cūctus**, -a, -um, adj., *all, all together*.

**cupiō**, **cupere**, -pivī, -pitum, *desire eagerly, be eager*.

**Curiosolitēs**, -um, mas., *a people of the West of Gaul*.

**cursus**, -ūs, mas., *a running, speed*.

**custōdia**, -ae, fem., *protection, guard* (the state of being guarded).



- dē**, prep. + *abl.*, *from, with respect to*; chapt. 7, *about, for*; 32, *from*.
- dēbeō**, -bēre, -bui, -bitum, *owe, ought, must*.
- decem**, indecl. num. adj., *ten*.
- dēcernō**, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, *decree, decide*.
- dēcirtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *contend, fight*.
- decimus**, -a, -um, num. adj., *tenth*.
- dēclivis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *sloping down*.
- decumānus**, -a, -um, adj., *decuman (belonging to the tenth): porta decumāna, the rear gate of the camp, near which the tenth legion was posted*.
- dēcurrō**, -currere, -curri (-curri), -cursum, *run down*.
- dēditicius**, -a, -um, adj., *surrendered*; chapt. 17, as noun, *prisoners*; 32, *subjects*.
- dēditiō**, -ōnis, fem., *surrender*.
- dēdō**, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, *surrender*.
- dēdūcō**, see dūcō, *lead down or away*; chapt. 10, 31, *bring*; 33, *take away*; 35, *place*.
- dēfendō**, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, *defend, protect*.
- dēfēnsiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a defence, a protection*.
- dēfēnsor**, -ōris, mas., *a defender*.
- dēferō**, see ferō, *carry down, report*; chapt. 4, *confer, bestow*.
- dēficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *fail, fall away*; chapt. 14, *revolt*.
- dēiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw down*.
- dēiectus**, -ūs, mas., *a slope, a declivity*.
- deinde**, adv., *then, next*.
- dēleō**, -lēre, -lēvi, -lētum, *destroy*.
- dēligo**, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *choose, select*.
- dēmōnstrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *explain, show, state*.
- dēnique**, adv., *at last, finally*; chapt. 33, *at any rate*.
- dēnsus**, -a, -um, adj., *dense, thick*.
- dēpōnō**, see pōnō, *lay down (aside)*.
- dēpopulor**, -lārī, -lātus sum, depon., *lay waste*.
- dēprecor**, -cārī, -cātus sum, depon., *avert by prayer, beseech, beg*.
- dēsērō**, -serere, -serui, -sertum, *desert, abandon, give up*.
- dēsistō**, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, *stop, desist from, cease*.
- dēspectus**, -ūs, mas., *a view (from above), a prospect*.
- dēspērō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *give up hope*; chapt. 24, *despair of*.
- dēspoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *despoil, strip, deprive*.
- dēsum**, -esse, -fui, *be lacking, be wanting*.
- dēterreō**, -terrēre, -terrui, -territum, *frighten off, prevent*.
- dētrahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -trāctum, *take, snatch (away)*.
- dētrūdō**, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *remove, slip off*.

- dēveniō**, see **veniō**, *come away, come* (from one place to another).
- dexter**, -tra, -trum, adj., *right*.
- diciō**, -ōnis, fem., *control, sway*.
- dīco**, **dīcere**, **dixī**, dictum, *say, mention, speak*.
- diēs**, -ēī, mas. and fem., *a day*.
- difficilis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *difficult*.
- difficultās**, -tātis, fem., *difficulty*.
- diligenter**, adv., *carefully, with care*.
- dīmētiōr**, -mētiri, -mēnsus sum, depon., *measure, measure off*.
- dīmicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *fight, contend* (to a finish).
- dīmittō**, see **mittō**, *let go away, send out, dismiss*.
- dīripiō**, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *plunder, pillage*.
- discēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *depart*.
- discessus**, -ūs, mas., *a departure*.
- dissipō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *scatter, disperse*.
- distineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *keep apart, separate, divide*.
- diū**, adv., *for a long time*; **diūtius**, *longer*.
- dīversus**, -a, -um, adj., *diverse*; chapt. 22, *separated*; 23, *different*; 24, *routed*.
- dīvinus**, -a, -um, adj., *divine*.
- Dīvitiācus**, -ī, mas., a leader of the Aedui, brother of Dumnorix.
- dō**, dare, **dedī**, datum, *give*; **obsidēs inter sē dare**, *exchange hostages*.
- doceō**, -cēre, -cui, doctum, *teach*; chapt. 5, *explain*; 20, *direct*.
- domesticus**, -a, -um, adj., (*of the house*), *domestic, native*.
- domicilium**, -ī, neut., *an abode, a dwelling-place*.
- dominor**, -nāri, -nātus sum, depon., *rule*.
- domus**, -ūs, (-ī), fem., *a home, a house*; locative **domī**, *at home*.
- dubitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *have doubt*; with the infin., *hesitate*; with the subjunc., *doubt*.
- ducentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj., *two hundred*.
- dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, ductum, *lead, conduct*.
- dum**, conj., *while*.
- duo**, -duae, -duo, num. adj., *two*.
- duodecimus**, -a, -um, num. adj., *twelfth*.
- duodēvigintī**, indecl. num. adj., *eighteen*.
- duplex**, gen. **duplicis**, adj. of one termination, *double, two-fold*.
- dux**, **ducis**, mas., *a leader, a guide, a commander*.
- ē**, **ex**, prep. + abl., *from, out of*; chapt. 6, second sent., *after*.
- Eburōnēs**, -um, mas., a Belgic tribe situated between the Meuse and the Rhine.
- ēditus**, -a, -um, adj., *raised, elevated*.
- ēdūcō**, see **dūcō**, *lead out, lead forth*.
- efficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *accomplish, bring (it) about*.

**ēgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum,**  
depon., *go forth, march out.*

**ēgregiē, adv.,** *remarkably, excellently.*

**ēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum,**  
*select, choose.*

**ēmittō, see mittō, let go, hurl.**

**emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, buy.**

**ēnāscor, -nāsci, -nātus sum,**  
depon., *grow out, sprout forth.*

**enim, conj., for.**

**eō, adv., thither, there.**

**eō, ire, ivi (ii), itum, go.**

**eqūes, equitis, mas., a horse-**  
*man, plur., cavalry (consisting*  
*of Roman troops).*

**equester, -tris, -tre, gen., eques-**  
*tris, adj. (of three termina-*  
*tions), of cavalry, cavalry.*

**equitātus -ūs, mas., cavalry.**

**ergō, adv., therefore, then.**

**ēruptiō, -ōnis, fem., a sally, a**  
*sortie.*

**Esvvii, -ōrum, mas., a Gallic**  
*tribe in Normandy.*

**et, conj., and; et . . . et, both . . .**  
*and.*

**etiam, conj., also, even.**

**ēventus, -ūs, mas., result, issue.**

**ex, see ē.**

**exagitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ha-**  
 *rass, persecute.*

**exanimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, make**  
*breathless, exhaust.*

**exaudiō, see audiō, hear dis-**  
*tinctly.*

**excedō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum,**  
*withdraw, retire.*

**excursiō, -ōnis, fem., a sally.**

**excūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, excuse.**

**exeō, -ire, -ivi -ii, -itum, go**  
*out, go forth.*

**exercitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, train,**  
*drill.*

**exercitus, -ūs, mas., an army.**

**exiguitās, -tātis, fem., scanti-**  
*ness; with temporis, want of*  
*time.*

**eximius, -a, -um, adj., excellent,**  
*remarkable.*

**existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,**  
*think, suppose, believe.*

**expeditus, -a, -um, adj., unin-**  
*cumbered, light-armed.*

**expellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum,**  
*drive out.*

**experior, -periri, -pertus sum,**  
depon., *try, risk.*

**explōrator, -tōris, mas., a scout.**

**explorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,**  
*search, find out.*

**expugnō, see pugnō, storm.**

**expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,**  
*await, wait to see (si, whether,*  
*etc.).*

**exstruō, -struere, -struxi, -strūc-**  
*tum, pile up, build up.*

**extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., farthest.**

**facile, adv., easily.**

**facilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two termi-**  
*nations), easy.*

**faciō, facere, feci, factum, make,**  
*do.*

**facultās, -tātis, fem., opportu-**  
*nity; chapt. 1, means.*

**fallō, fallere, fefelli, falsum,**  
*fail, deceive, disappoint.*

**fastigātus, -a, -um, adj., sloping,**  
*inclined.*

**ferāx**, gen., **ferācis**, adj. (of one termination), *fertile*.

**ferō**, adv., *nearly, almost*.

**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, *carry, bear, endure*.

**fertilitās**, -**tātis**, fem., *fertility, productiveness*.

**ferus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj., *wild, fierce*.

**fidēs**, -**eī**, fem., *faith, confidence, protection*.

**filius**, -**i**, mas., *a son*.

**finis**, -**is**, mas., *an end; (plur.) boundaries, territory*.

**finitimus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj., *neighbouring; mas. plur. as noun, neighbours*.

**fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, *be made, happen, become*.

**flūmen**, -**inis**, neut., *a river*.

**fors**, **fortis**, fem., *chance, fate*.

**forte**, old abl. as adv., *by chance*.

**fortis**, -**is**, -**e**, adj. (of two terminations), *brave, courageous*.

**fortiter**, adv., *bravely*.

**fortūna**, -**ae**, fem., *fortune, fate*.

**fossa**, -**ae**, fem., *a ditch, a trench*.

**frāter**, **frātris**, mas., *a brother*.

**fremitus**, -**ūs**, mas., *a noise, an uproar*.

**frōns**, **frontis**, fem., *brow, front; ā fronte, in front*.

**frūmentarius**, -**a**, -**um**, adj., *of grain; rēs frūmentaria*, fem., *supply*.

**frūmentum**, -**i**, neut., *corn, grain*.

**fuga**, -**ae**, fem., *flight*.

**fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgi**, **fugitum**, *flee, fly, escape*.

**fugō**, -**āre**, -**āvi**, -**ātum**, *rout, put to flight*.

**fūmus**, -**i**, mas., *smoke*.

**funditor**, -**tōris**, mas., *a slinger*.

**furor**, -**ōris**, mas., *madness, frenzy*.

**Galba**, -**ae**, mas., *a legatus of Caesar; chapt. 4, 13, King of the Sueiones*.

**galea**, -**ae**, fem., *a helmet (of leather, worn by cavalry)*.

**Gallia**, -**ae**, fem., *Gaul (country occupying all Northern Italy)*.

**Gallus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj., *of Gaul; as noun, a Gaul, the Gauls*.

**gēns**, **gentis**, fem., *a tribe, a class*.

**Germānus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj., *German; plur. as noun, the Germans*.

**gerō**, **gerere**, **gessi**, **gestum**, *carry on, wage (war)*.

**gladius**, -**i**, mas., *a sword*.

**grātia**, -**ae**, fem., *favor, influence, popularity*.

**gravis**, -**is**, -**e**, adj. (of two terminations), *heavy, severe, serious*.

**habeō**, -**bēre**, -**buī**, -**bitum**, *have, hold, possess*.

**hibernācula**, -**ōrum**, neut., *winter-quarters*.

**hibernus**, -**a**, -**um**, adj., *of winter; neut. plur. (with castra), winter-quarters*.

**hīc**, **haec**, **hōc**, demons. pron., *this, he, etc*.

**hiemō**, -**āre**, -**āvi**, -**ātum**, *winter, pass the winter*.

**homō**, **hominis**, mas., *a man*.

**honor**, -**ōris**, mas., *honor, respect*.

- hostis**, -is, mas., *an enemy* (of the state), *the enemy*.
- iaceō**, **iacēre**, **iacuī**, **iacitum**, *lie, lie dead*; chapt. 27, *iacentibus*, (pres. participle), *the slain*.
- iaciō**, **iacere**, **iēcī**, **iactum**, *hurl*; chapt. 12, *throw up*.
- iam**, adv., *now, already*.
- ibi**, adv., *there*.
- Iccius**, -i, mas., *a nobleman of the Remi*.
- idem**, **eadem**, **idem**, demons. pron., *the same*.
- identidem**, adv., *again and again*.
- idōneus**, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, fit*.
- Ignis**, -is, mas., *fire*; chapt. 7, *camp-fire*; 33, *signal-fire*.
- ille**, **illa**, **illud**, demons. pron., *he, that*.
- Illyricum**, -i, neut., *Illyria* (country east of the Adriatic, belonging to Caesar's province).
- impedimentum**, -i, neut., *a hindrance*; plur., *baggage, baggage-train, pack-animals*.
- impediō**, -dire, -dīvi, -dītum, *entangle, hinder*.
- impellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive on, incite, influence*.
- imperātor**, -tōris, mas., *a commander* (in chief), *a general*.
- imperātum**, -i, neut., *a command, an order*.
- imperium**, -i, neut., *command, control, power*.
- imperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *command, require, direct*.
- impetrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *obtain* (a request), *obtain* (anything by a request).
- impetus**, -ūs, mas., *an attack, a charge*; chapt. 6, *fury*.
- imprōvisus**, -a, -um, adj., *unforeseen*; **dē imprōvisō**, *unexpectedly*.
- in**, prep. + acc and abl.; with acc., *into, against, upon* (with verbs of motion); with abl., *in, on, among*; chapt. 32, *in the case of*.
- incendō**, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsum, *burn, set fire to*.
- incidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum, *fall in with, befall, happen*.
- incidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *notch, cut into*.
- incipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *begin*.
- incitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *urge on*; **incitātō cursū**, *at full speed*.
- incolō**, -colere, -colui, (no supine), *inhabit, live*.
- incrēdibilis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *incredible, marvellous*.
- increpitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *taunt, upbraid*.
- incūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *blame, chide*.
- inde**, adv., *thence, after that, then*.
- indignitās**, -tātis, fem., *disgrace, outrage*.
- indiligenter**, adv., *carelessly, negligently*.
- indūcō**, see **dūcō**, *draw on, cover*.
- induō**, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, *put on*.

- ineō, -ire, -ivi (-it), -itum**, *enter upon, undertake, begin.*
- inermis, -is, -e**, adj. (of two terminations), *unarmed.*
- inferior, -ior, -ius**, adj. (comparative—two terminations), *lower*; chapt. 8, *inferior.*
- inferō, -ferre, -tuli, illātum**, *bring in*; chapt. 14, *bring upon*; 15, *import*; 25, (signa) *inferre, carry forward*; 25, (spō) *illātā, inspire in*; 29, *wage*; 32, *inflict.*
- infimus, -a, -um**, adj., *lowest*; chapt. 18, *at the bottom.*
- inflectō, -flectere, -flēxi, -flexum**, *bend down.*
- ingredior, -gredi, -gressus sum**, *depon., enter, march in.*
- inimicus, -a, -um**, adj., *unfriendly*; as noun, *an enemy (personal).*
- iniquitās, -tātis**, fem., *unevenness, inequality.*
- iniquus, -a, -um**, adj., *unfavourable, unfair.*
- initium, -i**, neut., *a beginning.*
- iniūria, -ae**, fem., *injustice, wrong.*
- innitor, -niti, -nisus (-nixus) sum**, *depon., lean upon.*
- insequor**, see *sequor*, *depon., pursue, follow up.*
- insidia, -arum**, fem., *an ambush, a trap.*
- insigne, -is**, neut., *a badge, a decoration.*
- insistō, -sistere, -stiti**, (no supine), *stand upon.*
- instar**, neut. indeclin. (*an image*); *like, in the manner of (with gen.).*
- instō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum**, *press forward, press on.*
- instruō, -struere, -struxi, -structum**, *draw up (of troops)*; chapt. 30, *build.*
- intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum**, *know, learn.*
- inter, prep. + acc.**, *between, among.*
- intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum**, *go between, move between.*
- intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum**, *intercept (obstruct in motion).*
- interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum**, *cut off, shut off.*
- intereā, adv.**, *meanwhile, in the mean time.*
- interficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum**, *kill, put to death.*
- intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum**, *throw in (between)*; chapt. 17, *place among*; 22, *intervene.*
- interim, adv.**, *meanwhile.*
- interior, -ior, -ius**, adj. (comparative—two terminations), *interior, inner.*
- intermittō**, see *mittō*, *cease, discontinue.*
- interneciō, -ōnis**, fem., *extermination, annihilation.*
- interscindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum**, *cut down, demolish.*
- intersum**, see *sum*, *be between*; *impers., it concerns (with gen.).*
- intervallum, -i**, neut., *distance (between two things).*

- intexō, -texere, -texui, -textum,** *weave together.*  
**intrā, prep. + acc.,** *within.*  
**intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** *enter, penetrate.*  
**intrōdūcō,** see **dūcō,** *lead in, bring in.*  
**intrōmittō,** see **mittō,** *let go in, send in.*  
**intrōrsus, adv.,** *within, inside.*  
**inūsītātus, -a, -um, adj.,** *unusual, unwonted.*  
**inūtilis, -is, -e, adj.** (of two terminations), *useless*; *chapt. 16, incapable.*  
**inveniō,** see **veniō,** *come upon, find, learn.*  
**inveterāscō, -rāscere, -rāvi,** (no supine), *grow old in, gain a firm footing.*  
**invidēō,** see **vidēō,** *envy* (with *dat*), *be jealous of.*  
**ipse, -a, -um,** *intensive pron., he, self.*  
**irrideō, -ridēre, -risi, -risum,** *laugh at, taunt.*  
**is, ea, id,** *demons. or personal pron., he, that.*  
**ita, adv.,** *thus, so*; *chapt. 1, ita uti, as, just as.*  
**Italia, -ae, fem.,** *Italy.*  
**itaque, adv.,** *therefore.*  
**item, adv.,** *likewise.*  
**iter, itineris, neut.,** *a road, a march*; **iter facere,** *to march.*  
**iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussum,** *order, bid, command.*  
**iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** *judge, think, decide.*  
**iugum, -i, neut.,** *a yoke; a ridge* (of a row or chain of hills).  
**iūs, iūris, neut.,** *right, justice, law.*  
**iūstitia, -ae, fem.,** *justice, fair dealing.*  
**iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum,** *aid, help, assist.*  
**iūxtā, adv.,** *near by, next.*  
**L,** *initial letter of Lūcius.*  
**Labiēnus, -i, mas.,** *a legatus of Caesar in Gaul.*  
**lapis, lapidis, mas.,** *a stone.*  
**lassitūdō, -dinis, fem.,** *fatigue.*  
**lateō, -tēre, -tui,** (no supine), *lie concealed, be concealed.*  
**lātītūdō, -dinis, fem.,** *width, breadth.*  
**lātus, -a, -um, adj.,** *broad, wide.*  
**latus, -eris, neut.,** *the side*; **ab latere,** *on the flank.*  
**laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,** *open out, widen, extend.*  
**lēgātīō, -ōnis, fem.,** *an embassy, a legation.*  
**lēgātus, -i, mas.,** *an ambassador, an envoy, a lieutenant.*  
**legiō, -ōnis, fem.,** *a legion.*  
**legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj.,** *legionary, of a legion.*  
**lēniter, adv.,** *gently.*  
**levis, -is, -e, adj.** (of two terminations), *light.*  
**levitās, -tātis, fem.,** *lightness, fickleness, inconstancy.*  
**lēx, lēgis, fem.,** *a law, a statute.*  
**liberālīter, adv.,** *kindly, generously.*  
**liberi, -ōrum, mas.,** *children* (of free parents).

- littera**, -ae, fem., *a letter* (of the alphabet); plur., *letters, letter* (an epistle).
- locus**, -i, mas., *a place*; neut. plur., *loca*, -ōrum; chapt. 26, *condition*.
- longē**, adv., *far, at a distance*.
- longus**, -a, -um, adj., *long*.
- loquor**, loqui, locūtus sum, depon., *speak, talk*.
- Lūcius**, -i, mas., *a Roman praenomen* (the first name).
- lūx**, lūcis, fem., *light*; **primā lūce**, *at early dawn, at day-break*.
- lūxuria**, -ae, fem., *luxury*.
- māchinātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a machine, an engine, a contrivance*.
- magis**, adv., *more, rather*; **magis . . . quam**, *rather . . . than*.
- magistrātus**, -ūs, mas., *a magistracy, a magistrate*.
- māgnitūdō**, -dinis, fem., *greatness, size*.
- māgnopere**, adv., *very much, very earnestly*; **māgnō opere** (see opus).
- māgnus**, -a, -um, adj., *great, large*.
- māior**, māior, māius, adj., *greater*; **māiōrēs** (nātū), *elders*.
- maleficium**, -i, neut., *harm, mischief*.
- mālō**, mälle, mālui, (no supine), *prefer, wish rather*.
- mandō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *direct, instruct*; chapt. 24, *consign*.
- manipulus**, -i, mas., *a company* (a third of a cohort), *a manipule*.
- mānsuētūdō**, -dinis, fem., *kindness, gentleness*.
- manus**, -ūs, fem., *the hand*; *a band, a company*.
- maritimus**, -a, -um, adj., *maritime, of the sea*.
- mātūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *hasten, make haste*.
- māximē**, adv., *especially, very*.
- medius**, -a, -um, adj., *middle of*.
- memoria**, -ae, fem., *memory, recollection*.
- Mēnapii**, -ōrum, mas., *a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt*.
- mercātor**, -tōris, mas., *a trader* (who carries his own goods abroad).
- meritum**, -i, neut., *merit, desert*.
- miles**, -itis, mas., *a soldier*.
- militāris**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *of the soldiers, military*; see rēs.
- mille**, indecl. num. adj., *a thousand*; plur. as noun, **milia**, **millium**.
- minimē**, adv., *least, very little*.
- minus**, neuter acc. of the comparative minor, used as an adv., *less*; chapt. 9, *not*.
- miser**, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, miserable*.
- miser cordia**, -ae, fem., *pity, clemency, compassion*.
- mittō**, mittere, mīsi, mīssum, *send, despatch*.
- mōbilitās**, -tātis, fem., *inconstancy, mobility*.
- modo**, adv., *merely, only*; **nōn modo**, *not only*.



- modus**, -i, mas., *manner*; **ad hunc modum**, *after this fashion*.
- moenia**, -ium, neut., *fortifications, walls* (of a city).
- molestē** adv., *heavily*; **molestē ferre**, *be vexed or annoyed*.
- moneō**, **monēre**, **monui**, **monitum**, *direct, advise, warn*.
- mōns**, **montis**, mas., *a mountain*.
- mora**, -ae, fem., *delay*.
- Morini**, -ōrum, mas., *a Belgic tribe on the seacoast opposite Kent*.
- moror**, -rārī, -rātus sum, depon., *delay, linger, stay*.
- mōs**, **mōris**, mas., *custom*; plur., *habits, character*.
- moveō**, **movēre**, **mōvi**, **mōtum**, *move*; **castra movēre**, *break camp*.
- mulier**, -eris, fem., *a woman*.
- multitūdō**, -dinis, fem., *a multitude, a great number*.
- multus**, -a, -um, adj., *much, many*.
- mūnimentum**, -i, neut., *a defence, a fortification*.
- mūniō**, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *fortify*; with **castra**, *make*.
- mūnitio**, -ōnis, fem., *a fortification, works*.
- mūrus**, -i, mas., *a wall* (a city wall).
- nam**, conj., *for*.
- nāscor**, **nāscī**, **nātus sum**, depon., *be born, spring up*.
- nātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a nation, a tribe*.
- nātūra**, -ae, fem., *nature, character*.
- nātus**, -ūs, mas., *birth*; **māiōrēs** (nātū), *elders, old men*.
- nāvō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *do with zeal*; **operam nāvāre**, *do one's best*.
- nō**, conj., *that . . . not*; with verbs of fearing, *that, lest*; with the imperative, *not* (negative adv.).
- necessārius**, -a, -um, adj., *necessary, urgent*.
- necessitās**, -tātis, fem., *necessity*; chapt. 11, *compulsion*; 22, *urgency*.
- negōtium**, -i, neut., *business*; chapt. 17, *trouble*; **negōtium dare**, *employ*.
- nēmō**, **nēminis**, mas. and fem., *no one*.
- neque** (nec), adv., *and not*; **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*.
- nēquiquam**, adv., *in vain*.
- Nervius**, -a, -um, adj., *Nervian*; plur., *the Nervii*, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.
- neuter**, -tra, -trum, gen. **neutrius**, adj., *neither*; plur. mas., as a noun, *neither party*.
- nēve** (neu), conj., *and . . . not* (continuing a negative); chapt. 21, *and that . . . not*.
- nihil**, indecl. neut., *nothing*; acc. as adv., *not at all*.
- nisi**, conj., *unless, if not, except*.
- nōbilitās**, -tātis, fem., *nobility*; concretely, *the nobles*.
- noctū**, abl. used adverbially, *by night*.

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, (no supine), *be unwilling, not wish.*

**nōmen, -minis**, neut., *a name.*

**nōminātim**, adv., *by name* (individually).

**nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *name, mention, call by name.*

**nōn**, adv., *not*; **nōn modo**, *not only.*

**nōndum**, adv., *not yet.*

**nōnnūllus, -a, -um**, adj., *some*; plur., *as a noun, some persons.*

**nōnus, -a, -um**, num. adj., *ninth.*

**nōs**, pers. pron. of the first pers. (plur. of ego), *we.*

**noster, -tra, -trum**, poss. adj. pron., *our*; plur., **nostrī**, *our men* (as a noun).

**novem**, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*

**Noviodūnum, -ī**, neut., *a town of the Suessiones on the Aisne.*  
**novus, -a, -um**, adj., *new*; chapt. 31, *strange, novel.*

**novissimus, -a, -um** (superl. of **novus**), *the last, latest*; with **agmen**, *the rear*; plur. mas. *as a noun, novissimī, men or soldiers in the rear.*

**nox, noctis**, fem., *night.*

**nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *strip, lay bare*; chapt. 23, *expose, leave unguarded.*

**nūllus, -a, -um**, gen. **nūllius**, adj., *not any, no*; *as a noun, no one.*

**numerus, -ī**, mas., *a number.*

**Numida, -ae**, mas., *a Numidian* (employed in the Roman army as cavalry).

**nunc**, adv., *now.*

**nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *announce, report, send news.*

**nūntius, -ī**, mas., *message, messenger, news.*

**ob**, prep. + acc., *on account of.*

**obdūcō**, see **dūcō**, *lead against*; with **fossam**, *dig, construct.*

**obitus, -ūs**, mas., *a going to* (death), *destruction, death.*

**obses, -idis**, mas. and fem., *hostage* (one under guard).

**obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum**, *hold, occupy, possess.*

**obveniō**, see **veniō** (with dat.), *encounter, fall in with, meet.*

**occāsus, -ūs**, mas., *a falling, a setting* (of the sun).

**occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum**, *slay, kill.*

**occultus, -a, -um**, adj., *concealed*; *in occultō, in secret.*

**occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *seize, occupy* (in a military sense); chapt. 19, *be engaged.*

**occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum** (with dat.), *meet, come upon, fall in with.*

**Oceanus, -ī**, mas., *the ocean.*

**octāvus, -a, -um**, num. adj., *eighth.*

**octō**, indecl. num. adj., *eight.*

**offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum**, *bring before, offer, carry, bring.*

**omittō**, see **mittō**, *let go by, neglect* (with **cōnsilium**).

**omnis, -is, -e**, adj. (of two terminations), *all, the whole of.*

**onus, -eris**, neut., *a burden, a load.*

- opera**, -ae, fem., *pains, service*;  
**operam nāvāre**, *do one's best*.  
**opiniō**, -ōnis, fem., *notion*;  
 chapt. 3, *expectation*; 8, 24,  
*reputation*; 35, *impression*.  
**oportet**, **oportēre**, **oportuit**,  
 impers., *it behooves, it ought*.  
**oppidānus**, -a, -um, adj., *of the*  
*town*; plur. mas. as a noun, *the*  
*townsmen*.  
**oppidum**, -i, neut., *a town*  
*(usually fortified)*.  
**opportūnus**, -a, -um, adj., *con-*  
*venient, opportune, suitable*.  
**oppūgnātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a siege,*  
*an attack (in a formal manner*  
*against a fortified place)*.  
**oppūgnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *at-*  
*tack (a defended position)*.  
**(ops)**, **opis**, fem., *help*; chapt.  
 14, *resources*; 31, *aid*.  
**optimus**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of  
**bonus**), *best*.  
**opus**, -eris, neut., *work*; **māgnō**  
**opere** (**māgnopere**), *very much*;  
**quantō opere** (**quantopere**),  
*how greatly*.  
**opus**, indecl. neut., *need*; **opus**  
**est**, *there is need*.  
**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a speech, a*  
*talk, an address*.  
**ōrdō**, **dinis**, mas., *a row, an order,*  
*a company, a rank (of soldiers)*.  
**orior**, **oriri**, **ortus sum**, depon.,  
*arise*; chapt. 4, *be descended*  
*from*.  
**Osismī**, -ōrum, mas., *a Gallic*  
*tribe in Brittany*.  
**P.**, initial letter of **Pūblius**.  
**pābulum**, -i, neut., *fodder (for*  
*animals)*.  
**pācō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *subdue,*  
*pacify*.  
**Paemānī**, -ōrum, mas., *a tribe of*  
*the Belgians*.  
**paene**, adv., *almost, nearly*.  
**palūs**, -ūdis, fem., *a swamp, a*  
*marsh*.  
**pandō**, **pandere**, **pandi**, **passum**,  
*spread out*; perf. particip.,  
**passus**, *outstretched (as an*  
*adj.)*.  
**pār**, **paris**, adj. (of one termina-  
 tion), *equal*.  
**parātus**, -a, -um, adj., *prepared,*  
*ready*.  
**pars**, **partis**, fem., *part, side*;  
 less exactly, *direction*.  
**partim**, acc. as adv., *partly, in*  
*part*.  
**parvulus**, -a, -um, adj., *slight,*  
*small, unimportant*.  
**passus**, -a, -um, see **pandō**.  
**passus**, -ūs, mas., *a pace (five*  
*Roman feet)*; **mīlia passuum**,  
*a mile*.  
**patefaciō**, see **faciō**, *open, lay*  
*open*.  
**pateō**, -tēre, -tui, (no supine),  
*extend, be open, spread*.  
**pater**, **patris**, mas., *a father*;  
 plur., *ancestors*.  
**patior**, **pati**, **passus sum**, depon.,  
*endure, permit*; chapt. 15,  
*allow*; 31, *suffer*.  
**patrius**, -a, -um, adj., *ancestral,*  
*of one's fathers*.  
**paucus**, -a, -um, adj. (mostly in  
 the plur.), *few; a few*.

- paulātim**, adv., *gradually, little by little.*  
**paulisper**, adv., *a short while.*  
**paulō**, abl. as adv., (by) *a little, just a little.*  
**paululum**, adv., *slightly, a very little.*  
**paulum**, adv., *a little, somewhat.*  
**pāx**, **pācis**, fem., *peace.*  
**pedes**, -itis, mas., *a footman;* plur. collectively, *the infantry.*  
**pedester**, -tris, -tre, adj. (of three terminations), *of infantry, infantry.*  
**Pedius**, -I, mas., *a nephew and legatus of Caesar.*  
**pellis**, -is, fem., *a skin, a hide (of an animal).*  
**pellō**, **pellere**, **pepuli**, **pulsum**, *drive, defeat, rout.*  
**per**, prep. + acc., *through, by means of;* chapt. 10, *over.*  
**perferō**, see **ferō**, *carry through;* chapt. 14, *endure;* 35, *spread among.*  
**periclitōr**, -tārī, -tātus sum, depon., *test, try, make a trial.*  
**periculum**, -ī, neut., *a trial, an attempt;* hence, *danger, peril.*  
**permittō**, see **mittō**, *give up (over), entrust.*  
**permovēō**, see **movēō**, *alarm, (move thoroughly).*  
**perspiciō**, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, *see through, learn, find, see.*  
**persuādēō**, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, *persuade (with dat.), induce.*  
**perterreō**, -terrēre, -terrui, -territum, *terrify, frighten greatly.*  
**pertineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, (no supine), *extend, reach (out), tend.*  
**perturbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *throw into disorder, alarm.*  
**perveniō**, see **veniō**, *reach, arrive at.*  
**pēs**, **pedis**, mas., *a foot.*  
**petō**, **petere**, **petivi** or **petiī**, **petitum**, *seek, ask for, beg.*  
**pilum**, -I, neut., *a javelin.*  
**plānitīēs**, -ēī, fem., *a plain.*  
**plērumque**, acc. sing. neut. as adv., *generally, usually.*  
**plērusque**, -aque, -umque, adj. (only in the plur.), *most of, very many.*  
**plūrimus**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of **multus**), *most;* acc. sing. neut. as adv. (**plūrimum**), *most, very much;* **plūrimum valēre**, *have very great influence;* **plūrimum posse**, *be very powerful.*  
**polliceor**, -licēri, -licitus sum, depon., *promise, offer.*  
**pondus**, -eris, neut., *weight.*  
**pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posui**, **positum**, *place, put, pitch.*  
**pōns**, **pontis**, mas., *a bridge.*  
**populor**, -lārī, -lātus sum, depon., *lay waste, plunder.*  
**populus**, -I, mas., *a people.*  
**porrēctus**, -a, -um, adj., *stretch-ed forth, extensive, long.*  
**porta**, -ae, fem., *a gate.*  
**portō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry, bring.*

- poscō, poscere, poposci**, (no supine), *demand, claim.*
- possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sesum**, *possess, occupy* (in a military sense).
- possum, posse, potui, can, be able; plūrimum posse, be very powerful.**
- post, prep. + acc., after, behind.**
- postea, adv., afterwards.**
- postquam, adverbial conj., after, after that, when.**
- postrēmō, adv., finally, lastly, at last.**
- postridiē, adv., the next day.**
- postridiē, adv., the next day; postridiē eius diēi, adv. phrase, the next day after that.**
- postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand, claim, ask.**
- potēns, potentis, adj. (of one termination), powerful, mighty.**
- potestās, -tātis, fem., power, control; chapt. 6, ability.**
- potior, potiri, potitus sum, depon., capture (with abl.), get control of.**
- potius, adv., rather; potius . . . quam, rather . . . than.**
- prae, prep. + abl., in comparison with.**
- praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., sharpened (to a point), pointed.**
- praebeō, -bēre, -bui, -bitum, furnish, offer.**
- praeceps, -cipitis, adj. (of one termination), headlong, in haste.**
- praedor, -dārī, -dātus sum, depon., plunder, raid, take booty.**
- praefectus, -ī, mas., a general, an officer, a commander.**
- praeferō, see ferō, place before; with sē, outdo (show one's self better than).**
- praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, place in command of.**
- praemittō, see mittō, send forward, send ahead.**
- praescribō, see scribō, give directions, order, direct.**
- praesertim, adv., especially.**
- praesidium, -ī, neut., defence, guard, protection.**
- praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, stand before; chapt. 15, excel; 27, display; 31, impers., it is better.**
- praesum, see sum, be in command of (with the dat.).**
- praeterea, adv., besides, furthermore.**
- premō, premere, pressī, pressum, press hard, attack fiercely.**
- primipilus, -ī, mas., the chief or first centurion.**
- primō, adv., at first.**
- primum, adv., first, in the first place; cum primum, as soon as.**
- primus, -a, -um, adj., first; plur. mas., primī, the foremost men, the chief or leading men.**
- princeps, -ipis, mas. (adj. of one termination used as a noun), chief man, chief, leader.**
- prior, -ior, -ius, adj. (comparative—two terminations), former; plur. mas. as a noun, priōrēs, men (soldiers) in front.**

- prīstinus**, -a, -um, adj., *former, old, old time.*
- prīusquam**, conj., adv., *before*;  
**prīus** and **quam** are often separated by intervening words.
- prō**, prep. + *abl.*, *in front of*;  
 chapt. 14, *in behalf of*; 25, *in proportion to*; 31, *according to*.
- prōcēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *go forward, advance, proceed.*
- procul**, adv., *afar off, at a distance.*
- prōcumbō**, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *lean forward, fall, sink down (to the ground).*
- proelior**, -ārī, -ātus sum, depon., *fight (in war).*
- proelium**, -ī, neut., *a battle, contest, engagement.*
- profectiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a departure, a setting out.*
- proficiscor**, **proficiāscī**, **profectus sum**, depon., *set out, go.*
- prōfligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *rout, put to flight, defeat.*
- profugiō**, see **fugiō**, *flee, escape.*
- prōgnātus**, -a, -um, adj., *descended from, sprung from.*
- prōgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., *advance, march forward, go forward.*
- prohibeō**, -hibere, -hibui, -hibitum, *prevent, cut off, keep from.*
- prōiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw away, abandon, give up.*
- prōmoveō**, see **moveō**, *move forward, push forward.*
- prope**, adv., *almost, nearly.*
- properō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *hasten.*
- propīnquitās**, -tātis, fem., *nearness, relation (by blood), kinship.*
- propīnuus**, -a, -um, adj., *near, close, related (by blood).*
- prōpōnō**, see **pōnō**, *place before*;  
 chapt. 2, *display, raise.*
- propter**, prep. + *acc.*, *on account of.*
- propterea**, adv., *on this account*;  
 with **quod**, *because.*
- prōpūgnō**, see **pūgnō**, *fight (rush out fighting), fight in defence.*
- prōsequor**, see **sequor**, *pursue*;  
 chapt. 5, *address.*
- prōspectus**, -ūs, mas., *view, outlook.*
- prōtinus**, adv., *immediately, instantly.*
- prōturbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *rout, drive off (in confusion).*
- prōvideō**, see **videō**, *foresee, provide, arrange beforehand.*
- prōvincia**, -ae, fem., *a province (governed by a Roman magistrate).*
- prōvolō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *fly (rush) forth, hurry forward.*
- proximē**, adv., *recently, last, lately.*
- proximus**, -a, -um, adj., *next, nearest (last).*
- prūdētia**, -ae, fem., *discretion, wisdom, foresight.*
- pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj., *public*;  
**rēs pūblica**, fem., *the state.*
- Pūblius**, -ī, mas., *a Roman praenomen (the first name).*
- puer**, **puerī**, mas., *boy*; plur., *children.*

**pūgna**, -ae, fem., *a fight, a battle*.  
**pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight, engage, contend*.

**Q**, initial letter of **Quīntus**.

**quā**, adv., *where* (chapt. 33).

**qua**, indefinite pron., see **quis**.

**quadringentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj., *four hundred*.

**quaerō**, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum**, *ask, inquire*.

**quam**, adv., *than, as* (after comparatives and comparative expressions); chapt. 32, 2d sent., and chapt. 33, indef. pron., *any*.

**quamvis**, indef. pron. from **quīvis**, **quaevis**, etc. (which see); chapt. 31, *any you please*.

**quantopere**, adv., *how greatly, how very much*; see **opus**.

**quantus**, -a, -um, adj., *how great?, how much (many)?*

**quartus**, -a, -um, num. adj., *fourth*.

**quattuor**, indecl. num. adj., *four*.

**que**, enclitic conj., *and* (always appended to the word or to some part of the phrase or sentence which it connects).

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who, which, what, that*.

**quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**, indef. pron., *a certain, certain*.

**quidem**, adv., *indeed, certainly*; **nē . . . quidem**, *not . . . even* (emphasizing the word placed between them).

**quīn**, conj., *but that, that, from* (after negative verbs of preventing, hindering, doubting, etc.).

**quīnam**, **quaenam**, **quodnam**, interrog. pron., *who?, what?*

**quīndecim**, indecl. num. adj., *fifteen*.

**quīngentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five hundred*.

**quīnquāgintā**, indecl. num. adj., *fifty*.

**quīnque**, indecl. num. adj., *five*.

**Quīntus**, -ī, mas., a Roman praenomen (the first name).

**quis**, **quae**, **quid**, interrog. pron., *who?, which?, what?*; indef. pron., *any, any one, anything* (after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, num).

**quisquam**, (no fem.), **quidquam** (**quicquam**), indef. pron., *any one, anything* (in negative clauses).

**quisque**, **quaeque**, **quidque**, indef. pron., *each, each one*.

**quisquis**, **quaequae**, **quicquid** (**quidquid**), indef. pron., *whoever, whatever*.

**quīvis**, **quaevis**, **quidvis**, indef. pron., *who you please, any one*.

**quō**, adv., *whither, where*; chapt. 25, = **ut eō**, *so that thereby, (so that by it)*.

**quod**, conj., *because*; chapt. 17, *the fact that*.

**quoque**, conj., *also* (emphasizing the word which it follows).

**rām**us, -ī, mas., *a branch, a bough*.  
**ratiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a reckoning, a plan, a reason*.

**recipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *take back, receive*; **sē recipere**,

- betake one's self*; chapt. 12, *sē recipere, recover.*
- reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum, give back, render.**
- redeō, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum, go back, return**; less exactly, *decline (slope).*
- redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, reduce**; chapt. 27, *render.*
- redintegrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, renew, restore.**
- Redonēs, -um, mas., a Gallic people in Brittany.**
- redūcō, see dūcō, lead back, bring back.**
- referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, bring back, report, announce.**
- refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, break in, break open.**
- regiō, -ōnis, fem., a region, a district, a part (of the country).**
- regō, regere, rēxi, rēctum, to rule, have control of.**
- rēgnum, -ī, neut., kingdom, power**; plur., *sovereignty.*
- rēicio, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, drive back, hurl back, drive off.**
- relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, (no supine), be weakened, languish away.**
- relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -littum, leave behind, leave.**
- reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remaining, the rest of**; as a noun (usually plur.), *the rest.*
- Rēmī, -ōrum, a leading tribe of the Belgae.**
- remitto, see mittō, send or hurl back**; chapt. 15, *relax, give up.*
- Rēmūs, -ī, mas., one of the Remi.**
- renūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, bring back word, report, announce.**
- repellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsum, drive back, repulse.**
- repentinus, -a, -um, adj., sudden**; abl. **repentinō (as adv.), suddenly.**
- reperiō, -perire, repperī or reperi, repertum, find out, ascertain, find.**
- rēs, rei, fem., a thing, a fact**; **rēs frūmentāria, a grain supply**; **rēs pūblica, the state.**
- resistō, sistere, -stitī, (nosupine), resist (with dat.), withstand.**
- respiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectum, look back, look behind one.**
- respondeō, -spondere, -spondī, -spōnsum, answer, reply.**
- retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, hold back, restrain**; chapt. 21, with *memoriam, preserve.*
- revertor, -vertī, -versus sum, depon., go back, return**; active forms in the perfect system, **revertī, reverteram, etc.**
- revocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call back, call away, recall.**
- rēx, rēgis, mas., a king.**
- Rhēnus, -ī, mas., the Rhine.**
- ripa, -ae, fem., a bank, a river-bank.**
- rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, ask, ask for.**
- Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman**; as a noun, *a Roman.*
- rubus, -ī, mas., a bramble-bush, a bramble.**
- rūmor, -ōris, mas., a report, a rumour.**
- rūpēs, -is, fem., a cliff, a rock.**



**rûrsus**, adv., *again, in turn, back again.*

**rûs, rûris**, neut., *country; locative, rûri, in the country.*

**Sabinus, -i**, mas., a lieutenant of Caesar.

**Sabis, -is**, mas., (now) *the Sambre*, a river in Gaul flowing into the Meuse.

**saepēs, -is**, fem., *a hedge.*

**sagittârius, -i**, mas., *a bowman, an archer.*

**salûs, -ûtis**, fem., *safety, welfare.*

**sarcina, -ae**, fem., *a package, a pack; plur., baggage* (the load carried on the back of each soldier).

**saxum, -i**, neut., *a rock.*

**scientia, -ae**, fem., *skill, knowledge.*

**scribō, scribere, scripsî, scriptum**, *write; chapt. 29, give an account* (in writing).

**scûtum, -i**, neut., *a shield* (of the Roman legion) made of wood, covered with leather, convex and oblong (2½ by 4 ft.).

**sectiō, -ōnis**, fem., *a cutting; hence, from dividing in lots, booty.*

**secundum**, prep. + acc., *along; chapt. 18, next to.*

**secundus, -a, -um**, num. adj., *second; chapt. 9, favourable.*

**sed**, conj., *but.*

**senâtor, -tōris**, mas., (*an elder*), *a senator.*

**senâtus, -ûs**, mas., *a senate*

(council of old men), especially the Roman senate.

**Senonēs, -um, mas.**, a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Seine.

**sententia, -ae**, fem., *an opinion, a view.*

**sentis, -is**, mas., *a briar, a thorn-bush* (mostly plur.).

**septimus, -a, -um**, num. adj., *seventh.*

**Sequanus, -a, -um**, adj., *of the Sequani; mas. plur., the Sequani*, a Gallic tribe on the Rhone.

**sequor, sequi, secûtus sum**, depon., *follow; chapt. 22, with eventus, ensue.*

**servitûs, -tûtis**, fem., *slavery, subjection.*

**servō, -âre, -âvi, -âtum**, *watch; chapt. 33, with praesidia, maintain.*

**sēsē**, see sul.

**sex**, indecl. num. adj., *six.*

**sexâgintâ**, indecl. num. adj., *sixty.*

**sexcenti, -ae, -a**, num. adj., *six hundred.*

**sî**, conj., *if; chapt. 9, whether.*

**sic**, adv., *so, thus, as follows.*

**signifer, -feri**, mas., *a standard-bearer.*

**significâtiō, -ōnis**, fem., *signal, warning.*

**significō, -âre, -âvi, -âtum**, *show, indicate, announce.*

**signum, -i**, neut., *sign, standard; signa convertere, face about; signa inferre, advance (to the attack).*

- silva**, -ae, fem., *a forest, woods.*  
**silvester** (-tris), -tris, -tre, adj. (of three terminations), *woody, wooded.*  
**simul**, adv., *at the same time.*  
**sine**, prep. + abl., *without.*  
**singulāris**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *remarkable, unique.*  
**singulī**, -ae, -a, adj., *single, several, each, one at a time.*  
**sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj., *left.*  
**sōl**, sōlis, mas., *the sun.*  
**sollicitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *incite, stir up, instigate.*  
**sōlum**, acc. neut. as adv., *only; nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.*  
**sōlus**, -a, -um, adj., gen. sōlius, *only, alone.*  
**spatium**, -ī, neut., *space, distance; less exactly, time.*  
**speciēs**, -iēi, fem., *an appearance, a sight, a show.*  
**speculātor**, -tōris, mas., *a spy, a scout.*  
**spēs**, spei, fem., *hope, expectation.*  
**spiritus**, -ūs, mas., *breath; plur., pride, arrogance.*  
**statim**, adv., *at once, immediately.*  
**statiō**, -ōnis, mas., *a post, a picket; in statiōne, on guard.*  
**statuō**, -tuere, -tui, -tūtum, *decide, determine.*  
**statūra**, -ae, fem., *stature, height, size.*  
**strepitus**, -ūs, mas., *noise, din.*  
**studeō**, -dēre, -duī, (no supine), (with dat.), *desire; chapt. 17, pay attention to.*  
**studium**, -ī, neut., *eagerness, desire, fondness (for a thing).*  
**sub**, prep. + abl. and acc., *under; chapt. 13, 33, towards, near to.*  
**subeō**, see eō, *undergo, approach, enter.*  
**subitō**, adv., *suddenly, hastily.*  
**submittō**, see mittō, *send up, send, despatch (with dat.).*  
**subruō**, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, *undermine, dig under.*  
**subsequor**, see sequor, *follow up, pursue, follow on.*  
**subsidium**, -ī, neut., *relief, assistance, help.*  
**succēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *come up, approach, draw near.*  
**successus**, -ūs, mas., *a coming up, an advance, a close approach.*  
**Suessiōnēs**, -um, mas., *a tribe of the Belgae between the Marne and the Isère.*  
**sui**, sibi, sē (sēsē), reflex. pron., *himself, themselves, etc.*  
**sum**, esse, fui, be, am.  
**summa**, -ae, fem., *the sum, the total; chapt. 4, control; chapt. 23, with imperii, chief command.*  
**summus**, -a, -um, adj., *highest, top of.*  
**sūmō**, sūmere, sūmpsi, sūptum, *take, assume, claim.*  
**superior**, -ior, -ius, adj. (comparative — two terminations), *higher, former, preceding.*  
**superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *overcome, defeat, conquer.*

- supersedeō**, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sesum, *refrain from*.
- supersum**, see **sum**, *survive, remain*.
- supplex**, -plicis, adj. (of one termination), *humble*; used as a noun, mas. and fem., *a suppliant*.
- supplicātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a thanksgiving* (a supplication).
- suprā**, adv., *above, before*.
- sustentō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hold out*.
- sustineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *withstand*; chapt. 6, with **sēsē**, *hold out*; chapt. 25, with **sē**, *stand up*.
- suus**, -a, -um, possess. adj. pron., *his (own), their (own), (reflex.)*.
- T.**, initial letter of **Titus**.
- tam**, adv., *so*.
- tamen**, adv., *however, nevertheless, still*.
- tantulus**, -a, -um, adj., *so small, so little*.
- tantus**, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so much*.
- tardō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *check, retard*.
- tardus**, -a, -um, adj., *slow, sluggish*; chapt. 25, *exhausted*.
- tegimentum**, -ī, neut., *a covering, a cover*.
- tēlum**, -ī, neut., *a weapon, a missile, a javelin*.
- tempus**, -oris, neut., *time*; chapt. 22, *occasion*; **ūnō tempore**, *at one and the same time*; **eōdem tempore**, *at the same time*.
- tendō**, **tendere**, **tetendī**, **tēnsum** and **tentum**, *extend, stretch out*.
- teneō**, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, **tentum**, *hold, keep*.
- tener**, -era, -erum, adj., *tender, young, delicate*.
- terror**, -ōris, mas., *fright, terror, alarm*.
- tertius**, -a, -um, num. adj., *third*.
- testūdō**, -dinis, fem., *testudo* (a covering of shields).
- Teutonī**, -ōrum, (-ēs, -um), mas., *a German people in Jutland, defeated by Marius in B.C. 102*.
- timeō**, **timēre**, **timuī**, (no supine), *fear, be afraid*.
- Titūrius**, -ī, mas., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*; see **Sabinus**.
- Titus**, -ī, mas., *a Roman praenomen (the first name)*.
- tormentum**, -ī, neut., *an engine of war* (for throwing missiles).
- totidem**, indecl. adj., *just as many, as many*.
- tōtus**, -a, -um, gen. **tōtius**, adj., *entire, the whole of*.
- trabs**, **trabis**, fem., *a timber, a beam*; (nom. sing. sometimes, **trabēs**).
- trādō**, **trādere**, **trādidī**, **trāditum**, *hand over, give up*.
- trādūcō**, see **dūcō**, *lead across, bring over*.
- trāns**, prep. with **acc.**, *across, over, beyond*.
- trānseō**, see **eō**, *cross over, go across, cross*.
- trānsgrēdiōr**, -gredī, -gressus, *sum, depon., go across, cross*.

**trānsversus**, -a, -um, adj., *across*;  
with *fossa*, a *cross-ditch*.

**trēs, trēs, tria**, gen. **trium**, num.  
adj., *three*.

**Trēveri**, -ōrum, mas., a power-  
ful tribe of the Belgians on the  
Moselle.

**tribūnus**, -i, mas., a *tribune*;  
with **militum**, a *military tri-  
bune*.

**triduum**, -i, neut., *three days'*  
*time, three days*.

**triplex**, gen. **triplicis**, adj. (of  
one termination), *triple, three-  
fold*.

**tuba**, -ae, fem., a *trumpet* (a  
straight instrument for in-  
fantry).

**tum**, adv., *then*; chapt. 4, **cum**  
... **tum**, both ... *and*.

**tumultus**, -ūs, mas., an *uproar*,  
*confusion, a commotion*.

**tumulus**, -i, mas., a *hill, a mound*.

**Turonēs**, -um (-i, -ōrum), mas.,  
a Gallic tribe on the Loire.

**turpitūdō**, -dinis, fem., *disgrace*,  
*baseness, dishonour*.

**turris**, -is, fem., a *tower*.

**tūtus**, -a, -um, adj., *safe, secure*,  
*protected*.

**ubi**, adv., *when, where*.

**ūllus**, -a, -um, gen. **ūllius**, adj.,  
*any one, any*.

**ūnā**, adv. (**ūnā cum**), *together*  
*with, along with (them)*.

**ūndecimus**, -a, -um, num. adj.,  
*eleventh*.

**undique**, adv., *from (on) all parts*,  
*on all sides*.

**ūniversus**, -a, -um, adj., *whole*,  
*all*.

**ūnus**, -a, -um, gen. **ūnius**, num.  
adj., *one, only, alone*.

**urgeō**, **urgēre**, **ursi**, (no supine),  
*press hard*.

**ūsus**, -ūs, mas., *use, practice*,  
*advantage*.

**ut** (**utī**), conj., with indic. *as*,  
*when*; with subjunc., *so that*,  
*in order that*.

**uterque**, -traque, -trumque, gen.  
**utriusque**, adj., *each of two*,  
*both*.

**ūtōr**, **ūtī**, **ūsus sum**, depon., *use*,  
*employ, enjoy* (with *abl.*).

**vacuus**, -a, -um, adj., *empty*,  
*free*; chapt. 12, with *ab + abl.*,  
*destitute of*.

**vadum**, -i, neut., a *ford, shallows*.

**valeō**, **valēre**, **valui**, **valitum**,  
*be strong*; **plūrimum valēre**,  
*have very great influence*.

**vāllum**, -i, neut., a *rampart, a*  
*palisade*.

**varius**, -a, -um, adj., *diverse*,  
*different, various*.

**vāstō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *lay*  
*waste, ravage*.

**Veliocassēs**, -ium, (-i, -ōrum),  
mas., a Gallic tribe on the right  
bank of the Seine.

**vēndō**, **vēndere**, **vēndidī**, **vēn-  
ditum**, *sell*.

**Venelli** (**Unelli**), -ōrum, mas., a  
tribe along the west coast of  
Gaul.

**Venetī**, -ōrum, mas., a Gallic  
tribe on the west coast.

- veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum,** *come, approach, go.*
- verbum, -ī, neut.,** *a word, a discourse.*
- vereor, verērī, veritus sum,** *depon., fear, be afraid.*
- vergō, vergere,** (no perfect, no supine), *incline, slope, lie towards.*
- vērō, adv.,** *in fact, in truth.*
- versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *turn, deal with; frequently as a depon., be (remain);* chapt. 24, *be engaged.*
- vesper, -erī, mas.,** *the evening.*
- vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum,** *forbid.*
- vēxillum, -ī, neut.,** *a flag.*
- vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *harass, annoy.*
- victor, -tōris, mas.,** *a conqueror;* chapt. 24 (as adj.), *victorious.*
- vīcus, -ī, mas.,** *a village.*
- videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum,** *see; as depon. in the present system of the passive, seem.*
- vīgilia, -ae, fem.,** *a watch (one of the four divisions of the night).*
- vīmen, -minis, neut.,** *a pliant twig.*
- vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum,** *conquer, defeat.*
- vīnea, -ae, fem., vinea** (a movable shed covering a besieging party).
- vīnum, -ī, neut.,** *wine.*
- vir, virī, mas.,** *a man.*
- Viromandūī, -ōrum, mas.,** *a tribe of the Belgians north of the Oise.*
- virtūs, -tūtis, fem.,** *courage, valour (manliness).*
- vīs, (vīs), (plur. vīrēs),** *vigour, strength, force.*
- vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *avoid, escape.*
- vix, adv.,** *scarcely, with difficulty.*
- volō, velle, voluī, (no supine),** *wish, be willing.*
- voluntās, -tātis, fem.,** *desire, will (good will), approval.*
- vōx, vōcis, fem.,** *voice; plur., words, shouts*
- vulgō, adv. (abl. of vulgus),** *generally, everywhere.*
- vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *wound, injure, hurt.*
- vulnus, -eris, neut.,** *a wound.*

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

- about, *circiter*, adv.; *dē*, prep.  
+ *abl.*  
about midnight, *dē mediū nocte*.  
above, *suprā*, adv.  
abundance, *cōpia*, -ae, fem.  
access, *aditus*, -ūs, mas.  
across, *trāns*, prep. + *acc.*  
address, *prōsequor*, (3).  
advance, *prōgredior*, (3).  
after, *cum*, conj. + pluperf. sub-  
junc.; *post*, prep. + *acc.*  
afterwards, *postea*, adv.  
again, *rūrsus*, adv.  
against, *contrā*, prep. + *acc.*  
aid, *auxilium*, -ī, neut.; *iuvō*,  
*adiuvō*, (1).  
alarm, *commoveō*, (2).  
all, *omnis*, -is, -e, adj.  
almost, *paene*, adv.  
alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um, adj.  
ambassador, *lēgātus*, -ī, mas.  
ambush, *insidiae*, -arum, fem.  
among, *inter*, prep. + *acc.*  
and, *et*, *que*, *ac*, *atque*, conj.  
announce, *nūntiō*, *renūntiō*, (1).  
another (other), *alter*, -era, -erum,  
adj.  
any, *ullus*, -a, -um, adj.  
approach, *adventus*, -ūs, mas.  
archer, *sagittārius*, -ī, mas.  
arms, *arma*, -orum, neut.
- army, *exercitus*, -ūs, mas.; *aciēs*,  
*aciēi*, fem.  
arrival, *adventus*, -ūs, mas.  
arrive, *pervenio*, (4).  
arrogance, *spiritus*, -ūs, mas. (in  
the plur.).  
as, *ut*, conj. + indic.  
as soon as, *cum primum*, conj.  
ask, *rogō*, (1); *quaerō*, (3).  
ask for, *petō*, (3).  
assemble, *conveniō*, (4); *cōgō*, (3).  
attack, *impetus*, -ūs, mas.; *op-*  
*pugnō*, (1); *aggredior*, (3).  
attempt, *cōnor*, (1).  
at early dawn, *primā luce*.  
at first, *primō*, adv.  
at one and the same time, *ūnō*  
*tempore*.  
at once, *statim*, adv.  
at the foot of the mountain, *sub*  
*monte*.  
at the same time, *eōdem tempore*.  
auxiliaries, *auxilia*, -orum, neut.  
avoid, *vitō*, (1).  
await, *expectō*, (1).  
badge, *insigne*, -is, neut.  
baggage, *impedimenta*, -orum,  
neut.  
band, *manus*, -ūs, fem.  
bank, *ripa*, -ae, fem.

battle, *proelium*, -ī, neut.  
 be, *sum*; be able, *possum*.  
 be in command of, *praesum*  
     + *dat*.  
 be very powerful, *plūrimum*  
     *posse*; *plūrimum valere*.  
 be unwilling, *nōlō*.  
 bear, *ferō*.  
 beginning, *initium*, -ī, neut.  
 begin battle, *proelium commi-*  
     *tere*.  
 behind, *post*, prep. + *acc*.  
 beloved, *amātus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 betake one's self, *sē recipere*; *sē*  
     *conferre*.  
 between, *inter*, prep. + *acc*.  
 blame, *incūsō*, (1).  
 body, *corpus*, -oris, neut.  
 boldly, *audācter*, adv.  
 borders, *finis*, -is, mas. (in the  
     *plur.*).  
 both . . . and, *et . . . et*, conj.  
 boundary, *finis*, -is, mas. (in the  
     *plur.*).  
 bowman, *sagittārius*, -ī, mas.  
 boy, *puer*, *puerī*, mas.  
 bravely, *fortiter*, adv.  
 break camp, *castra movēre*.  
 bridge, *pōns*, *pontis*, mas.  
 bring, *ferō*.  
 bring to, *adducō*, (3).  
 bring up, *agō*, (3).  
 broad, *lātus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 brother, *frāter*, -tris, mas.  
 build, *aedificō*, (1).  
 building, *aedificium*, -ī, neut.  
 burn, *incendō*, (3).  
 business, *negōtium*, -ī, neut.; with  
     *dare*, to employ.  
 but, *sed*, conj.

but also, *sed etiam*, conj.  
 by, *ā*, *ab*, prep. + *abl.* (with  
     passive verb).  
 by night, *noctū* (as adv.).  
 calamity, *calamitās*, -tātis, fem.  
 call, *appellō*, (1).  
 camp, *castra*, -ōrum, neut.  
 captive, *captivus*, -ī, mas.  
 carry, *portō*, (1).  
 cavalry, *eques*, *equitis*, mas.;  
     *equitātus*, -ūs, mas.  
 cause, *causa*, -ae, fem.  
 centurion, *centuriō*, -ōnis, mas.  
 certain, *certus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 chief, *princeps*, -cipis, mas.  
 children, *liberī*, -ōrum, mas.  
 choose, *dēligō*, (3).  
 cohort, *cohors*, -hortis, fem.  
 collect, *cōgō*, (3).  
 command, *imperium*, -ī, neut.;  
     *imperō*, (1).  
 commander, *imperātor*, -tōris,  
     mas.  
 come, *veniō*, (4).  
 common, *communis*, -is, -e, adj.  
 conceal, *cēlō*, (1).  
 concerning, *dē*, prep. + *abl.*  
 confidence, *fides*, *fidei*, fem.  
 conquer, *pellō*, *vincō*, (3); *superō*,  
     (1).  
 conspire, *coniūrō*, (1); *cōsentiō*,  
     (4).  
 contend, *dēcertō*, (1); *contendō*,  
     (3).  
 convenient, *opportūnus*, -a, -um,  
     adj.  
 corn, *frūmentum*, -ī, neut.  
 council of war, *concilium*, -ī,  
     neut.

courage, *virtus*, -tūtis, fem.  
 covering, *tegimentum*, -ī, neut.  
 covering (of shields), *testūdō*,  
   -dinis, fem.  
 cross, *trānseō*.  
 custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, mas.; *cōn-*  
*suētūdō*, -dinis, fem.  
 cut down, *interscindō*, (3).  
 cut off, *intercludō*, (3); *prohibeō*,  
   (2).  
 danger, *periculum*, -ī, neut.  
 dare, *audeō*, (2).  
 dart, *tēlum*, -ī, neut.  
 day, *diēs*, *diēi*, mas. and fem.  
 decide, *cōstituō*, (3).  
 deep, *altus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 defeat, *pellō*, *vincō*, (3); *superō*, (1).  
 defence, *praesidium*, -ī, neut.;  
   *mūnimentum*, -ī, neut.  
 defend, *dēfendō*, (3).  
 defender, *dēfēnsor*, -sōris, mas.  
 delay, *mora*, -ae, fem.; *moror*, (1).  
 demand, *poscō*, (3); *postulō*, (1).  
 depart, *ēgredior*, *proficiācor*, (3);  
   *discēdō*, (3).  
 departure, *profectiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 deprive, *dēspoliō*, (1).  
 descend (be descended) *orior*, (4).  
 desire, *studeō*, (2); *studium*, -ī,  
   neut. (fondness).  
 deter, *dēterreō*, (2).  
 different, *dīversus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 dig (extend), *obducō* (with *fos-*  
   *sam*), (3).  
 direct, *mandō*, (1).  
 ditch, *fossa*, -ae, fem.  
 divide, *distīnēō*, (2).  
 do, *faciō*, (3).  
 draw near to, *appropinquō*, (1);

for construction with verb, see  
 chapt. 10, next to last sent.;  
 19, second sent.; 31, first sent.  
 draw up, *instruō*, (3).  
 drive, *compellō*, (3).  
 drive back, *repellō*, (3).  
 drive out, *expellō*, (3).  
 each (of the two), *uterque*, adj.  
 easily, *facile*, adv.  
 easy, *facilis*, -is, -e, adj.  
 eight, *octō*, indecl. num. adj.  
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*, conj.  
 employ, *negōtium dare*.  
 empty, *vacuus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 encourage, *cohortor*, (1); with *ut*  
   + subjunc.  
 end, *finis*, -is, mas.  
 ends of the ditches, *extrēmae*  
   *fossae*.  
 enemy, *hostis*, -is, mas. (usually  
   *plur.*).  
 engine of war, *tormentum*, -ī,  
   neut.  
 enroll, *cōscribō*, (3).  
 enter, *intrō*, (1).  
 enter upon, *ineō*.  
 entire, *tōtus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 entrust, *permittō*, (3).  
 envoy, *lēgātus*, -ī, mas.  
 equal, *adaequō*, (1); for construc-  
   tion with verb, see chapt. 32,  
   last sent.  
 erect, *cōstituō*, (3).  
 especially, *māximē*, adv.  
 establish, *cōfirmō*, (1).  
 even, *etiam*, conj.  
 evening, *vesper*, -erī, mas.  
 exchange hostages, *obsidēs inter*  
   *sē dare*.



execute, *ministrō*, (1).

expect, *expectō*, (1).

face about, *signa convertō*, (8).

fail, *fallō*, (8).

farthest, *extrēmus*, -a, -um, adj.

father, *pater*, -tris, mas.

fear, *vereor*, *timeō*, (2).

fertility, *fertilitās*, -tātis, fem.

few, *paucus*, -a, -um, adj.; plur. only.

fickleness, *levitās*, -tātis, fem.

field, *ager*, *agrī*, mas.

fierce, *ferus*, -a, -um, adj.

fight, *pugna*, -ae, fem.; *pugnō*, *dēcertō*, *dīmīcō*, (1), *contendō*, *cōnflīgō*, (3).

fill, *compleō*, (2).

find, *reperiō*, *inveniō*, (4).

find out, *cognōscō*, (3); *explōrō*, (1).

fire, *ignis*, -is, mas.

first, *primus*, -a, -um, adj.

five, *quīnque*, indecl. num. adj.

flee, *fugiō*, (3).

flight, *fuga*, -ae, fem.

fodder, *pābulum*, -ī, neut.

follow after, *subsequor*, (3).

foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, mas.

for, *nam*, conj.

for the sake of, *causā* (as a prep., following a *gen.*).

force (vigor), *vis*, *vis*, fem.; (plur. *virēs*).

forces, *cōpiae*, -ārum, fem.

ford, *vādum*, -ī, neut.

foremost (men), *primī*, -ōrum, (mas. plur. of *primus*).

forest, *silva*, -ae, fem.

former, *pristinus*, -a, -um, adj.

fortification, *mūnitō*, -ōnis, fem.

fortify, *mūniō*, (4).

free, *vacuus*, -a, -um, adj.

frequent, *crēber*, -bra, -brum, adj.

fresh, *integer*, -gra, -grum, adj.

friend, *amicus*, -ī, mas.

friendly, *amicus*, -a, -um, adj.

friendship, *amicitia*, -ae, fem.

frighten, *perterreō*, (2).

from, *ā*, *ab*, prep. + *abl.*

from (on) all sides, *undique*, adv.

gate, *porta*, -ae, fem.

Gaul, (country), *Gallia*, -ae, fem.; (person), *Gallus*, -ī, mas.

general, *praefectus*, -ī, mas.

general (common), *communis*, -is, -e, adj.

give, *dō*, (1).

give hostages to one another, *obsidēs inter sē dare*.

give up, *permittō*, *trādō*, (3).

great, *magnus*, -a, -um, adj.

halt, *cōsisitō*, (3).

hand over, *trādō*, (3).

hasten, *mātūrō*, (1); *contendō*, (3).

have, *habēō*, (2).

have very great power or influence, *plūrimum posse*, *plūrimum valēre*.

he, self, *ipse*, -a, -um, intensive pron.

he, she, it, *is*, *ea*, *id*, (used as pers. pron., third person).

hedge, *saepēs*, -is, fem.

height, *altitūdō*, -dinis, fem.

helmet, *galea*, -ae, fem.

help, *auxilium*, -ī, neut.; *iuvō*, (1).

- hesitate, *dubitō*, (1).  
 high, *altus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 hill, *collis*, -is, mas.  
 hinder, *impediō*, (4).  
 hire, *conducō*, (3).  
 his, *ēius* (not reflex.); *suus*, -a, -um (reflex.), possess. pronouns.  
 hither, *citerior*, -ior, -ius, adj.  
 hold, *obtineō*, (2).  
 hold out, *sustentō*, (1).  
 home, *domus*, -ūs (-ī), fem.  
 hope, *spēs*, *spei*, fem.  
 horse, *equus*, -ī, mas.  
 hostage, *obses*, -idēs, mas.  
 how great, *quantus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 hurl, *cōniciō*, (3).  
 immediately, *prōtinus*, *statim*, adv.  
 in, on, upon, *in*, prep. + *abl*.  
 incite, *sollicitō*, (1).  
 infantry, *pedes*, -itīs, mas. (usually plur.).  
 influence, *adducō*, (3).  
 inform, *certiōrem* (-ēs) *facere*.  
 in front of, *prō*, prep. + *abl*.  
 inhabit, *incolō*, (3).  
 injury, *iniūria*, -ae, fem.  
 inquire, *quaerō*, (3).  
 instruct, *mandō*, (1).  
 into, *in*, prep. + *acc*.  
 investigate, *cōgnōscō*, (3).  
 javelin, *pilum*, -ī, neut.  
 join, *coniungō*, (3).  
 just as, as, *ita* . . . *ut*.  
 keep, *contineō*, (2).  
 keep apart, *distineō*, (2).  
 keep back, *retineō*, (2).  
 kill, *interficiō*, (3).  
 kindly, *liberāliter*, adv.  
 king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, mas.  
 kingdom, *rēgnum*, -ī, neut.; (plur. sovereignty).  
 kinsmen, *cōsanguinēi*, -ōrum, mas.  
 large, *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 last, lately, *proximē*, adv.  
 lay waste, *vastō*, *populor*, (1).  
 lead, *ducō*, (3).  
 lead across, *trāducō*, (3).  
 leader, *dux*, *ducis*, mas.  
 lead out, *ēducō*, (3).  
 leave, *relinquō*, (3).  
 legion, *legiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 left, *sinister*, -tra, -trum, adj.  
 less, *minus*, adv.  
 less easily, *minus facile*, *minus commodē*, adv.  
 letter, *littera*, -ae, fem.; (usually plur.).  
 lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -ī, mas.  
 light, *lux*, *lūcis*, fem.  
 light-armed, *expeditus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 likewise, *item*, adv.  
 line of battle, (army), *aciēs*, *aciēi*, fem.  
 line of march, *agmen*, -minis, neut.  
 long, a long time, *diū*, adv.  
 longer, *diūtius*, adv.  
 love, *amō*, (1).  
 make, *faciō*, (3).  
 make (take) a stand, *cōsistō*, (3).  
 make an attack upon, *facere impetum in* + *acc*.  
 make more certain (see 'inform'), *certiōrem* (-ēs) *facere*.

man, *homō, hominis*, mas.; *vir*,  
*virī*, mas.

march, *iter, itineris*, neut.; *iter*  
*facere*.

marsh, *aequarium*, -ī, neut.

meanwhile, *interim*, adv.

memory, *memoria*, -ae, fem.

(men) in the front, *priores*, -um,  
mas. (compar. adj. as noun).

(men) in the rear, *novissimī, -orum*,  
mas. (superl. adj. as noun).

merchant, *mercator*, -ōris, mas.

message, messenger, *nuntius*, -ī,  
mas.

middle of, *medius*, -a, -um, adj.

mind, *animus*, -ī, mas.

most of, *plērusque*, -aque, -umque,  
adj. (in the plur. only).

mountain, *mōns, montis*, mas.

move, *movere*, (2).

movable shed, *vinea*, -ae, fem.

multitude, *multitudo*, -dinis, fem.

much, many, *multus*, -a, -um,  
adj.

name, *nōmen*, -inis, neut.

nature, *nātūra*, -ae, fem.

near by, *iuxta*, adv.

nearness, *propinquitās*, -tātis,  
fem.

neighbouring, *finitimus*, -a, -um,  
adj.; in the mas. plur., noun,  
*neighbours*.

neither, *neuter*, -tra, -trum, adj.

neither . . . nor, *neque (nec)* . . .  
*neque (nec)*.

new, *novus*, -a, -um, adj.

next, *proximus*, -a, -um, adj.

night, *nox, noctis*, fem.

no, none, *nullus*, -a, -um, adj.

not, *nōn*, adv.; *nē* (regular nega-  
tive of the imperative).

not only, *nōn modo*.

not yet, *nōndum*.

number, *numerus*, -ī, mas.

obtain, *impetrō*, (1).

of cavalry, *equester*, -tris, -tre,  
adj. (of three terminations).

of corn, *frumentarius*, -a, -um,  
adj.

officer, *magistratus*, -ūs, mas.

on, *see* in, upon.

one (alone), *ūnus*, -a, -um, num.  
adj.

only, alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um, adj.;  
*ūnus*, -a, -um, adj.

on all sides, *undique*, adv.

on account of, *propter*, prep. +  
*acc.*

on the flank, *ab latere* (from  
*latus*, the noun).

on the left side, *ab sinistrā parte*.

on the right wing, *ā dextrō*  
*cornū*.

on the top of the hill, *in summō*  
*colle*.

on this side of, *cis*, prep. + *acc.*

opportunity, *facultās*, -tātis, fem.

opposite, *adversus*, -a, -um, adj.

order, *imperātum*, -ī, neut.; *im-*  
*perō*, (1); *iubeō*, (2).

other (another), *alter*, -era, -erum;  
*alius*, -a, -ud, adj.

our, *noster*, -tra, -trum, adj.;  
mas. plur. as noun, our men.

out of, *ē, ex*, prep. + *abl.*

outstretched, *passus*, -a, -um,  
adj.

overcome, *superō*, (1).

- pace, *passus*, -ūs, mas.  
 part, *pars*, *partis*, fem.  
 peace, *pax*, *pācis*, fem.  
 people, *populus*, -ī, mas.  
 pitch (place), *pōnō*, (3).  
 place, *locus*, -ī, mas.; neut. plur.,  
*loca*; *conlocō*, (1); *pōnō*, (3).  
 place in command of, *praeficiō*,  
 (3), (with *dat.*).  
 plain, *plānitiēs*, *plānitiēi*, fem.  
 power, *imperium*, *rēgnum*, -ī,  
 neut.; *potestās*, -tātis, fem.  
 powerful, *potēns*, gen. *potentis*,  
 adj. (of one termination).  
 prepare, *parō*, (1); prepared,  
*parātus*, -a, -um (particip. as  
 adj.)  
 prevent, *prohibeō*, *dēterreō*, (2);  
*impediō*, (4).  
 promise, *polliceor*, (2).  
 protection, *fidēs*, *fidei*, fem.  
 province, *prōvincia*, -ae, fem.  
 pursue, *prōsequor*, (3).  
 put on, *induō*, (3).  
 quickly, *celeriter*, adv.  
 rampart, *vāllum*, -ī, neut.  
 ready, *parātus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 rear, *novissimum agmen*, *novis-*  
*simi agminis*, neut.  
 receive, *accipiō*, (3).  
 recently, *proximē*, adv.  
 redoubt, *castellum*, -ī, neut.  
 reduce, *redigō*, (3).  
 refrain from, *supersedeō*, (2).  
 region, *regiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 relief, *subsīdium*, -ī, neut.  
 remaining, *reliquus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 Remian (a), *Rēmus*, -ī, mas.;  
 plur., the Remi.  
 renew, *redintegrō*, (1).  
 report, *rūmor*, -ōris, mas.; *nūntiō*,  
*renūntiō*, (1).  
 rest, the rest, *cēterus*, -a, -um,  
 adj.; usually mas. plur. as a  
 noun.  
 restrain, *retineō*, (2).  
 resist, *resistō*, (3), (with *dat.*).  
 return, *revertor*, (3).  
 revolution, *rēs nova*, *rei novae*,  
 fem.  
 right, *dexter*, -tra, -trum, adj.  
 river, *flūmen*, -minis, neut.  
 Roman, *Rōmānus* (adj. or noun).  
 rout, *fugō*, *prōfūgō*, (1); *pellō*, (3).  
 rumor, *rūmor*, -ōris, mas.  
 run down, *decurrō*, (3).  
 rush forth, *prōvolō*, (1).  
 safety, *salūs*, -ūtis, fem.  
 sally, *excursiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 say, *dicō*, (3).  
 scout, *explōrātor*, -tōris, mas.  
 second, *secundus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 see, *videō*, (2).  
 seek, *petō*, (3).  
 seem, *videor*, (2).  
 seize, *occupō*, (1).  
 senate, *senātus*, -ūs, mas.  
 send, *mittō*, (3).  
 send forward, *praemittō*, (3).  
 separate, *distineō*, (2).  
 servant, *servus*, -ī, mas.  
 settle, *cōnsidō*, (3).  
 set out, *proficiscor*, (3).  
 set up (arrange), *cōstituō*, (3).  
 seventh, *septimus*, -a, -um, num.  
 adj.  
 shield, *scūtum*, -ī, neut.  
 side, *latus*, -eris, neut.

- sight, *cōspectus*, -ūs, mas.  
 signal, *signum*, -ī, neut.  
 since, *cum* + subjunc.  
 shortness, *brevitās*, *exiguitās*,  
     *-tātis*, fem.  
 slave, *servus*, -ī, mas.  
 slavery, *servitūs*, -tūtis, fem.  
 slay, *occidō*, (8).  
 slight, *parvulus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 slinger, *funditor*, -tōris, mas.  
 so (thus), *tam*, *ita*, adv.  
 so great, *tantus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 some, *nōnnūllus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 so that, *ut* + subjunc.  
 so that . . . not, *nē* + subjunc.  
 sovereignty, *rēgnum*, -ī, neut.,  
     (in the plur.).  
 speech, *orātiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 speed, *cursus*, -ūs, mas.  
 state, *civitās*, -tātis, fem.  
 stone, *lapis*, -idis, mas.  
 stop (cease), *dēsistō*, (3).  
 storm, *expūgnō*, (1).  
 strength, *vis*, (vis), fem.  
 strip, *nūdō*, (1).  
 strong (to be), *valeō*, (2); to have  
     very great influence, *plūrimum*  
     *valēre*.  
 subdue, *superō*, (1); *vincō*, *pellō*,  
     (3).  
 subjection, *servitūs*, -tūtis, fem.  
 suddenly, *subitō*, adv.  
 suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 summer, *aestās*, -tātis, fem.  
 summon, *convocō*, (1).  
 supply (plenty), *cōpia*, -ae  
     fem.; (in the plur.) forces.  
 supply of corn, *rēs frūmentāria*,  
     *rei frūmentāriae*, fem.  
 supplies, *commeātus*, -ūs, mas.  
 surrender, *deditiō*, -ōnis, fem.;  
     *dēdō*, *trādō*, (3).  
 surround, *circumdō*, (1); *circum-*  
     *veniō*, (4).  
 swamp, *palūs*, -ūdis, fem.  
 sword, *gladius*, -ī, mas.  
 tall, *altus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 tenth, *decimus*, -a, -um, num. adj.  
 terms, *condiciō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 territory, *fīnis*, -is, mas. (in the  
     plur.).  
 testudo, *testūdō*, -dinis, fem.  
 that, *is*, *ea*, *id*, demons. pron., or  
     adj.  
 their, *eōrum*, (not reflex.), possess.  
     pron.; *suus*, -a, -um, (reflex.),  
     possess. pron.  
 there, *ibi*, adv.; *eō* (in sense of  
     *thither*).  
 thing, *rēs*, *rei*, fem.  
 this, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, demons. pron.  
 this side of, *cis*, prep. + acc.  
 thither, *eō*, adv.  
 (those) in the front, *priōrēs*, -um,  
     mas. (compar. adj. as noun).  
 thousand, *mille*; declined only in  
     plur., *mīlia*, -ium, neut.  
 three, *trēs*, *trēs*, *tria*, num. adj.  
 through, *per*, prep. + acc.  
 throw, *cōniciō*, (3).  
 time, *tempus*, -oris, neut.  
 to (towards), *ad*, prep. + acc.  
 tower, *turris*, -is, fem.  
 town, *oppidum*, -ī, neut.  
 townsmen, *oppidanī*, -ōrum, mas.  
 top of, *summus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 tribe, *gēns*, *gentis*, fem.  
 triple, *triplex*, gen. *triplicis*, adj.  
     (of one termination).

trumpet, *tuba*, -ae, fem.  
 try, *cōnor*, (1); *experior*, (4).  
 two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, num. adj.

undermine, *subruō*, (3).  
 unexpectedly, *dē imprōvisō*.  
 unfavorable, *inīquus*, -a, -um,  
 adj.

unfriendly, *inimicus*, -a, -um,  
 adj.

unite (conspire), *cōsentiō*, (4).

unless, *nisi*, conj.

upon, *in* + acc., with verbs of  
*motion*; *in* + abl., with verbs  
 of *rest*.

uproar, *tumultus*, -ūs, mas.

urge, *cohortor*, (1).

use, *usus*, -ūs, mas.; *utor*, (3).

very greatly, *māximē*, adv.

very like, *cōnsimilis*, -is, -e, adj.  
 (of two terminations).

very many, *plūrimus*, -a, -um,  
 adj. (in the plur.).

village, *vicus*, -ī, mas.

vinea, *vīnea*, -ae, fem.

wait for, *expectō*, (1).

wall, *mūrus*, -ī, mas.

war, *bellum*, -ī, neut.

watch, *vigilia*, -ae, fem.

weapon, *tēlum*, -ī, neut.

when, where, *ubi* (denoting *time*  
 or *place*).

while, *cum* + imperf. subjunc.

who, *quī*, (rel. pron.); *quis*,  
 (interrog. pron.).

width, *lātitudō*, -dinis, fem.

wing, *cornū*, -ūs, neut.

winter, *hiemō*, (1).

winter-quarters, *hiberna*, *hibernā-  
 cula*, -ōrum, neut.

wish, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.

with, *cum*, prep. + abl.; *post-  
 positive* with the *personal, rela-  
 tive* and *reflexive pronouns*.

within, *intrā*, prep. + acc.

without, *sine*, prep. + abl.

with respect to, *dē*, prep. + abl.

withstand, *sustineō*, (2).

work, *opus*, -eris, neut.

wound, *vulnus*, -eris, neut.; *vul-  
 nerō*, (1).

# INDEX.

References are to paragraphs.

**Ā, ab:** use of, 240

**Ablative:** separation, 221; quality, 376; time when or within which, 65; means or instrument, 43; attendance or accompaniment, 43; cause and manner, 210; place in which (place where), 47; place from which (whence), 386; place towards which (whither), 386; personal agent, 237; *causā* with the *gen.*, 7; *quō* with the comparative, 384; with *opus* and *ūsus*, 379; with depon. verbs, 353; with comparative adj., 369; abl. absolute, 287; abl. absol. analyzed, 288; abl. absol. written in four ways, 364; abl. absol. distinguished from the p. p. p. modifying subj. or obj., 323

**Accusative:** direct object, 16, c; extent in space, 342; duration of time, 342; adverbial acc., 374; end or limit of motion (place towards which), 386; subj. of infinitive, 301, 302

**Ad:** with verbs of motion, 59; with *gerundive* in affirm. purpose, 355

**Adapted and Simplified Caesar:** 408-447

**Adjectives:** agreement of, 4, 115; stem, how found, 188, 298; used as substantives, 258; in the predicate, 95, 97; governing the *dat.*, 126; with *gen.* in *ius*, *dat.* in *i*, 286; of 1st and 2d declens. declined, 466; of 3d declens. declined, 467; numeral adjs. declined, 468; comparison of regular adjs., 298, 469; comparison of, ending in *er*, 308, 470; comparison of, ending in *ilis*, 314, 471, comparison of irregular, 472

**Adverb:** translated like adj., 216

**Adverbial accusative:** 374

**Adverbial phrase:** use of, 34

**Adverbs compared:** 473

**Affirmative purpose:** how expressed, 320; expressed in four ways, 355

**Affirmative result:** 321

**Ager:** declined, 454

**Agmen:** declined, 122

**Altior:** declined, 467

**Altus:** declined, 466

**Amō:** complete paradigms, 474, 475

**Analysis of a complex sentence:** 204

**Apposition:** 54

**Capiō:** complete paradigms, 480, 481

**Cāsus:** declined, 182

**Causal clauses:** 104, 276

**Causal cum:** 350, 359

**Certior factus:** 338

**Certiōrem (-ēs) facere:** 333

**Civitās:** declined, 122

**Cohortor:** use of, 347

**Collis:** declined, 130

**Commands and exhortations:** 389

**Commands, etc., in O. O.:** 390

**Comparative adjective declined:** 467

**Comparison of adjectives:** see 'Adjectives.'

**Comparison of adverbs:** 473

**Complex sentence analyzed** 204

**Concessive cum.** 350, 359

**Conditions.** more vivid future, 223, *a*, *b*; less vivid future, 335; conditions in O. O., 396

**Conjugations:**

*1st conjuga.:* list of 92 verbs, 448; complete paradigms (*amō*), 474, 475; synopses, by stems (*portō*): (*a*) *active*—pres. syst., 75, perf. syst., 120, sup. syst. 133; (*b*) *passive*—pres. and perf. syst., 255

*2d conjuga.:* list of 42 verbs, 449; complete paradigms (*monēō*), 476, 477; synopses, by stems (*dēlēō*): (*a*) *active*—pres.

syst., 158, perf. syst., 163, sup. syst., 169; (*b*) *passive*—pres. and perf. syst., 270

*3d conjuga.:* list of 157 verbs, 450; complete paradigms (*pōnō*), 478, 479; *capiō* (the 'iō' verb) complete, 480, 481; synopses, by stems (*pōnō*): (*a*) *active*—pres. syst., 192, perf. syst., 196, sup. syst., 197; (*b*) *passive*—pres. syst., 281, perf. syst., 284

*4th conjuga.:* list of 19 verbs, 451; complete paradigms (*mūniō*), 482, 483; synopses, by stems (*mūniō*): (*a*) *active*—pres. syst., 225, perf. syst., 230, sup. syst., 231; (*b*) *passive*—pres. syst., 295, perf. syst., 296

**Cornū:** declined, 461

**Corpus:** declined, 458

**Crēber:** declined, 466

**Cum clauses:** historical *cum*, *when* (= *while* or *after*), 128, 203, 263, 359; temporal *cum*, *when*, 359; causal *cum*, *since*, 350, 359; concessive *cum*, *although*, 350, 359

**Dative:** indirect obj., 15; with adjs., 126; with *imperō* and *mandō*, 134, 145; with *negōtium dare*, 330; with compound verbs, 337; with special verbs, 348; with *persuādeō* (in the *active*), 345; with *persuādeō* (in the *passive*), 380; double dat. (purpose, end, service), 352; possession, 357; personal agent, 362



**Declension of adjectives:** 1st and 2d declensions, 466; 3d declension, including pres. particip. and comparative, 467; numerals, 468

**Declension of nouns:**

*1st declension:* stem, gender, paradigms, 453

*2d declension:* stem, gender, paradigms, 454

*3d declension:* stems, kinds of, 455; nom., how formed in *consonant* stems, 456, A, B, C; nom., how formed in *vowel* stems, 457; *nom. sing.* ending (all genders) of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *nom. plur.* (neut.) ending of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *gen. plur.* ending of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *acc. plur.* (mas. and fem.) endings in *is* or *ēs*, 457 *gen. plur.* endings *um* and *ium*, all 3d-declension nouns, 460; general rules of gender, 458; paradigms: *miles*, 112; *cīvitās*, *agmen*, *lapis*, *miles ferus*, 122; *pater*, *rūmor*, *latus*, *corpus*, *legiō*, 124; *collis*, *rēx*, *flūmen lātum*, 130; *multitūdō*, *vīs*, *iter*, 138; *frāter*, *hostis*, *pēs*, *facultās*, *virtūs*, *lēx*, *flūmen*, *insigne*, 458; *millia* (plur. of *mille*), 459. Third - declension paradigms (nouns) may be found in 112, 122, 124, 130, 138, 458, 459

*4th declension:* stem, gender, paradigms, 461

*5th declension:* stem, gender, paradigms, 462

**Declension of pronouns:** personal pron., 1st person, 463; demonstr. and intensive, 464; rel., interrog., and indef., 465

**Dēleō:** for synopses by stems, both voices, see 'Conjugations,' 2d.

**Demonstrative pronouns**, 464

**Deponent verbs**

*1st conjuga.:* complete paradigms (*populor*), 494; for *active* forms and synopses, *by stems*, see 326, 327

*2d conjuga.:* complete paradigms (*vereor*), 495

*3d conjuga.:* complete paradigms (*ūtor*), 496

*4th conjuga.:* complete paradigms (*potior*), 497

**Dīēs:** declined, 462

**Direct discourse** (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*), 301

**Direct object:** 15, 16, c

**Direct question:** 313

**Duo:** declined, 468

**Duplex:** declined, 467

**Duration of time:** 342

**Ego:** declined, 463

**Eō:** complete paradigms, 486

**Equester:** declined, 467

**Extent in space:** 342

**Faciō:** active paradigms, 492

**Facultās:** declined, 458

**Fearing:** verbs of, with *ut* or *nē* + subjunctive, 343

**Ferō:** complete paradigms, 490, 491

**Fiō:** passive of *faciō*; passive paradigms, 493

**Flūmen:** declined, 458

**Flūmen lātum:** declined, 130

**Fortis:** declined, 188

**Fossa:** declined, 1, 6

**Frāter:** declined, 458

**Future participle, Future infinitive:** how formed, 170; fut. infin. in *O. O.*, 318, examples 3 and 4 with note; fut. infin. of depon. verb, 328

**Galea:** declined, 453

**Gender:** 1st declension, 453; 2d declension, 454; 3d declension, 458, I, II, III; 4th declension, 461; 5th declension, 462

**Genitive:** use of and meaning, 7; with the abl. *causā*, 7; participative and exceptions, 378; ending in *um* and *ium*, 460

**Gerund:** defined and declined, 73

**Gerundive construction:** in agreement with noun, 253; with *ad* to represent affirmative purpose, 355

**Gladius:** declined, 454

**Hic:** declined, 464

**Hinder:** verbs of, with *quā* or *nē* + subjunctive, 370

**Historical cum:** 128, 203, 263

**Hortatory subjunctive:** 395

**Hostis:** declined, 458

**How to express 'ought' or 'must':** *pres.* and *past* action, 385, 1, 2, 3

**How words are combined:** order and dependence, 92, 161, 176

**Īdem:** declined, 464

**Ille:** declined, 464

**Imperō:** with *dat.* and subjunctive clause, 145, 228

**Impersonal verbs:** 365

**Impetum facere:** with *in* + acc., 216

**In:** uses of, 35

**Indefinite pronoun, quis:** declined, 465

**Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Obliqua):** defined, 301; mood in, 392; *pres. infin.* (statement clauses), 302; *perf. infin.* (statement clauses), 305; *fut. infin.* (statement clauses), 318; subord. clauses in, 306, 397; substitute for *fut. infin.* in, 382; conditions in, 396; commands and exhortations in, 390; *certiōrem (-ēs) facere*, used as a verb of *saying*, 333; specimens of, 400-407

**Indirect object:** 15, 16, *d*

**Indirect question:** mood of, 313

**Īnsigne:** declined, 458

**Integer:** declined, 56

**Intensive pronoun (ipse):** declined, 464

**Intermediate clauses:** 276

**Intermediate (subordinate) clauses in O. O.:** 306

**Interrogative pronoun (quis):** declined, 465

**Ipse:** declined, 464

**Irregular verbs:** list of 26 verbs, 452

*eō*, complete paradigms, 486

*faciō*, " " 492

*ferō*, " " 490, 491

*fiō*, " " 493

*mālō*, " " 489

**Irregular verbs :**

<b>nōlō</b> , complete paradigms,	488
<b>possum</b> , " "	485
<b>sum</b> , " "	484
<b>volō</b> , " "	487

**Is, ea, id**: declined, 464

**Iter**: declined, 459

**Iubeō**: use of, 155

**-ius**: gen. ending of adjs., 286

**Lapis**: declined, 458

**Latus**: (noun) declined, 458

**Legiō**: declined, 458

**Less vivid future condition**: 385

**Less vivid future condition in O. O.**: 396, 2 and examples.

**Lēx**: declined, 458

**-limus**: adj. superl. ending, 471

**Mālō**: complete paradigms, 489

**Mandō**: with *dat.* and subjunctive clause, 145, 228

**Manus**: declined, 461

**Miles**: declined, 458

**Miles ferus**: declined, 122

**Milia**: declined, 459

**Moneō**: complete paradigms, 476, 477

**Mood in O. O.**: 392

**More vivid future condition**: 223, *a, b*

**More vivid future condition in O. O.**: 396, 1 and examples.

**Motion, end or limit of**: 386

**Multitūdō**: declined, 458

**Mūniō**: complete paradigms, 482, 483; for synopses, by stems, both voices, see 'Conjugations,' 4th.

**'Must' or 'ought'**: how expressed, 385, 1, 2, 3

**Nē**: with subjunctive, neg. purpose, 211, 320; with subjunctive after *imperō* and *mandō*, 228; with imperative, neg. commands and exhortations, 389; *nē* + imperative (neg. commands, etc.) changed to *O.*, 390; after verbs of fearing, 343; after verbs of hindering, etc., 370

**Negative purpose**: 211, 320

**Negative result**: 321

**Negōtium dare**: with *dat.* and subjunctive clause, 330

**Nisi**: in conditions, 223, 335

**Nōlō**: complete paradigms, 488

**Object**: direct, indirect, 15, 16

**Oppidum**: declined, 37

**Opus and ūsus**: with *abl.*, 379

**Ōrātiō Oblīqua**: see 'Indirect Discourse.'

**Ōrātiō Rēcta**: see 'Direct Discourse.'

**Order of words**: 16, 77, 92, 161, 176

**'Ought' or 'must'**: how expressed, 385, 1, 2, 3,

**Participles**: pres. particip. declined, 467; substitutions for perf. act., 340, 372; formation of perf. pass., 257; use and agreem. of perf. pass., 316; perf. pass. in *abl. absol.*, 287, 364; perf. pass., when mod. the subj. or obj., distinguished from *abl. absol.*, 323; perf. pass. of depon., its use instead of perf. act., 340; perf. pass.

- translated as finite or coordinate verb, 381; perf. pass. with *habere* or *tenere*, 375
- Partitive genitive:** and exceptions, 378
- Pater:** declined, 124
- Periphrastic conjugation:** formation and meaning, 361; complete paradigms, 498, 499
- Personal agent:** with regular passive verb, 237; with gerundive (periphrast. pass.), 362
- Personal pronoun (ego):** declined, 463
- Persuadeo:** in the active, 345; passive, 380
- Pēs:** declined, 458
- Place from—towards— which:** 386
- Place in which:** 47
- Pōnō:** complete paradigms, 478, 479; for synopses, by stems, both voices, see 'Conjugations,' 3d
- Populus:** complete paradigms, 494
- Possession:** dat. of, 357
- Possum:** complete paradigms, 485
- Postquam:** in temporal clauses, 358
- Potior:** complete paradigms, 497
- Predicate nominative:** 95, 97
- Pronouns:** *ego*, 463; *hic*, *idem*, *ille*, *ipse*, *is*, 464; *qui*, *quis*, 465; *sē*, 214
- Puer:** declined, 41
- Pūgnāns:** declined, 467
- Purpose:** relative clause of, 311; affirm. and neg. purpose, 320; affirm. purpose expressed in four ways, 355
- Quantity:** general rules of, 500–504
- Que:** position, 215
- Questions:** direct, indirect, 313
- Qui:** declined, 465
- Quis:** declined, 465
- Quod clauses:** mood of; when *indic.*, 276; when *subjunc.*, 276, 306
- Reflexive pronoun:** *personal sui*, etc., declined, 214; *possessive suus*, etc., 189
- Relative:** *qui*, declined, 465; agreement of, with antecedent, 83; with *castra*, etc., 84, 85; agreement of, with pred. word, 373; rel. clause of purpose, 311; of cause or concession, 368; of result, 387; rel. as a connective at the beginning of a sent., 367
- Review vocabularies:** 78, 219, 332, 399
- Rēs:** declined, 462
- Rēx:** declined, 130
- Rūmor:** declined, 124
- Scūtum:** declined, 454
- Sē:** declined, 214
- Sequence of tenses:** rule of, 135; table of, 136; application of rule of, 137; use of, in O. O., 397
- Servus:** declined, 18, 25
- Silva:** declined, 453
- Special verbs with dative:** 348
- Subordinate clauses:** use and

- dependence of, 110, 161, 166, 276; use of, in O. O., 306, 397
- Substitution for future infinitive:** in supineless and passive verbs, 382
- Substitution for perfect active participle:** by using depon. particip., abl. absol., or subord. clause, 340, 372
- Suī:** declined, 214
- Sum:** complete paradigms, 484; synopsis, pres. syst., 117; perf. syst., 127
- Suus:** use and meaning of, 189
- Temporal clauses:** *postquam*, *ubi*, etc. + indic., 358
- Tōtus:** declined, 286
- Trēs:** declined, 468
- Ubi:** use of, 203, 358
- Ut:** in purpose clauses, 53, 320, 355; with verbs of command, 145, 228; clauses of command in O. O., 389, 392, 2, *a*, *b*, *c*; in temporal clauses, verb indic., 358
- Ūtor:** complete paradigms, 496
- Vir:** declined, 454
- Virtūs:** declined, 458
- Vis:** declined, 459
- Volō:** complete paradigms, 487
- Vowel stems in i:** (*a*) *nouns*: *collis*, declined, 130; *hostis*, declined, 458; gender, stem, and special endings of, 131, 457; (*b*) *adjectives*: *fortis*, declined, 467; stem and special endings of, 188











